

Floyd L. Moreland
and Rita M. Fleischer

Latin:

An Intensive Course

LATIN

An Intensive Course

by FLOYD L. MORELAND *and* RITA M. FLEISCHER
Brooklyn College of the City University of New York

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS
Berkeley Los Angeles London

University of California Press
Berkeley and Los Angeles, California
University of California Press, Ltd.
London, England
Copyright © 1977 by
The Regents of the University of California
ISBN 0-520-03183-0
Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 75-36500
Printed in the United States of America
9th Printing, with corrections, 1990

10 09 08 07 06 05
24 23 22 21 20 19

The paper used in this publication is both
acid-free and totally chlorine-free (TCF).
It meets the minimum requirements of ANSI/NISO
Z39.48-1992 (R 1997) (*Permanence of Paper*). ∞

CONTENTS

PREFACE TO THE PRELIMINARY EDITION	xi
PREFACE TO THIS EDITION	xiv
INTRODUCTION	1
A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation	1
B. Syllabification	2
C. Accentuation	3
D. Word Order	4
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS BOOK	7
GRAMMATICAL REVIEW	8
A SELECTED GLOSSARY OF IMPORTANT TERMS	12
UNIT ONE	20
A. The Verbal System	20
B. The Tenses of the Indicative	20
C. The Infinitive	22
D. The Four Conjugations	23
E. The Principal Parts	23
F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations	23
G. The Irregular Verb <i>sum</i> , 'be'	25
H. The Noun System	26
I. The First Declension	27
UNIT TWO	35
A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs	35
B. The Subjunctive Mood	36
C. Formation of the Subjunctive	36
D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb <i>sum</i>	37
E. Conditional Sentences	38
F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning	39

UNIT THREE	47
A. Nouns of the Second Declension	47
B. First-Second Declension Adjectives	48
C. Noun-Adjective Agreement	49
D. Adjectives Used as Nouns	49
E. Ablative of Means (Instrument)	50
F. Ablative of Manner (Modal Ablative)	50
G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses	50
H. Indirect Commands	52
 UNIT FOUR	 59
A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations	59
B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations	62
C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations	64
D. Review of Verb Conjugations	65
E. Ablative of Personal Agent	65
 REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR	 74
 UNIT FIVE	 83
A. Participles: Definition and Formation	83
B. Some Uses of the Participle	84
C. Periphrastics	87
D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic	88
E. Dative of the Possessor	88
F. The Verb <i>possum</i> , 'be able'	88
G. Complementary Infinitive	89
 UNIT SIX	 97
A. Nouns of the Third Declension	97
B. Infinitives	99
C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive	100
D. The Irregular Noun <i>vis</i>	102
E. Ablative of Separation	102
F. Accusative of Place to Which	103
G. The Locative Case	103
 UNIT SEVEN	 110
A. Demonstrative Adjectives	110
B. Personal Pronouns	111
C. Possessive Adjectives	113
D. Relative Pronoun	114
E. Interrogative Adjective	115
F. Interrogative Pronoun	115
G. Ablative of Accompaniment	116
H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which	116
I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space	116
J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement	116

UNIT EIGHT	126
A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles	126
B. Fourth Declension Nouns	128
C. Fifth Declension Nouns	128
D. Ablative of Respect (Specification)	128
E. The Irregular Verb <i>eō, ire, 'go'</i>	129
F. The Present Imperative	129
G. The Vocative Case	131
H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction	131
REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT	140
UNIT NINE	150
A. Comparison of Adjectives	150
B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	151
C. Comparison with <i>quam</i> ; Ablative of Comparison	152
D. Ablative of Degree of Difference	152
E. Adverbs and Their Comparison	152
F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs	153
G. Partitive Genitive	154
UNIT TEN	162
A. Ablative Absolute	162
B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in <i>-ius</i>	164
C. Ablative of Cause	164
D. Ablative and Genitive of Description	165
E. The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i> and Its Compounds	165
UNIT ELEVEN	176
A. Deponent Verbs	176
B. Semi-Deponent Verbs	178
C. Subjective and Objective Genitive	178
D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic)	179
E. Infinitive As Subject	179
F. The Irregular Verbs <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i>	179
REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN	192
UNIT TWELVE	200
A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	200
B. Direct Questions	201
C. Indirect Questions	202
D. The Adjective <i>idem, eadem, idem, 'same'</i>	205
E. The Pronoun and Adjective <i>quidam, 'certain'</i>	205
F. The Intensive Adjective <i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 'self, very'</i>	205
G. The Demonstrative Adjective <i>iste, ista, istud, 'that (of yours)'</i>	206

UNIT THIRTEEN	217
A. The Indefinite Pronouns aliquis, quis, quisquam, quisque	217
B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs	218
C. Impersonal Passives	219
D. Dative with Compound Verbs	220
E. The Verb fiō , 'be made, be done, happen, become'	220
F. The Numerical Adjective duo, duae, duo , 'two'	221
UNIT FOURTEEN	232
A. Clauses of Result	232
B. Substantive Clauses of Result	233
C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clauses)	234
D. Relative Clauses of Result	235
E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs	236
F. Indirect Reflexives	237
UNIT FIFTEEN	248
A. cum Clauses	248
B. cum Clauses and Ablatives Absolute	249
C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses	250
D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive	250
E. Clauses of Proviso	252
F. Accusative of Exclamation	252
UNIT SIXTEEN	265
A. The Gerund	265
B. The Gerundive	266
C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose	266
D. Impersonal Verbs	267
E. The Impersonals interest and rēfert	269
UNIT SEVENTEEN	279
A. Clauses of Fearing	279
B. Clauses of Doubting	279
C. Clauses of Prevention	280
D. The Supine	281
UNIT EIGHTEEN	291
A. Subjunctive by Attraction	291
B. futūrum esse ut; fore ut	291
C. The Historical Infinitive	292
D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs	292
E. -ēre for -ērunt in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative	293
F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice	293

G. Adverbial Accusative	293
H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting	294
I. Genitive of Indefinite Value	294
J. Ablative of Price	294
K. <i>quod</i> , 'the fact that'	294
REVIEW: UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN	308
APPENDIX	317
Nouns	317
Adjectives	321
Pronouns	325
Verbs	327
Formation of the Future Imperative	362
Review of the Syntax of Nouns	363
Review of the Syntax of Verbs	379
Participles	395
Gerunds	396
Gerundives	396
Supines	396
Conditions in Indirect Statement	397
Conditions in Other Subordinate Clauses	399
Additional Rules	400
Roman Names	401
A Note on Quantitative Rhythm	401
Numerals	405
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	411
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	434
INDEX	449

PREFACE

to the Preliminary Edition

These materials have been written to meet the needs of students who desire a comprehensive, intensive introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a relatively short period of time. They were originally structured to fit the specific format of the Latin Workshop of the University of California at Berkeley and the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College of the City University of New York. Both of these programs aim to provide a rapid introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a period of approximately four weeks of concentrated study, leading to an additional six weeks in which selected classical and medieval texts are treated in depth. However, this book may also be used, at a slower pace, by instructors of less intensive or regular classes.

The introduction of the subjunctive early in the course will permit the supplementary reading of real or slightly altered texts at an early point in the student's career, given substantial vocabulary and syntactical glosses. Selections of connected reading (real, doctored, or manufactured, as need requires) will be found at the end of each Unit. Notes which will aid in the memorization of vocabulary as well as present some of the rules for word formation are provided after each new vocabulary list. In addition, the book contains a complete appendix, divided into two parts:

1. **FORMS.** All paradigms are included in full for reference and review. This will be particularly helpful in those cases where paradigms are not written out in full in the body of the text (e.g., *iste, ista, istud*, Unit 12G). The future imperative, which has been omitted from the actual text because of its infrequent use, appears in the appendix for the first time.

2. **SYNTAX.** An outline of syntax is presented for reference and review. Each construction is illustrated with several examples and so should supplement amply the explanations and illustrations in the main body of the text. In addition, several constructions which do not appear earlier in the book are included so as to make the text a more useful tool for those students who plan to continue with their study of Latin.

Each Unit was originally designed to be covered in a single day of the Berkeley and Brooklyn intensive summer programs, although regular-paced classes

may wish to spend an entire week on each one. Drills which illustrate the new morphological and grammatical concepts are supplied in the text for each Unit. Wherever possible, the vocabulary used in these drills has been limited to words which have already been met, and so the drills may be done without knowledge of the new vocabulary in the Unit. The exercises, in whole or in part, should be prepared by the student at home, and the connected readings, with their ample glosses, provide an excellent opportunity for sight reading in class.

The review Units consist of sentences which illustrate the morphological and grammatical principles taught in the lessons being reviewed. In the first three review Units, these sentences are followed by two review tests which the student may work out on his own or with the aid of an instructor. The six sample review tests in the book are followed by answer keys so as to enable the student to use them as a means of self-review. Maximum benefits may be obtained in reviewing the last Units by reading and carefully parsing the selections from Caesar which form the last part of Unit 18. By this time, students should be able to handle, with the aid of vocabulary glosses, any piece of reasonably straightforward Latin prose.

It is the belief of the authors that the best way to understand the structure of Latin is first through literal English translations, then smoother ones. For this reason, literal translations of illustrative sentences are almost invariably given first, followed by smoother English variants. For example,

Fēmina ā militibus vīsa domum cucurrit.

The woman having been seen by the soldiers ran home; after she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home; since she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home, etc.

Dicit sē fēlicem esse.

He says himself to be happy; he says that he is happy.

In preparing these materials, the following works have been consulted:

Allen and Greenough, *New Latin Grammar* (Boston, 1903)

Gildersleeve and Lodge, *Latin Grammar* (London, 1957)

Krebs and Schmalz, *Antibarbarus der Lateinischen Sprache* (Basel, 1905)

Lane, *A Latin Grammar* (New York, 1898)

Woodcock, *A New Latin Syntax* (London, 1959)

Lewis and Short, *A Latin Dictionary* (Oxford, 1962) is the authority for the meanings of words; long quantities are for the most part based on those found in Walde-Hofmann, *Lateinisches etymologisches Wörterbuch* (Heidelberg, 1938).

For help with the present volume, we are grateful to Ms. Judith Rosner for her contributions to the initial stages of the project, to Mr. Robert E. Kenney

for his kind assistance with xeroxing and duplication, to Ms. Stephanie Russell for help with typing part of the manuscript, and especially to Professors William S. Anderson of the University of California at Berkeley and Charles William Dunmore of New York University for reading through segments of the manuscript and offering many constructive criticisms. In addition, Mr. August Frugé of the University of California Press has been most cooperative and helpful. To Brooklyn College and Professor Ethyle R. Wolfe, Dean of the School of Humanities, go our thanks for encouragement, the opportunity to bring the program to New York City, and for a grant in the summer of 1972 which enabled us to begin the project. Gratitude must also be expressed to those colleagues in the Departments of Classics and Comparative Literature who gave us support, in particular to Professor Anna Griffiths, who has helped us in many ways. Last but not least, it would be remiss of us to conclude without a very special vote of thanks to the department chairman when this was being written, Professor Dennis J. Spinger. If it were not for his eager support of the program, the chances of completing this project would have been diminished severely.

There is one additional group of people, many of whom must remain nameless, who deserve perhaps the most recognition of all — those who have played a role in building the intensive summer Latin programs which inspired this book and for which it was originally written. To Professors W. Ralph Johnson and Alain Renoir of the University of California at Berkeley, Mary-Kay Gamel Orlandi of the University of California at Santa Cruz, John Wyatt of Beloit College, Ms. Catherine R. Freis, current director of the Berkeley Latin Workshop, and Ms. Joan Plotnick and Professor Gail Smith of Brooklyn College go our thanks for their many explicit and implicit contributions to the program and all for which it stands. Most of all, however, we are indebted to the students who have participated in the Berkeley Latin Workshop and the Brooklyn Summer Latin Institute. Their patience and dedication, met only by that of superb teaching staffs, were vital to the success which both programs have enjoyed. It is to them, and to all those who follow them, that this book is dedicated.

Needless to say, the errors and infelicities of style which remain in the following pages are the result of our own short-sightedness and do not bear in the least on the people mentioned above. We hope to iron them out in the final version of the text.

FLOYD L. MORELAND
RITA M. FLEISCHER

New York
February, 1974

PREFACE

to this Edition

Two summers and an academic year of use in beyond-the-intensive, intensive, accelerated, and regular courses have caused this book to be revised in a number of ways. Many errors have been eliminated and some sentences have been rewritten to illustrate better the concepts under consideration as well as to bring them into line with correct Latin usage. Some of the Units have undergone revision, modification, or expansion in order to give a more complete picture of the various syntactical functions. Unit Seven has been reorganized in the interest of greater lucidity, and the treatment of clauses of result and characteristic has been considerably revamped. The Review Tests have been retitled "Self Review" and one of these has been added to the Review of Units 12–18.

So as to make the book adaptable to regular-paced classes which meet three or four times per week, a group of Preliminary Exercises has been added for the first seventeen Units. These will permit breaking down each Unit into two or more manageable parts. Several users have suggested the following arrangement for presentation: the first day is spent rendering (at sight) the reading selections from the previous Unit, while the vocabulary for the new Unit is assigned for homework. On the second day, the first segment of the new Unit is presented and the Preliminary Exercises are assigned. The third day is spent presenting the second segment of the new Unit and then assigning selected sentences from the Unit Exercises. Grammatical principles can be reinforced at any time by going through the Unit Drills. A fourth day can be used doing additional sentences from the Exercises, or the vocabulary for the next Unit might be assigned while the readings are done at sight in class. Of course, other arrangements may be preferred and some instructors will find it useful to spend more time on some Units than on others. The initial four Units, for example, are extremely compact and may well require more time.

A substantial number of the sentences beyond Unit Seven have been built around phrases or thought-patterns from the ancient authors (although references are consistently not given). They have been adapted (in some cases, very slightly) to fit the controlled vocabulary and to afford concentrated practice with new forms and syntax. The problem of including "real" Latin in a begin-

ner's text is a massive one, particularly in the light of the authors' efforts to control the vocabulary and the constructions. Selections with glosses have, however, been included in most of the Units for the benefit of those who prefer that their students have contact with the original sources at an early stage. These selections have been coordinated as much as possible to the forms and syntax of the Unit.

The introduction of the subjunctive and some sophisticated constructions near the beginning of the course will permit reading of unaltered texts early in the term. Rather than include a greater variety of suggested readings in the book, we felt it more useful to leave it to the individual instructor to provide the students with sight material which he or she deems appropriate and interesting. We have found that several of the poems of Catullus are easy to handle from Unit Seven onwards, but others will have different preferences.

There continue to be more than ample exercises and opportunity for practice. The Unit Drills do not, where possible, use the new vocabulary for the Unit and so they permit the drilling of new syntactical functions before the student has mastered the vocabulary. The Preliminary Exercises and the Exercises do use the new vocabulary and provide more than enough practice on forms and syntax. The readings (after Unit Five) attempt to integrate the material of the Unit with actual (or slightly altered) selections from the authors and so a consistent progression from grammar and forms, to practice with synthetic or slightly altered Latin, to exposure to actual excerpts is maintained.

Throughout this book, every attempt has been made to present the grammar in as lucid and clear a way as possible while not oversimplifying it. The exercises and readings tend to be complex from the beginning so as not to give the student a false sense of confidence, but rather to minimize the traditionally difficult transition into the continuous reading of ancient texts. The book does not presume to be a definitive grammar and so many points have of necessity been omitted in order not to overburden the student with a plethora of exceptions and alternate ways of expressing ideas. A great deal about the function of independent subjunctives in hypotaxis, for example, has been omitted on the assumption that this kind of information and analysis can either be supplied by the instructor or might profitably be delayed until such time as the student begins to read continuously and so to expand his or her knowledge of syntax and style.

The book has a complete appendix of morphology and syntax which not only reviews in capsule form the material included in the main text, but also includes other constructions and terms to aid the student as he or she goes on to read. In the few instances where complete paradigms are not included in the body of the text, they will appear in full in the Appendix. The vocabularies at the end are geared to the exercises in the book and by no means are to be considered complete either in their inclusiveness or in the definitions of words.

Users have stated that the book has proved useful both as a beginner's text and as a review text for intermediate Latin classes. The Appendix will be especially valuable as a reference for the latter.

Detailed notes and suggestions submitted by Professors John R. Clark, J. B. Clinard, Elizabeth Constantinides, Gerald M. Quinn, Mr. Steven Lund, Ms. Stephanie Russell, and others have proved most valuable and have caused us to rethink and revise many things; but we have remained stubborn about others. The difficulties involved in editing a text of this kind and in attempting to achieve some degree of consistency in the presentation were greater than we could possibly have imagined. The patient, efficient services of Ms. Susan Peters of the University of California Press and the trained eye and skill of our copy editor, Ms. Ramona Michaelis, have been indispensable in this regard. To them and to other colleagues, students, and friends, we extend our gratitude, not only for whatever polish this edition has acquired over the preliminary one, but also for the opportunity afforded us to reassess our own notions and to learn a great deal more about this language.

F.L.M.

R.M.F.

New York
January, 1976

An Additional Note:

In using the book at the Latin Institute of the City University of New York, we have found that the following poems of Catullus integrate nicely with the Units of the book as indicated below. We provide this information for the reference of instructors who may be looking for appropriate original material to supplement the exercises in the Units.

- Unit 8, Catullus 13
- Unit 9, Catullus 51
- Unit 10, Catullus 9
- Unit 11, Catullus 12
- Unit 13, Catullus 41 and 43
- Unit 14, Catullus 42
- Unit 15, Catullus 5 and 7
- Unit 16, Catullus 101
- Unit 17, Catullus 8
- Unit 18, Catullus 11

INTRODUCTION

A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation

There are twenty-four letters in the Latin alphabet. These are the same as in the English alphabet, except that there is no *j* or *w*. The letters *i* and *u* were used as both vowels and consonants (*u*, when used as a consonant, is written *v* in this book). The sounds for the letters correspond roughly to the sounds in English, but the following observations should be noted.

VOWELS: All vowels are either long or short by nature.

ā (as in <i>father</i>)	frāter, hās
a (as in <i>alike</i>)	multa, parentum
ē (as in the <i>a</i> in <i>save</i>)	valē, tētē
e (as in <i>bet</i>)	vectus, mūnere
ī (as in <i>machine</i>)	prīscō, dormīre
i (as in <i>is, it</i>)	mortis, miser
ō (as in <i>oh, Ohio</i>)	frāternō, mōre, dōnārem
o (as in <i>often</i>)	locus, adloquerer
ū (as in <i>rude</i>)	flētū, fortūna
u (as in the <i>oo</i> in <i>look</i>)	vectus, ut

DIPHTHONGS: (A diphthong occurs when two vowels are pronounced together as one sound.)

ae (as <i>i</i> in <i>alike</i>)	haec, aequora
au (as <i>ou</i> in <i>foul</i>)	laudō, aut
ei (as in <i>rein</i>)	deinde
eu (a combination of <i>e</i> as in <i>bet</i> and an <i>oo</i> sound as in <i>food</i>)	heu
oe (as <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i>)	coepit, proelium
ui (as in <i>twain</i>)	huic, cui

CONSONANTS:

b	(+ s, pronounced like <i>p</i> ; otherwise like English <i>b</i>)	abstulit, barbarus, urbs
c	(always hard, like a <i>k</i>)	accipe, haec, cinerem
g	(always hard, as in get)	gentēs
h	(always pronounced as an aspirate, as in hat)	huius, haec, huic
i	(consonantal; pronounced like <i>y</i> in yes)	Iūnō, iūdex (In some texts, consonantal <i>i</i> is written as <i>j</i> .)
q(u)	(pronounced like <i>kw</i> as in <i>quick</i>)	aequora, nēquiquam
s	(always a sibilant, as in seek)	inferiās, abstulit, tristī
t	(always as in tell)	abstulit, tristī, trādita, mānantia
v	(pronounced like <i>w</i>)	avē atque valē; adveniō, vivit (In some texts, <i>v</i> is written as <i>u</i> . This is called consonantal <i>u</i> .)
x	(pronounced like <i>ks</i>)	dixit
ch	(pronounced like the <i>k h</i> in park here)	character, charta
ph	(pronounced like the <i>p h</i> in top hat)	philosophia
th	(pronounced like the <i>t h</i> in hot head)	theātrum
gu	(pronounced like <i>gw</i>)	lingua

Every letter in a Latin word is pronounced; there are no silent letters.

B. Syllabification

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant after a vowel goes with the following syllable:

mū/tam; ta/men

When a vowel or diphthong is followed by two or more consonants, the first consonant goes with the first syllable, the remainder with the next syllable:

for/tū/na; ad/lo/que/rer

Thus:

fortūna	3 syllables
mānantia	4 syllables
atque	2 syllables (que = qve)
nunc	1 syllable
mūtam	2 syllables
cinerem	3 syllables
tamen	2 syllables
postrēmō	3 syllables
inferiās	4 syllables

C. Accentuation

Every Latin word has one syllable which is slightly stressed over the others. In order to illustrate the rule by which accentuation is determined, it will be necessary to present some terminology.

ultima (**syllaba ultima**, 'last syllable') = the last syllable

penult (**syllaba paene ultima**, 'almost last syllable') = the second syllable from the end

antepenult (**syllaba ante paene ultima**, 'before the almost last syllable') = third syllable from the end

The only two syllables in a Latin word which may receive accent are the penult and the antepenult. Accent is determined by applying the *law of the penult*:

In words of two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent:

múltās géntēs véctus

In words of more than two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent *if it is long*; *if the penult is short*, the accent is placed on the *antepenult*.

A syllable can be long in one of two ways:

1. *Length by nature*. If the syllable contains a long vowel or a diphthong, it is said to be long *by nature*.
2. *Length by position*. If the syllable contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants, it is said to be long *by position*. *x* (= *ks*) is said to be a double consonant.

postrēmō	aéquora	áccipe
paréntum	frátérnō	múnere

Read the following poem aloud, applying the rules for pronunciation, syllabification, and accentuation that have just been presented:

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad inferiās,
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis
 et mūtā nēquiquam adloquerer cinerem,
 quandoquidem fortūna mihi tētē abstulit ipsum,
 heu miser indignē frāter adempte mihi.
 Nunc tamen intereā haec, priscō, quae mōre parentum
 trādita sunt tristī mūnere ad inferiās,
 accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū,
 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.
 (Catullus 101)

D. Word Order

The meaning of an English sentence is often dependent on the order of its words. For example, in the sentence:

Maria sees Anna

the word order tells us clearly that “Maria” is the subject of the verb “sees”, while “Anna” is its object. Switch the words around, and we have altered the sense:

Anna sees Maria.

And, given English idiom, other arrangements are not possible:

Sees Anna Maria Maria Anna sees Sees Maria Anna

Latin word order is far more flexible, for the order of words does not rigidly determine their grammatical relationship. Latin nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs are *inflected*; that is, they change their form, usually at the end of the word, to show their grammatical relationship to other words around them. The word *bends* (*flectere*, ‘to bend’) away from its original form in order to assume different grammatical relationships. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and one is said to *decline* these words.

Thus, if we translate the sentence “Maria sees Anna” into Latin, we have **Marīa videt Annam**. The **-m** ending of **Annam** indicates that this word *must* function as the object of the verb **videt**. The words can appear in any order, but the basic meaning will still be clear:

Marīa Annam videt.
 Annam videt Marīa.
 Videt Annam Marīa.
 Videt Marīa Annam.
 . . .etc.

This does not mean that the order of words in a Latin sentence is strictly fortuitous. Word order shifts because of *emphasis*. The two really emphatic positions in a Latin sentence or clause are the *first* and the *last*. Since the subject and the verb are usually the most emphatic words in a sentence, the normal word order is subject first, verb last. But variations occur. The following will give some idea of what shifts of emphasis can do.

Marīa videt Annam.	Maria sees Anna.	(both “Maria” and “Anna” mildly emphasized)
Marīa Annam videt.	Maria sees Anna.	(normal or neutral order: subject and verb in equal emphasis)
Annam Marīa videt.	Anna is the one whom Maria sees.	(“Anna” emphasized)
Videt Annam Marīa.	Maria <i>sees</i> Anna.	(“Maria” <i>actually sees</i> “Anna”; emphasis on the verbal action)

Of course, the exact thrust or nuance of the emphasis achieved by word order must also be determined from the context in which a given arrangement appears.

What may emerge from this brief illustration is the observation that the more *unusual* a position is for any word, the more *emphatic* it is for that word.

In order to apply this observation, the following remarks about word order are offered:

1. The *subject* of the sentence stands at the beginning of or early in the sentence.
2. The *verb* (or some important part of the predicate) usually comes at the end. *But* forms of the verb **sum**, ‘be’, when used as a link verb, rarely come last.
3. The accusative and dative, expressing the direct and indirect objects of the verb, usually come *before* the verb. Latin in this respect differs decidedly from English:

Ego	librum	filiō	dō.	I give the	book	to	(my) son.
	⏟	⏟			⏟	⏟	
	accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)			accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)	

4. A genitive usually follows the word on which it depends:

librum *fēminae* (a, the) book *of (a, the) woman*; (a, the) *woman's* book

5. Adjectives, when used to describe or give an attribute of the noun, regularly come *after* the noun; but demonstratives, interrogatives, numerals, and adjectives denoting size or quantity regularly come *before* their nouns:

vir bonus	(a, the) <i>good</i> man	(attributive adjective)
puella pulchra	(a, the) <i>beautiful</i> girl	(attributive adjective)
haec urbs	<i>this</i> city	(demonstrative adjective)
multī hominēs	<i>many</i> men	(adjective denoting quantity)
ūnus vir	<i>one</i> man	(numerical adjective)
quae fēmina?	<i>which</i> woman?	(interrogative adjective)

6. Adverbs and their equivalents regularly precede the word or words they qualify:

Ille miles diū vixit.	That soldier lived <i>for a long time</i> .
Hominem gladiō interfēcit.	He killed the man <i>with a sword</i> .
Tē nōn amō.	I do <i>not</i> love you.

When writing sentences in Latin, we would suggest that, at the beginning, you observe the guidelines for word order listed above. As the course progresses, variations in word order will be called to your attention, and when your feel for Latin idiom and emphasis begins to grow, you will discover the multiple nuances you can create in a Latin sentence just by ordering its words skillfully and artistically.

ABBREVIATIONS

Used in This Book

The following abbreviations appear throughout:

Case

nom. (nominative)
gen. (genitive)
dat. (dative)
acc. (accusative)
abl. (ablative)

Tense

pres. (present)
imperf. (imperfect)
perf. (perfect)
pluperf. (pluperfect)
fut. (future)
fut. perf. (future perfect)

Parts of Speech

pron. (pronoun)
adj. (adjective)
adv. (adverb)
prep. (preposition)
interj. (interjection)
conj. (conjunction)

Number

sing. (singular)
pl. (plural)

Gender

masc. *or* M. (masculine)
fem. *or* F. (feminine)
neut. *or* N. (neuter)

Mood

indic. (indicative)
subj. (subjunctive)

Other abbreviations:

inf. (infinitive)
lit. (literally)
rel. (relative)

Note: A star (★) before a word denotes that the form is a hypothetical one.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

There are eight parts of speech: *noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, conjunction, interjection, preposition.*

A *noun* is a word used to express the name of a person, place, or thing.

Examples: boy, dog, horses, Chicago, window, feet.

A *pronoun* is a word used in place of a noun.

Examples: he, she, it, we, us, them, ours, mine.

An *adjective* is a word used to describe a noun.

Examples: big, small, red, tall, new, old.

A *verb* is a word used to express action or a state of being.

Examples: run, walk, eat, sleep, cough, chew, am, is, are, stand, was, were, appear, seem.

An *adverb* is a word used to describe a verb, adverb, or an adjective.

Examples: quickly, very, beautifully, happily, too.

A *conjunction* is a word used to connect sentences, clauses, phrases, or words.

Examples: and, if, or, but, since, although.

An *interjection* is a word or sound which expresses an emotion.

Examples: oh, ouch, phew, damn!, ugh.

A *preposition* is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun which is used to indicate position, direction, time, or some other abstract relation.

Examples: by, from, to, with, at, in, on, for.

NOUNS and pronouns have the qualities of *gender, number, and case.*

There are three *genders*: masculine, feminine, and neuter. In English, nouns are feminine if they are the name of a female creature: “woman, girl, mare, ewe,

hen, doe, aviatrix, actress, sow, cow, bitch”; masculine if they are the name of a male creature: “man, boy, gander, stallion, actor, aviator, rooster, bull”; neuter if the noun is neither masculine nor feminine. Usually, we think of a neuter noun as an inanimate one: “window, blackboard, chalk, chair, table”. However, in English, we sometimes personify a neuter noun and change its gender; for example, many people speak of their car (a neuter word) as a feminine creature. They will say of a new car: “She’s a beauty. She gets 38 miles to the gallon,” etc. Ships, too, are often referred to as females: “She was listing at a forty-five degree angle.” In Latin, the gender of each noun must be memorized as each noun is learned, since its gender is not readily apparent in many instances.

In Latin, there are two *numbers*: singular and plural. Singular refers to one object, plural, to more than one. In English, for the most part, the plural is formed by adding -s to the singular form: “house, houses”; “dog, dogs”; “girl, girls”. However, some words change their spelling altogether to indicate that they are plural: “mouse, mice”; “foot, feet”; “die, dice”. These forms have to be learned; they cannot be guessed at.

English has three *cases*: subjective, possessive, and objective. The subjective case is used for the subject of a verb: “I, he, we”. The objective case is used for the object (either of a verb or a preposition): “me, him, us”. The possessive case is used to show possession: “Mary’s, mine, his, ours”. Latin has six cases and some words show a trace of a seventh case.

VERBS have the qualities of *person, number, tense, voice, and mood*.

By *person* is meant first, second, or third. The *first* person is “I” in the singular, “we” in the plural. The *second* person is “you”. (Note that in Latin there is no special polite form for the pronoun “you”; the singular is used for one “you” and the plural is used for more than one “you”.) The *third* person is “he, she, it” in the singular, “they” in the plural.

By *number* is meant singular and plural.

Tense indicates *time* and *aspect*; we speak of the present tense, past tense, and future tense. In addition, we speak of simple aspect, continuous (progressive) aspect, and completed aspect. In Latin there are six tenses.

Latin has two *voices*: active and passive. A verb in the *active* voice has a *subject* which is *doing* the action of the verb:

The pitcher *is throwing* the ball.

The dog *bit* the child.

Will the ball *break* the window?

A verb in the *passive* voice has a subject which is *not doing* the action of the verb, but which is *having the action* of the verb *done* to it:

The ball *is being thrown* by the pitcher.

The child *was bitten* by the dog.

Will the window *be broken* by the ball?

The *mood* of the verb expresses *how* the action of the verb is conceived. If the action is conceived of as a *command*, then the *imperative* mood will be used:

Get me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as a statement of *fact*, then the *indicative* mood will be used:

She *got* me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as an *idea* or a *possibility* (rather than an actual fact), then the *subjunctive* mood will be used:

If I *were* thirsty (but I'm not; therefore, it is not a fact), would you get me a drink of water?

In Latin there are three moods.

An ADJECTIVE may be used as a noun; when it is, it is called a *substantive*.

Examples:

Only *the brave* deserve *the fair*.

Blessed are *the meek*.

Fortune favors *the brave*.

In Latin when the substantive is *masculine*, it refers to *men*; when it is *feminine*, it refers to *women*; and when it is *neuter*, it refers to *things*.

Latin does not have an article; there is no word for "a, an", or "the". Latin uses far fewer words than English does: it can omit such words as "his, her, its", and the verb "to be" may be omitted frequently. There need not be a separate word to express the subject of a verb; the subject may simply be indicated in the verb itself. Thus, it is conceivable that the following is a complete Latin sentence:

Docent. They are teaching.

Latin is an inflected language. *Inflection* is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations. The inflection of a *noun*, *pronoun*, or *adjective* is called *declension*. The inflection of a *verb* is called *conjugation*. Inflection can be seen in English in the following ways:

boy	singular
boy's	singular possessive case
boys	plural
boys'	plural possessive case
I, he, she	subjective
me, him, her	objective

Note that, for nouns, -'s or -s' indicates possession.

In the conjugation of the verb "to be"

am
are
is

"am" is obviously first person singular and "is" is third person singular.

Inflection was more common in older English, where *-st* was the ending for the second person singular of the verb and *-th* was the ending for the third person singular present.

do	say
dost	sayest
doth	saith

Nowadays, the only remnant of inflection in most verbs is the final *-s* of the third person singular in the present tense.

say	want	see
says	wants	sees

A SELECTED GLOSSARY

of Important Terms

This glossary is provided as a reference for some of the basic terminology which a student of Latin will encounter. Presented from the point of view of English, it will serve as a partial review of grammatical terms and as a foundation on which one's study of Latin may be built. It should be used in conjunction with the main text and the appendix.

A nominative *absolute* is a participial construction which is not in close grammatical connection with the main sentence. Example:

This being a legal holiday, ("This" is in the nominative (subjective) case,
I refuse to work. as is the participle "being", which agrees with
it.)

An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or a general idea. Examples:

thoughtfulness, loyalty, freedom

Agreement is the correspondence in one or more categories between a noun and the adjective which describes it, a subject and its verb, or a pronoun and its antecedent. Examples:

<i>much</i> noise	(noun and adjective both singular)
<i>many</i> noises	(noun and adjective both plural)
he knows	(subject and verb both singular)
The <i>book which</i> he lost is mine.	(antecedent and pronoun both neuter)

Antecedent. The word for which the pronoun stands. Example:

The *man* whom you know is good.

Apodosis. The conclusion in a conditional sentence (cf. *Protasis*). Example:

If it should rain, *I'll take an umbrella.*

Apposition. A word placed next to another one which means or indicates the same thing. Example:

John, *the farmer*, is a good man.

The appositive must be in the same case as the word to which it refers.

Aspect. The category of the verb which indicates whether the action is simple, continuous (progressive), or completed. Examples from the point of view of present time:

he walks (simple)
 he is walking (continuous or progressive)
 he has walked (completed)

Attributive. An attributive adjective is one which describes or modifies a noun (as opposed to a substantive adjective). An adjective is said to be in attributive position if, in English, it precedes the noun it modifies (“the *brave* man”). This is in contrast with the predicate adjective which, in English, comes after the linking verb (“he seems *brave*”).

Clause. A group of words which contains a subject and a verb but is in itself not a complete sentence, but a part of a complex or compound sentence.

A *causal* clause is introduced by “since” or “because”.

A *circumstantial* clause is introduced by “when” or “after” and stresses the circumstances in which the action occurs.

A *concessive* clause is introduced by “although, though, granted that”.

A *temporal* clause indicates the time at which the action occurs and is introduced by “when, after, before, as, while”.

A *collective noun* is a word in the singular which names a group of people. Examples:

group, crowd, populace, senate

The *comparative* degree of the adjective indicates an increased amount of the quality of the positive form of the adjective. In English, the comparative degree is shown by adding *-er* to the simple form of the adjective or by adding “more”, “rather”, or “too” to the positive degree. Examples:

fatter, more beautiful, rather pretty, too big

A *complementary infinitive* is used to complete the meanings of certain verbs such as “be able, try, ought”. Example:

He ought *to go*.

A *complex* sentence is a sentence which contains at least one dependent and one independent clause. Example:

While we were away, our house was robbed.

A *compound* sentence is a sentence which contains two or more independent clauses. Example:

My sister went to the beach and I stayed home.

A *conditional* sentence is a sentence which contains two clauses: a protasis and an apodosis. Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

A *contrafactual* (contrary-to-fact) condition is a condition which is not true. Example:

If I were an elephant, I would have a trunk (but I'm not an elephant; therefore, I don't have a trunk).

A *coordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence without subordinating one to the other. Examples:

and, but, or

Correlatives are words regularly used together which balance each other. Examples:

both...and; either...or; the more...the....

A *demonstrative* is a word which points out something. Examples:

this, that, these, those

A *denominative* verb is a verb made from a noun. Examples:

broadcast, flag (i.e., flag down a train).

A *dependent* clause is a clause which does not make a complete statement by itself. Example:

because we are busy

Diminutives are nouns which indicate a small size, endearment, or contempt. Examples:

duckling, pussykin, pup

The most common diminutive endings in English are: *-et* (*-ette*), *-y*, *-ie*, *-ey*. Examples:

piglet, statuette, Bobby, bookie, lovey

Ellipsis is the omission of a word or words which are necessary for grammatical completeness. Example:

The man we saw was drunk. *instead of* The man whom we saw was drunk.

An *enclitic* is a word which in pronunciation is so closely connected to the preceding word that it loses its own accent. Examples:

give me (often pronounced "gimme"), want to (often pronounced "wanna"), should have (often pronounced "shoulda").

An *epexegetical* infinitive is an infinitive which depends on and limits an adjective. Example:

difficult *to imagine*

An *expletive* is a word which serves no grammatical function, but which fills up a sentence or gives emphasis. Example:

There are five people here.

A *finite* verb is a verb which is limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Examples:

was, am, eats

The *frequentative* (iterative) aspect of a verb expresses repeated action. Example:

He keeps walking.

A *gerund* is a verbal noun. Example:

Swimming is good exercise.

Hypotaxis (subordination) is the subordination of one clause to another.

An *idiom* is an expression which is peculiar to a language. Example:

to be on the up and up

Idiom also refers to the characteristic modes of expression of a given language.

An *impersonal* verb is a verb which lacks a personal subject and is found only in the third person singular. Example:

It is raining.

The *inchoative* (inceptive) aspect of a verb expresses the beginning of an action. Example:

He is beginning to crawl.

An *indefinite* pronoun refers to a not specific person or thing. Examples:

someone, somebody, anyone, anybody

An *independent* clause is a main clause, one that is not subordinate.

An *indirect object* is found with verbs of giving, telling, and showing. Someone gives or tells or shows something *to somebody*; the "somebody" is the indirect object. Example:

John gave *Mary* the book.

Indirect discourse is of three types:

An *indirect statement*, regularly introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, expresses what someone says, thinks, feels, or believes without using a direct quotation. Example:

“I do not feel good.” (direct statement)
He says *that he does not feel good*. (indirect statement)

An *indirect question*, introduced by an interrogative word, expresses what someone asks, considers, wonders, or states without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Why did you do that?” (direct question)
I wonder *why you did that*. (indirect question)

An *indirect command* expresses what someone commands, urges, warns, or begs without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Don’t go.” (direct command)
I urge you *not to go*. (indirect command)

The *infinitive* is the form of the verb which is not limited by person or number. Example:

to see, to have done

Inflection is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relationship to the other words around it.

The *intensive adjective* is used to emphasize the word it describes. Example:

He is the *very* man I meant.

An *interrogative* asks a question. An interrogative sentence is a sentence which asks a question. The interrogative pronoun in English is “who” or “what”; the interrogative adjective is “what, which”.

An *intransitive verb* is a verb which does not take a direct object. Examples:

fall, go, die

A *macron* is a mark (ˉ) placed above a long vowel to mark its quantity.

Morphology is the study of the basic formations of words.

The *object* receives the action of the verb. Example:

The child broke the *pitcher*.

A *paradigm* is a model or pattern which contains all the inflectional variations of a given word. Examples:

man, man's, men, men's; he, his, him, they, their (theirs), them

Parataxis (coordination) is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side. Example:

We left; she stayed.

A *participle* is a verbal adjective. Example:

The *screaming* woman caught our attention.

Periphrasis (circumlocution) is a roundabout expression of a simple idea. Example:

Illumination is required to be extinguished *is a periphrasis for* Lights must be put out.

Phonology is the study of the sounds of a language.

A *phrase* is a group of words without a subject or verb. It may be used as an adjective or an adverb. Examples:

on time, without money, by whom

A *possessive* pronoun or adjective shows ownership. Example:

mine, yours, my, your, his

The *predicate*, in English, is the verb and the part of the sentence that comes after the verb. A *predicate nominative* is a noun or pronoun which follows a linking verb (such as the verbs "to be, seem, appear") and which is the same as the subject. Example:

Tom is a *farmer*.

The same case follows the linking verb as precedes it; the linking verb can *not* take an object. Thus, in the example given above, both "Tom" and "farmer" are in the nominative case. A *predicate adjective* is an adjective which follows a linking verb. Example:

Tom is *tall*.

Once again, "tall" is in the nominative case; the verb "to be" can *not* take an object.

Protasis is the clause containing the condition in a conditional sentence (cf. *Apodosis*). Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

Proviso. A clause of proviso expresses a conditional or a provisional idea.

Example:

They will come, *provided that we invite them.*

A *reflexive* pronoun refers to the subject of the main verb. Example:

He cut *himself.*

A *relative* pronoun, “who, which, that”, introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent of that pronoun. Example:

The man *whom* we saw was very tall.

The relative pronoun has the same gender as its antecedent, but it takes its case from its use in its own clause.

The *root* of a word is the basic element that gives the meaning of the word. Examples:

export, reporter, transportation

A *sentence* is a group of words with a subject and a verb; it expresses a complete thought, feeling, question, or command.

The *stem* is that part of a word to which endings are added. Example:

annihilated, annihilation

The *subject* performs the action of the verb. Example:

The *pitcher* threw the ball.

A *subordinate* clause is a dependent clause.

A *subordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence in a way in which one will be subordinate to or dependent upon the other. Examples:

since, when, although, that

A *substantive* is an adjective or any other word or clause used as a noun. Example:

Blessed are *the meek.*

What you have done is troublesome to me.

It is also any noun.

The *superlative* degree of an adjective indicates the greatest amount of the quality of the positive form of that adjective. In English, the superlative degree is shown by adding *-est* to the simple form of the adjective, or by adding “most, very” or “extremely” to the positive degree. Examples:

youngest, most expensive, very tall, extremely handsome

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb.

Syntax is the portion of grammar which deals with the relationship of words to each other in the sentence.

A *transitive* verb is a verb which may take an object. Examples:

see, eat, hit

UNIT ONE

A. The Verbal System

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. Finite verb forms have the qualities of person, number, tense, voice, and mood.

1. **PERSON:** The Latin verb form, without the aid of pronouns, indicates whether the subject is in the *first* ("I, we"), *second* ("you"), or *third* ("he, she, it, they") persons.
2. **NUMBER:** The inflection of a verb shows whether the subject is *singular* or *plural*.
3. **TENSE:** The tense of a verb tells us *when* the action occurs, has occurred, or will occur. The simplest categories of tense (time) are *present*, *past*, and *future*, but since there is the additional concern as to the completeness or the continuation of the stated act, some refinements of the present, past, and future divisions are required.
4. **VOICE:** There are two grammatical voices in Latin: the *active* indicates that the subject is the doer of the act; the *passive* shows the subject as the recipient of the verbal action.
5. **MOOD:** There are three moods or tones of verbal action. By mood we refer to the manner in which the speaker conceives of the action. The *indicative* mood is the mood of *fact* and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. The *subjunctive* is the mood used to express *idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, or anticipation*. The *imperative* mood expresses the action as a *command*.

B. The Tenses of the Indicative

There are six tenses in the indicative mood.

1. **PRESENT:** The present tense indicates an action which is going on now or is habitual.

optat he desires, he is desiring, he (always) desires, he does desire

NOTE: The Latin form makes no distinction between the simple present tense and the present progressive.

2. **IMPERFECT**: (**imperfectum** = 'not completed'): The imperfect describes an action which was going on or was habitual in the past. The imperfect is in some respects a motion picture of past action.

optābat he desired (continually, habitually), he was desiring, he used to desire, he kept on desiring

3. **FUTURE**: The future refers to an action which will occur at some later time.

optābit he will desire, he will be desiring

NOTE: Again, the Latin form makes no distinction between the simple future and the future progressive.

4. **PERFECT** (**perfectum** = 'completed'): The perfect tense describes one of two types of action:

- a. one which took place at some point in the past.

optāvit he desired

NOTE: This aspect of the perfect is most nearly equivalent to the English past tense. It is a snapshot of past action.

- b. one which is completed from the point of view of the present.

optāvit he has desired

NOTE: This aspect is most nearly equivalent to the English present perfect.

5. **PLUPERFECT [PAST PERFECT]** (**plūs quam perfectum** = 'more than completed'): This tense describes an action which was already completed at some time in the past.

optāverat he had desired

6. **FUTURE PERFECT**: The future perfect indicates an action which will be completed before some point of time in the future.

optāverit he will have desired (i.e., by next week)

The six Latin tenses in the indicative, then, express not only matters of *time* but also those of *aspect*. The following chart will illustrate the uses of the tenses in these terms.

TENSES

		Present	Past	Future
ASPECTS	Simple	optat he desires (Present)	optāvit he desired (Perfect)	optābit he will desire (Future)
	Continuous (Progressive)	optat he is desiring (Present)	optābat he was desiring (Imperfect)	optābit he will be desiring (Future)
	Completed	optāvit he has desired (Perfect)	optāverat he had desired (Pluperfect)	optāverit he will have desired (Future Perfect)

The tenses in the second vertical column, that is, all those which refer to past time, are called *secondary* tenses. Those in the first and third columns, which refer to present and future time, are called *primary* tenses.

PRIMARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Present

Future

Future Perfect

Perfect (when equivalent to
English present perfect)

SECONDARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Imperfect

Perfect (when equivalent to English
past tense)

Pluperfect

Both lists above will prove very valuable to you as you progress with your study of Latin. Refer to them frequently.

C. The Infinitive

The verb forms discussed above are *finite* forms. The Latin word **finis** means 'boundary' or 'limit', and so *finite* forms are those which are bounded or limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. The *infinitive* is *not* limited as to person, number, and mood, but it does show tense and voice.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāre to desire	optārī to be desired
Perfect	optāvisse to have desired	optātus esse to have been desired
Future	optātūrus esse to be going to desire	optātum iri to be going to be desired (this form is rare in classical Latin)

The infinitive is in fact an abstract verbal noun. **Optāre** can thus be translated not only as 'to desire' but as 'desiring' and so expresses a verbal activity.

D. The Four Conjugations

With the exception of the verb “to be”, every verb in Latin belongs to one of four classes or *conjugations*: the first, second, third, or fourth. These conjugations are distinguished from one another by the form of the present infinitive.

Verbs of the first conjugation have a present infinitive in **-āre**.

optāre to desire

Verbs of the second conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ēre**.

implēre to fill

Verbs of the third conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ere**.

incipere to begin

Verbs of the fourth conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ire**.

sentire to feel, perceive

E. The Principal Parts

Most verbs in Latin have four principal parts. For example, the vocabulary entry for the verb **optō**, ‘to desire’, appears thus:

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus

The forms, written in full, are

optō, optāre, optāvi, optātus

and are explained as follows.

optō	first person singular, present active indicative	I desire
optāre	present active infinitive	to desire
optāvi	first person singular, perfect active indicative	I desired, I have desired
optātus	perfect passive participle	having been desired, de- sired

It is essential that the four principal parts for each verb be learned as part of the vocabulary, for without these parts it will not be possible to conjugate the verb fully. This fact will become obvious shortly.

F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations

1. A Latin verb usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The stem for the present, imperfect, and future tenses is called the *present stem* and is derived from the second principal part of the verb, i.e., from the present infinitive: the **-re** ending is dropped. This is true for all four conjugations.

	STEM
optō, -āre	optā/re
impleō, -ēre	implē/re
incipiō, -ere	incipe/re
sentiō, -ire	senti/re

3. The present tense has no tense sign. However, the tense sign of the imperfect for all conjugations is **-bā-**, and that of the future for the first and second conjugations is **-bi-**. These tense signs are added to the stem.

optō, optāre:

optā- (present), optābā- (imperfect), optābi- (future)

impleō, implēre:

implē- (present), implēbā- (imperfect), implēbi- (future)

4. Finally, the personal endings are added, indicating the person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural) of the verb. The endings for the active voice are as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION:

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	optō	optābam*	optābō
2 -s	optās	optābās	optābis
3 -t	optat*	optābat	optābit

PLURAL

1 -mus	optāmus	optābāmus	optābimus
2 -tis	optātis	optābātis	optābitis
3 -nt	optant*	optābant	optābunt

* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-nt**.

SECOND CONJUGATION:

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	impleō	implēbam	implēbō
2 -s	implēs	implēbās	implēbis
3 -t	implet	implēbat	implēbit

PLURAL

1 -mus	implēmus	implēbāmus	implēbimus
2 -tis	implētis	implēbātis	implēbitis
3 -nt	implent	implēbant	implēbunt

The only irregularities which are obvious above are really not problematic. In the first person singular of the first conjugation, the *-ā-* of the stem is absorbed into the *-ō* personal ending. This is true of all verbs of the first conjugation, but there is no trouble with this since the first person singular form is learned as a vocabulary item. Note that the *-ō* and *-m* endings for the first person singular are *not* interchangeable. The paradigms will illustrate which ending is to be used for each tense. (The future of the first and second conjugations and the present indicative of all conjugations use the *-ō* endings in the first person singular. All other tenses in the present system use the *-m* ending.)

In the future of the first two conjugations, the *-i-* of the tense sign is absorbed into the *-ō* personal ending and changes to *-u-* in the third person plural.

Therefore, in order to interpret a Latin verb form in the present system, one reads backwards:

optābant *-nt* = 'they'
-ba- = imperfect tense
 optā- = 'desire'

THEREFORE: 'they used to desire' (third person plural imperfect active indicative)

clāmābis *-s* = 'you' (sing.)
-bi- = future tense
 clāmā- — 'shout'

THEREFORE: 'you will shout' (second person singular future active indicative)

terrēmus *-mus* = 'we'
 -- = present tense (no tense sign)
 terrē- = 'frighten'

THEREFORE: 'we frighten' (first person plural present active indicative)

G. The Irregular Verb *sum*, 'be'

As in all Indo-European languages, the verb "to be" is somewhat irregular and must be learned thoroughly. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of this verb are given below. Despite the irregularities, note that the personal endings are those which one would normally expect.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 'be'

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

H. The Noun System

The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and such words are said to be *declined*.

Every Latin noun belongs to one of three grammatical *genders*: *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*. The gender of each noun must be learned as a vocabulary item, for it is important in the matter of noun and adjective agreement.

The inflection, or declension, of nouns shows the qualities of *number* and *case*. The case endings indicate the grammatical and syntactical relationship of the given noun to the other words in the sentence. Whereas English relies largely on word order to illustrate such relationships, Latin relies on its inflections. In addition, where the English uses a prepositional phrase, the Latin frequently needs only the one inflected word. See examples under GENITIVE and DATIVE below.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Latin. The articles “the, a, an” are frequently supplied in an English translation.

There are five cases which will be of concern to us at the present. These are: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative. The basic uses of each case are described below.

1. NOMINATIVE: This is the case of the subject and the predicate nominative.

Fēmina optat. *The woman* desires.

Fēmina est **rēgīna**. *The woman* is a *queen*.

2. GENITIVE: In general, the genitive case is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun and is often introduced by the preposition “of” in English (except where “of” means ‘concerning’).

patria **fēminae** the native land *of the woman*, *the woman’s* native land

timor **aquae** fear *of water*

urna **pecūniae** a jar *of money*

3. DATIVE: This case generally expresses the person (or thing), with the exception of the subject and object, *with reference to* whom (or what) the action or idea of the main verb is relevant. It is usually rendered in English by the prepositions “to” or “for”, and one of its uses includes the indirect object.

Taedam **fēminae** dat. He gives the torch *to the woman*. (*Fēminae* is the *referent* of the action; that is, the action of the verb occurs *with reference to* her.)

Taedam **fēminae** optat. He chooses a torch *for the woman*.

4. **ACCUSATIVE:** Essentially, the accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

Fēminam videt. He sees *the woman*.
 Fēmina in **aquam** ambulābit. The woman will walk into *the water*.

5. **ABLATIVE:** The ablative generally expresses notions connected with the English prepositions “from, with, in”, and “by”. Sometimes prepositions are required to express these notions; other times the case ending alone serves this purpose. Distinctions will be pointed out in later Units.

Cum **fēminā** ambulat. He walks with *the woman*.
 Fēmina est in **aquā**. The woman is in *the water*.
 Nauta fēminam **taedā** terret. The sailor frightens the woman *with a torch*.

I. The First Declension

There are five basic groups of nouns in Latin. Each of these is called a *declension*. These declensions are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular: for the first declension, this is **-ae**, for the second, **-ī**, for the third, **-is**, for the fourth, **-ūs**, and for the fifth, **-eī**. At present we shall be concerned only with the first of these groups, the first declension.

Noun entries in the vocabulary lists are given in three parts:

fēmina, -ae, F.

The first of these parts is the nominative singular form; the second indicates the ending of the genitive singular; the third reveals the gender of the noun (*M.* for masculine, *F.* for feminine, *N.* for neuter). Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, but there are a few which are masculine.

A noun form consists of a stem and a case ending. In order to arrive at the stem of any noun in Latin, take the full genitive singular form and drop the ending.

fēmin / **ae**
 (stem) (ending)

For the first declension, it may seem pointless to go to the genitive form to arrive at the stem when the same results might be obtained by using the nominative form. But for many nouns the genitive form is significantly different from the nominative, so that the stem for all nouns can only be found by this procedure.

To this stem the endings of the particular declension are added. The endings for the first declension are:

SINGULAR

Nominative	-a	fēmina	(the, a) woman (subject)
Genitive	-ae	fēminae	of (the, a) woman, (the, a) woman's
Dative	-ae	fēminae	to/for (the, a) woman
Accusative	-am	fēminam	(the, a) woman (object)
Ablative	-ā	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the, a) woman

PLURAL

Nominative	-ae	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Genitive	-ārum	fēminārum	of (the) women, (the) women's
Dative	-īs	fēminīs	to/for (the) women
Accusative	-ās	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Ablative	-īs	fēminīs	from/with/in/by (the) women

UNIT ONE — VOCABULARY

ambulō (1)*	walk
aqua , -ae, F.	water
clāmō (1)	shout
corōna , -ae, F.	crown, wreath
corōnō (1)	crown
cum (prep. + abl.)	with
cūra , -ae, F.	care, concern, anxiety
dē (prep. + abl.)	concerning, about; (down) from
dō , dare, dedī, datus	give, grant
dōnō (1)	give, present, reward
ē , ex (prep. + abl.)	out of, from ¹
enim (postpositive conj.)	indeed, of course; for
et (conj.)	and
et . . . et	both . . . and
(adv.)	even
fāma , -ae, F.	talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation
fēmina , -ae, F.	woman
fōrma , -ae, F.	form, shape, figure, beauty
habeō , -ēre, habuī, habitus	have, hold, possess, consider
impleō , -ēre, implēvī, implētus	fill, fill up
in (prep. + acc.)	into, onto (motion toward)
(prep. + abl.)	in, on (place where)
īnsula , -ae, F.	island
nauta , -ae, M.	sailor

-ne (enclitic)	(added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question) ²
nōn (adv.)	not
optō (1)	desire, wish (for); choose
patria , -ae, F.	native land, country
pecūnia , -ae, F.	money
poena , -ae, F.	penalty, punishment
poenās dare	to pay a penalty
poēta , -ae, M.	poet
porta , -ae, F.	gate
-que (enclitic)	and ³
rēgina , -ae, F.	queen
sed (conj.)	but
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	be, exist
taeda , -ae, F.	torch
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus	frighten, alarm, terrify
timeō, -ēre, timuī, --	fear, be afraid (of)
turba , -ae, F.	crowd, uproar
via , -ae, F.	way, road, path, street
videō, -ēre, vidi, vīsus	see

* The entry (1) after a verb indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**.

¹ ē before a word beginning with a consonant; ex before a vowel or h and sometimes before a consonant.

² e.g., *Time*ne? Is he afraid?

*Fēminās*ne vidēs? Do you see the women?

³ e.g., *poēta rēgina*que = *poēta et rēgina*

UNIT ONE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Many verbs in Latin derive from nouns. For example, **corōnō, corōnāre, corōnāvī, corōnātus**, ‘crown’, comes from **corōna, corōnae, F.**, ‘crown’. Such verbs are called denominatives.

The preposition **cum**, ‘with’, always takes the ablative case: **cum cūrā**, ‘with care’, **cum fēminā**, ‘with a woman’.

Note that **dē** has both the meaning ‘concerning’ and ‘down from’. It always takes the ablative case.

Although most first conjugation verbs follow the pattern **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**, the verb **dō, dare**, ‘give’, does not. The **-a-** in the infinitive is short and the other principal parts are **dedī, datus**. When an infinitive is used with this verb, it is best to use the meaning ‘grant, allow’ for **dō**. For example:

Rēgīna fēminās vidēre corōnam dat. The queen grants (allows) the women to see (her) crown.

The first conjugation verb **dōnō**, 'give, present, reward', may govern an accusative and a dative *or* an accusative and ablative. In other words, with **dōnō**, one may present something to someone or present someone with something:

Aquam nautīs dōnābimus. We shall give water to the sailors.

Nautās aquā dōnābimus. We shall present the sailors with water.

Enim, 'indeed, of course', is a postpositive conjunction. This means that it cannot be the first word of a clause. Usually, a word that is postpositive is placed as the second word of a clause. **Enim** generally introduces a statement which corroborates what precedes.

Et means 'and'. In a series, the first **et** means 'both'. For example:

Et fēminae et nautae in viā ambulant. Both the women and the sailors are walking in the street.

As an adverb, **et** means 'even':

Et rēgīna poenās dabat. Even the queen was paying the penalty.

One cannot know for sure exactly what the principal parts of a verb in the second conjugation will be:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus	have
impleō, implēre, implēvi, implētus	fill
videō, vidēre, vīdī, visus	see

Thus, each verb must be learned thoroughly; one cannot simply guess at the principal parts.

The preposition **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case, with a difference in meaning. The accusative case is used to express movement toward; thus **in** with the accusative means 'into' or 'onto': **in turbam**, 'into the crowd'. Sometimes this movement can be in a hostile sense, as 'The man led his troops against the sailors' (**in nautās**). The ablative case, on the other hand, is not associated with movement, but with location. Thus **in** with the ablative means 'in' or 'on': **in turbā**, 'in the crowd'.

A vowel before **-ns-** is long; thus, **īnsula**, **īnsulae**, F., 'island'.

Literally, the idiom **poenās dare** means 'to give punishments', but the actual meaning is the opposite, 'to pay a penalty'. Of course, the verb is conjugated:

Poenās dabit. He will pay the penalty.

Although most nouns of the first declension are feminine, **poēta**, **poētae**, 'poet', and **nauta**, **nautae**, 'sailor', are masculine. These words are declined in the same way as the feminine nouns of the first declension.

An enclitic is attached to the end of a word and is pronounced with it. In English we translate **-que**. 'and', *before* the word to which it is attached:

poētae nautaeque	the poets and sailors
Fēminās vidēbunt rēginamque corōnābunt.	They will see the women and crown the queen.

The verb "to be" is irregular in most languages; Latin is no exception. Note that **est** may be translated 'there is' as well as 'he, she, it is'. Thus, **erat**, 'there was'; **erit**, 'there will be'. Since the verb "to be" cannot logically have a passive voice, it does not have a perfect passive participle (which, for most verbs, is given as the fourth principal part). In its place, the future active participle has been provided. Translate **futūrus** as 'going to be'. Of course the verb "to be" cannot take an object. When this verb is used as a "linking" verb, one finds the same case preceding and following it.

Nauta est poēta. The sailor is a poet.

Timeō, timēre, timuī, --, 'fear', lacks a fourth principal part. In order not to confuse the meanings of **terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus**, 'frighten', and **timeō**, remember that **terreō** means 'terrify' and that a timid person is one who is afraid.

Caesar's famous expression, **Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**, 'I came, I saw, I conquered', is a very handy way of remembering the third principal parts of these verbs (**veniō**, 'come', Unit Two; **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**, 'see'; and **vincō**, 'conquer', Unit Fourteen).

Note that the **-ī** in the perfect tenses of **videō** is long (**vīdī**). Very often in Latin the short vowel in the present stem lengthens in the perfect.

UNIT ONE — DRILL

I.

Translate:

1. Fēminae in viā ambulant.
2. Fēminaene in viā ambulābunt?
3. Fēminae in viā nōn ambulābant.
4. Estne rēgīna in insulā?
5. Rēgīna in insulā nōn erat sed erit.
6. Pecūniam habētis? Nōn habēmus.
7. Pecūniam habēs? Nōn habeō.
8. Et pecūniam et fāmam habēbis.
9. Pecūniam habēbāmus sed fāmam habēbātis.

10. Pecūniam nōn habēbō sed fāmam habēbimus.
11. Turbamne terrēbās? Nōn terrēbam.
12. Aquam nautīs dabitīs?

II.

- A. Decline **porta**, **turba**, and **rēgīna** fully.
- B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural (in some instances there may be two possible answers):

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. rēgīnam | 3. fēminā | 5. nauta |
| 2. fāmae | 4. corōna | |

III.

Translate into Latin:

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. with the queens | 6. I am |
| 2. to the poet | 7. we shall shout |
| 3. of women | 8. they used to be afraid |
| 4. on the gates | 9. you (pl.) are desiring |
| 5. crown (object) | 10. to give |

UNIT ONE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F, G)

I.

- A. What are the stems of **impleō**, **implēre**; **corōnō**, **corōnāre**; **dō**, **dare**; **videō**, **vidēre**?
- B. Conjugate **dōnō** in the imperfect active indicative.
- C. Conjugate **timeō** in the future active indicative.
- D. Conjugate **habeō** in the present active indicative.
- E. Give the second person singular of **clāmō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active indicative.

II.

- A. Identify each of the following forms:

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. vidētīs | 6. es |
| 2. vidēbās | 7. erat |
| 3. vidēbis | 8. erit |
| 4. clāmātīs | 9. est |
| 5. ambulābātīs | 10. habēre |

B. Change from singular to plural:

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. ambulat | 6. implēs |
| 2. corōnō | 7. optās |
| 3. habēs | 8. sum |
| 4. erit | 9. videt |
| 5. est | 10. erō |

UNIT ONE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nauta in patriā poenās rēginae timet.
2. Poēta pecūniam fāmamque nōn optat.
3. Pecūniam poētārum habēmus.
4. Poētisne rēgina pecūniam dabit?
5. Rēginam insulae cum turbā nautārum vidēre optābāmus.
6. Fēminae enim poētās corōnis corōnābunt.
7. Fēminās in viis vidēbātis, sed dē fōrmā nōn clāmābātis. Poenās dabitis.
8. Poētae rēginam patriae ē turbā fēminārum optant.
9. Est cūra dē poenā poētae.
10. Taedās in viā vidēre timēbō.
11. Taedamne in insulā vidētis?
12. Turbamne fēminārum in insulā vidēs (vidēbās)?
13. Cum poētā ē portis in viam ambulō (ambulābam).
14. Poētae et poenam et fāmam timent.
15. Viās turbā implēbunt.
16. Nautae fēminās taedis terrēbant.
17. a) Et pecūniam et corōnās poētis dōnābis.
b) Et pecūniā et corōnis poētās dōnābis.
18. Erisne (eruntne, erantne, suntne) in insulā cum rēginā?
19. Fēminae est fōrma, fāma nautae; fēminis est fōrma, fāma nautis.
20. Poena nautārum erat cūra rēginae.
21. Rēginaene corōnam vidēre optābās?
22. Rēginae dē patriā cūram habent.
23. Nauta enim poenās dare nōn optat.
24. Ex aquā ambulāmus.
25. Patria poētae est insula.
26. Insulam esse patriam habēbat.
27. Vidēre taedās patriae est nautis cūra.

II.

1. The poets will crown a queen from the women of the island.
2. Shall we be with the poet on the island?
3. The sailors kept on shouting about the punishment of the women.
4. We fear the reputation of the poet.
5. You [pl.] kept on giving money to the crowds of sailors.
6. We desire to see women in (our) native land.
7. The sailor was a poet, but he kept on fearing both money and fame.

III. Reading

Poēta fābulam¹ nārrat² dē rēginā et nautā. Rēgina cum turbā incolārum³ ē patriā exit⁴ et ad⁵ Africam⁶ appropinquat.⁷ Ibi⁸ novam⁹ patriam aedificābat¹⁰ sed nōn timēbat. Subitō¹¹ nauta cum turbā et incolārum³ et fēminārum ē patriā Trōiā¹² ad⁵ rēgināe patriam appropinquat.⁷ In Africā⁶ diū¹³ manent.¹⁴ Rēgina nautam amat¹⁵ et nauta rēginam. Fāma enim rēgināe nōn erat cūra. Postrēmō¹⁶ nauta rēginam relinquit¹⁷ et rēgina vītam.¹⁸

¹ fābula, -ae, F., 'story' ² nārrō (1), 'tell' ³ incola, -ae, M., 'inhabitant' ⁴ exit, 'goes out' (3rd person sing.) ⁵ ad (prep. + acc.), 'to, toward' ⁶ Africa, -ae, F., 'Africa' ⁷ appropinquō (1) (+ ad + acc.), 'approach' ⁸ ibi (adv.), 'there' ⁹ nova (adj.) 'new' ¹⁰ aedificō (1), 'build' ¹¹ subitō (adv.), 'suddenly' ¹² Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy' ¹³ diū (adv.), 'for a long time' ¹⁴ maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain' ¹⁵ amō (1), 'love' ¹⁶ postrēmō (adv.), 'finally' ¹⁷ relinquit, 'abandons' (3rd person sing.) ¹⁸ vīta, -ae, F., 'life'

UNIT TWO

A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs

1. All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are formed identically in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses respectively. As in the present system, the verb form in these tenses usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The perfect stem is derived by dropping the *-ī* from the third principal part of the verb.

		STEM
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	desire	
optāvī		optāv/ī
impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus	fill	
implēvī		implēv/ī
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	begin	
incēpī		incēp/ī
sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus	feel, perceive	
sēnsī		sēns/ī

This process also applies to the few irregular verbs in Latin; irregularities do not appear in the perfect system.

3. There is a special set of personal endings which is used *only* for the perfect tense. These endings are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	-ī	-imus
2	-istī	-istis
3	-it	-ērunt

The *perfect* tense is formed by adding these endings to the perfect stem. Note that there is no tense sign for the perfect.

4. The *pluperfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign *-erā-* to the perfect stem and then adding the personal endings *-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*. It is perhaps easier, however, to regard the formation of the pluperfect indicative as the perfect stem plus the forms of the imperfect indicative of the verb *sum*.

5. The *future perfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign *-eri-* to the perfect stem and then the personal endings *-ō**, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. As in the pluperfect, it is easier to regard this formation as the perfect stem plus the forms of the future indicative of the verb *sum* (with *-erint* in the third person plural instead of *-erunt*). Thus:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
1 optāvī	optāveram	optāverō	optāvimus	optāverāmus	optāverimus
2 optāvistī	optāverās	optāveris	optāvistis	optāverātis	optāveritis
3 optāvit	optāverat	optāverit	optāvērunt	optāverant	optāverint

* As with the future tense, the *-i-* in the first person singular is assimilated into the *-ō*. Thus, *optābō*, *optāverō*.

B. The Subjunctive Mood

The indicative mood is used to make statements of fact or to ask direct questions. The subjunctive mood is connected with notions involving idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, anticipation, or the like. There are many uses of the subjunctive which will be encountered as this course progresses. In this unit we shall be concerned with only one of these uses.

C. Formation of the Subjunctive

While the indicative mood in Latin has six tenses, the subjunctive has only four: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. A subjunctive verb has no one equivalent in English and can only be translated according to the construction in which it occurs. By the same token, the translations of the tenses in the subjunctive do not necessarily correspond with those in the indicative.

1. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

The conjugation of the present subjunctive is very similar to that of the present indicative. Begin with the present stem, change the *-ā-* to *-ē-*, and add the personal endings *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*.

optā- (stem)	
optē- (mutated stem for present subjunctive)	
optem	optēmus
optēs	optētis
optet	optent

2. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

The imperfect subjunctive is easily formed for *all* verbs (including irregular verbs) by taking the full present active infinitive, lengthening the final *-e*, and

adding the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**. (Note that, as always, a long vowel is shortened before final **-m, -t, or -nt**.)

optāre/m	implēre/m	incipere/m	sentire/m
optārē/s	implērē/s	inciperē/s	sentirē/s
optāre/t	implēre/t	incipere/t	sentire/t
optārē/mus	implērē/mus	inciperē/mus	sentirē/mus
optārē/tis	implērē/tis	inciperē/tis	sentirē/tis
optāre/nt	implēre/nt	incipere/nt	sentire/nt

3. PERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add **-eri-** and then the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**.

optāv/eri/m	implēv/eri/m	incēp/eri/m	sēns/eri/m
optāv/eri/s	implēv/eri/s	incēp/eri/s	sēns/eri/s
optāv/eri/t	implēv/eri/t	incēp/eri/t	sēns/eri/t
optāv/eri/mus	implēv/eri/mus	incēp/eri/mus	sēns/eri/mus
optāv/eri/tis	implēv/eri/tis	incēp/eri/tis	sēns/eri/tis
optāv/eri/nt	implēv/eri/nt	incēp/eri/nt	sēns/eri/nt

4. PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add the tense sign **-issē-** and then the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**.

optāv/isse/m	implēv/isse/m	incēp/isse/m	sēns/isse/m
optāv/issē/s	implēv/issē/s	incēp/issē/s	sēns/issē/s
optāv/isse/t	implēv/isse/t	incēp/isse/t	sēns/isse/t
optāv/issē/mus	implēv/issē/mus	incēp/issē/mus	sēns/issē/mus
optāv/issē/tis	implēv/issē/tis	incēp/issē/tis	sēns/issē/tis
optāv/isse/nt	implēv/isse/nt	incēp/isse/nt	sēns/isse/nt

D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb *sum*

While the endings are what we should expect, the stem is irregular:

sim	sīmus
sis	sītis
sit	sint

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctives of this verb are formed according to the rules given under C above. The principal parts of the verb, it must be remembered, are **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**.

E. Conditional Sentences

The sentence "If he works, he is happy" is a conditional sentence. It is composed of two clauses, the *if* clause (sometimes called the *protasis*) and the *concluding* clause (called the *apodosis*). The protasis is introduced in Latin by *sī*, 'if', or *nīsī*, 'unless, if not'.

Conditional sentences may be broken up into three basic categories and are formed in Latin according to a specific formula for each category.

1. SIMPLE (GENERAL) CONDITIONS

If (i.e., whenever) he works, he desires money.

Such conditions may also be expressed in past time:

If (i.e., whenever) he worked, he desired money.

FORMULA: Indicative in both clauses.

Sī labōrat, pecūniam optat.

Sī labōrābat, pecūniam optābat.

Sī labōrāvit, pecūniam optāvit.

2. FUTURE CONDITIONS

a. MORE VIVID

If he works, he will desire money.

This type of condition is expressed in English by the present indicative in the *if* clause and the future in the concluding clause.

FORMULA: Future indicative in both clauses.

Sī labōrābit, pecūniam optābit.

NOTE: Occasionally, when the speaker wishes the implications of the condition to be exceptionally emphatic, the future perfect indicative is used in the protasis instead of the simple future.

Sī labōrāverit, pecūniam optābit. *If* he works (will have worked),
he will desire money.

In such cases it is emphasized that the action in the protasis *must* be completed in order for the action in the apodosis to occur. Frequently, in English, it is difficult to illustrate the difference between the future and the future perfect in such clauses, except by giving special intonation to the voice, or, in printing, by using italics.

b. LESS VIVID

If he should work, he would desire money.

These conditions, while they refer to future time, conceive of the future act less vividly, or less certainly, than future more vivid conditions.

FORMULA: Present subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *should* ... *would* ...)

Sī labōret, pecūniam optet.

NOTE: Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present, but this is rare, and so its discussion has been omitted from these materials.

3. CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

a. PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT

Contrary-to-fact conditions state something which is untrue and hypothesized.

If he were (now) working (but he is not), he would be desiring money (he would desire money).

FORMULA: Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *were* — *ing*, ... *would be* ... *-ing* / *would* ...)

Sī labōrāret, pecūniam optāret.

b. PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would have desired money.

FORMULA: Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *had* ... *would have* ...)

Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāvisset.

4. MIXED CONDITIONS

In addition to the strict formulae given above, occasionally one finds a mixed condition where the protasis and the apodosis belong to different categories. Such conditions are constructed as logical thought requires. For example:

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would (now) be desiring money (he would desire money).

This sentence is past contrafactual in the protasis, but the apodosis refers to present time. Consequently, the protasis must have its verb in the pluperfect subjunctive, while the verb of the apodosis will be imperfect subjunctive.

Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāret.

F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or the penalty.

Genitive of the charge:

Puellam **cūrae** culpat. He blames the girl [of] for (her) concern.
[**culpō** (1), 'blame']

Genitive of the penalty:

Nautam **pecūniae** dāmnāvit. He sentenced the sailor [of money] to pay
money.

UNIT TWO — VOCABULARY

ā, ab (prep. + abl.)	(away) from; by (only with living beings) ¹
ad (prep. + acc.)	to, toward
anima, -ae, F.	soul, spirit, life force
āra, -ae, F.	altar
capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus	take, capture
cella, -ae, F.	storeroom, (small) room
cēlō (1)	hide, conceal
cōgitō (1)	think, ponder, consider
culpa, -ae, F.	guilt, fault
dāmnō (1)	condemn, sentence
dubitō (1)	doubt, hesitate
glōria, -ae, F.	glory, renown
incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptus	begin
incola, -ae, M. (occasionally F.)	inhabitant
incolō, -ere, -uī, --	inhabit
īnsidiae, -ārum, F. (used only in pl.)	ambush, plot, treachery
invidia, -ae, F.	envy, jealousy
labōrō (1)	work
lacrima, -ae, F.	tear (<i>as in</i> 'teardrop')
lūna, -ae, F.	moon, moonlight
moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus	warn, remind
mora, -ae, F.	delay
mūtō (1)	change, exchange
nātūra, -ae, F.	nature
neque or nec (conj.)	and not, nor (<i>replaces et. . . nōn</i>)
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)	neither . . . nor
nihil or nīl, N. (indeclinable noun)	nothing
nisi (conj.)	unless, if . . . not; except

¹ **ā** before a word beginning with a consonant; **ab** before a vowel or **h**

noxa, -ae, F.	harm, injury
nunc (adv.)	now
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus	push, drive (off)
expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus	push out, drive out
per (prep. + acc.)	through
prōvincia, -ae, F.	province
puella, -ae, F.	girl
semper (adv.)	always
sententia, -ae, F.	feeling, thought, opinion
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus	feel, perceive
sī (conj.)	if
sub (prep. + acc.)	under (i.e., going to a place under)
(prep. + abl.)	under (i.e., at <i>or</i> in a place under)
superō (1)	overcome, conquer
taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus	be (<i>or</i> keep) silent
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus	hold, keep, possess
terra, -ae, F.	earth, land
unda, -ae, F.	wave
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus	come
vīta, -ae, F.	life

UNIT TWO — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The preposition **ā** (**ab**) is used only with the ablative case. It has two different meanings, 'away from' and 'by' ('through the agency of', *not* 'near'). It means 'by' only when it is used with words representing living beings, for example, **ā nautā**, 'by the sailor', **ā rēginā**, 'by the queen'; 'by tears' or 'by delay' would not use **ā** (**ab**), but simply the ablative case without a preposition.

Since **ad** means 'to' or 'toward', it governs the accusative case (the case which expresses movement toward). The preposition **per**, 'through', also provides the idea of motion toward and so takes the accusative.

Incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus is a compound of the preposition **in-**, 'on', plus the verb **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**. The **-a-** of the uncompounded verb changes to **-i-** in compounds; this is always the case in Latin. It is very common for the **-a-** in a perfect passive participle to change to **-e-** when the verb is compounded. **Incipiō** means literally 'take on', thus, 'begin'. (Cf. He *takes on* a new task. He *begins* a new task.)

There are many compounds of **capiō**: **ad + capiō** is **accipiō**, 'take to (oneself), receive'. The prefix **re-** has the meaning 'back'; thus, **recipiō**, 'take back'. The imperative form **recipe** 'take back', is our English word "recipe". The Romans

used a line to indicate an abbreviation, and so the sign for a prescription \mathbb{R} is not Rx, but an abbreviation for **recipe**, 'take back'. **Repellō** (re- + **pellō**, 'drive') means 'drive back'. A water-repellent raincoat drives back the rain so that it does not go through the coat. **Excipiō** (ex + **capiō**) means 'take out', and **suscipiō** (sub, 'under' + **capiō**) means 'undertake'.

Cōgitō, a first conjugation verb, means 'think, ponder, consider'. To *think about* something is **cōgitāre dē** (+ ablative) or **cōgitāre** (+ accusative).

Dubitō (1) means 'hesitate' when it is used with an infinitive, otherwise 'doubt'.

Incolō, **incolere**, **incolūi**, 'inhabit', is obviously related to **incola**, **incolae**, M. or F., 'inhabitant'; it lacks a fourth principal part.

Insidiae, **insidiārum**, F., 'ambush, plot, treachery', although plural in Latin and governing a plural verb, is translated as singular in English.

There is no distinction between **neque** and **nec**; either spelling may be used. **Neque . . . neque** means 'neither . . . nor': **Rēginam neque videt neque timet**, 'He neither sees nor fears the queen'. The sentence could also be written **Rēginam nec videt nec timet**.

In the same way, the spellings of the word 'nothing', **nihil** and **nīl**, are interchangeable.

Pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, 'push, drive off', forms its third principal part by the process of reduplication. Some verbs have such reduplicated third principal parts, which are formed by prefixing the word with the initial consonant, followed either by -e- or the vowel of the root. Some other examples of reduplicated perfects are:

canō, canere, cecini, cantus	sing (of)
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus	run
poscō, poscere, poposci, --	beg, demand

Expellō, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsus** is a compound of **pellō** (ex + **pellō**) and so it means 'push out, drive out'. Often a verb that is compounded will lose its reduplicated form in the perfect (cf. **pepulī**, **expulī**).

Very frequently, first declension nouns that end in **-tia** come over into English with the spelling **-ce** or **-cy** (cf. **sententia**, 'sentence'; **grātia**, 'grace'; **diligentia**, 'diligence'; **beneficentia**, 'beneficence'; **cōstantia**, 'constancy').

The perfect forms of **sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, 'feel, perceive', have a long **-ē-** because of the **-ns-** which follows.

Sub takes either the accusative or the ablative case depending upon whether the idea of movement toward or location is involved. In other words, if one were drilling down under the earth, in Latin **sub terram** would be used, but if one were to speak of the rock lying under the earth, **sub terrā** would be used.

Again notice the lengthening of the **-e-** in **veniō**, **venire** to **-ē-** in the perfect active, **vēnī**.

A good way of remembering the principal parts of verbs is to associate both the present stem and the perfect passive stem with English words. For example:

incipiō	<i>incipient</i>	<i>inception</i>
expellō	<i>expel</i>	<i>expulsion</i>
sentiō	<i>sentient</i>	<i>sensual</i>
veniō	<i>convene</i>	<i>convention</i>

UNIT TWO — DRILL

I.

Verb identification: Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives by so labeling them, and appending information as to person, number, tense, and voice.

1. ambulat, ambulāret, ambulāvit, ambulāverat
2. clāmābunt, clāmant; clāment, clāmāvērunt
3. vidērunt, viderant, viderint (two possibilities), vīdissent
4. optāverās, optāveris (two possibilities), optēmus, optāvimus
5. timērēmus, timēmus, timuimus, timēbāmus
6. dedissem, dem, dabam, dedī

II.

Translate:

1. Si in insulā eritis, pecūniam habēre optābitis.
2. Si in insulā sītis, aquam optētis.
3. Si in patriā essētis, fēminās vidērētis.
4. Sī in patriā fuissētis, clāmāre timuissētis.
5. Sī fēminam vidēbit, clāmābit.
6. Si fēminam viderit, clāmābit.
7. Si fēminam vidēret, clāmāret.
8. Si fēminam vīdisset, clāmāvisset.
9. Si fēminam optet, clāmet.
10. Si taedam nautae det, portam vidēbō.
11. Si taedam nautae dabit, portam vidēbō.
12. Sī taedam nautae dederit, portam vidēbō.
13. Sī taedam nautae dedisset, portam vīdissem.
14. Sī taedam nautae daret, portam vidērem.

III.

Ellipsis. Note the following progression, and how the verb “to be” is omitted.

Est fāma fēminis. Est fōrma fēminis.

Est fāma fēminis et est fōrma fēminis.

Est fāma fēminis et fōrma.

Fāma fēminis et fōrma.

UNIT TWO — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

I.

1. Incolaene dē glōriā patriae tacuērunt?
2. Rēginam dē incolārum insidiis monuī.
3. Glōriam enim optāverint.
4. Nil nisi glōriam optāverō.
5. Puellae neque lacrimās neque culpam cēlāverant.
6. Sententiās dē animā mūtāre incēperāmus sed sententiās nōn mūtāverātis.
7. Invidiamne ex animā expulisti?
8. Noxam ab incolīs pepulerimus.
9. Per undās ad terram vēnistis, sed in patriā semper fuimus.
10. Pecūniam rēginae ē terrā cēperat.

II.

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb. In Latin, a synopsis gives all the forms of a given verb in a specified person and number. Writing synopses is an excellent way to solidify one's knowledge of the verbal system in Latin.

The following example is a synopsis of *cēlō* (1) in the third person singular:

cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, 'hide, conceal'

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE MOOD	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
Present	cēlat	cēlet
Imperfect	cēlābat	cēlāret
Future	cēlābit	--
Perfect	cēlāvit	cēlāverit
Pluperfect	cēlāverat	cēlāvisset
Future Perfect	cēlāverit	--

Write synopses of the following verbs:

1. dubitō (1), second person plural; third person singular
2. labōrō (1), third person plural; first person singular

UNIT TWO — EXERCISES

I.

1. cum puellā; dē lūnā; ē cellis; in āram; in turbā; ab incolā; ā prōvinciā; ad undam; per terrās; sub portam; sub undis.

2. Sententiam mūtābit. Sententiam mūtāre dubitat. Sententiam mūtāre incēperat. Sententiam mūtāvit.
3. Nisi fēminae nautās sententiārum dē incolis dāmnābunt (dāmnāverint), incolae in prōvinciā nōn labōrābunt.
4. Incolae si fēminās insulae dāmnārent, nautae ad terram venire nōn dubitārent.
5. Incolae si insulae fēminās dāmnāvissent, nautae ad terram venire nōn dubitāvissent.
6. Incolae si insulae fēminās insidiārum dāmnent, nautae ad prōvinciam venire nōn dubitent.
7. Incolae si fēminās in turbā dāmnābunt, nautae ad insulam venire nōn dubitābunt.
8. Incolae si fēminās invidiae dāmnāverint, nautae sententiam dē fāmā incolārum mūtāre nōn dubitābunt.
9. Si nautae undās timēbunt, in terrā semper erunt.
10. Puella dē glōriā et fāmā poētārum cōgitat.
11. Nautae noxās ā puellis pepulerant (pepulērunt).
12. Si nautae noxās ā puellis pepulissent, et glōriam et fāmam cēpissent.
13. Dē nātūrā animae nec cum poētā sēnseram nec sententiam mūtāre optāveram. [sentiō cum, 'agree with']
14. Terram si poētae incoluissent, nautās ē prōvinciā expulissent et nātūram patriae mūtāvissent.
15. Si nautās rēginae superāvissem, prōvinciam tenērem.
16. Undae ārās cēlāre incēpērunt.
17. Si undae ārās cēlāre inciperent, incolās monērem.
18. Nautārum fāma sententiam dē insulārum incolis mūtāverit.
19. Nisi in cellā labōrāvissētis, nautae ē prōvinciā puellās nōn pepulissent.
20. Si Hannibal ad portās prōvinciae vēnisset, incolās taedis monuissem. [Hannibal, nom., the name of a Carthaginian general]
21. Nisi pecūniam in cellā cēlāvissēs, rēgina nautās nec dāmnāvisset nec ē prōvinciā expelleret.
22. Et glōria incolis prōvinciae et culpa, sed poēta dē nātūrā incolārum tacuit.
23. Nisi pecūniam optāvissent, nautae neque per prōvinciam vēnissent neque insulam nunc superārent.
24. Sub lūnā labōrāverāmus.
25. Sub portās ambulāre dubitābam.
26. Puella tacēbat, neque lacrimās cēlāvit.
27. Vita rēginae nihil dedit nisi glōriam fāmamque.
28. Puellāsne dē morā nautārum monuisti? Puellās monui, sed nil timent.
29. Nisi insidiās incolārum nunc sentirent, incolās ē prōvinciā nōn expellerent.

II.

1. If I had changed (my) opinion about the nature of the soul, I would have kept silent.
2. If they were changing (their) opinion about the nature of the soul, they would be keeping silent (they would keep silent).
3. If you are silent, I shall work.
4. You [pl.] had driven the poets from the island.
5. You [pl.] have filled the altar with (your) tears.
6. If they should hide the money, the queen would condemn the inhabitants for treachery.

III. Reading

Aenēās,¹ id² enim nōmen³ nautae fuit, dum⁴ incoluit Africam cum rēginā incolās rēxit.⁵ Patriam aedificāvērunt.⁶ Tum,⁷ subitō,⁸ deus⁹ vēnit et nautam monuit: “Nāvigā¹⁰ nunc,” nārrāvit,¹¹ “antequam¹² rēginae sit¹³ ira.¹⁴ Si nunc manēbis,¹⁵ tē¹⁶ semper manēre¹⁵ optet.” Nautam terruit et sub lūnā Aenēās¹ turbam monuit, “Sententiam mūtāvī. Parābimus¹⁷ et ab Africā nāvigābimus.”¹⁰ Nōn fuit mora. Aenēae¹ pārūrunt¹⁸ et nāvigāvērunt.¹⁰ Rēgina māne¹⁹ lacrimāvit²⁰ quod²¹ Aenēās¹ cum turbā incolārum patriam reliquerat.²² Rēginam ira¹⁴ implēvit. “Nisi manēre¹⁵ optāverit, nil habēbō,” Annae²³ nārrat.¹¹ “Vitam nōn optō sine²⁴ Aenēā.¹ Nisi mē²⁵ amat, esse nōn optō.” Sic²⁶ nārrāvit¹¹ et sē²⁷ necāvit.²⁸ Anima rēginae discessit.²⁹ Incolae Africae dē cū pā nautae cōgitāvērunt et lacrimāvērunt.²⁰ Nautam noxae rēginae dāmnāvērunt. Dē insidiis cōgitābant. Ad ārās vēnērunt et deōs³⁰ poenās Aenēae¹ turbaeque ōrāvērunt.³¹

¹ Aenēās, -ae, M., ‘Aeneas’, a Greek name in the first declension ² id, pronoun in the neuter sing., ‘this’, referring to Aenēās and agreeing with nōmen ³ nōmen (nom.), ‘name’
⁴ dum (conj.), ‘while’ ⁵ regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, ‘rule’ ⁶ aedificō (1), ‘build, establish’
⁷ tum (adv.), ‘then’ ⁸ subitō (adv.), ‘suddenly’ ⁹ deus (nom.), ‘god’ ¹⁰ nāvigō (1), ‘sail, set sail’. Nāvigā is the command (i.e., imperative), ‘set sail!’ ¹¹ nārrō (1), ‘tell, speak’
¹² antequam (conj.), ‘before’ ¹³ sit, ‘is’. This form is the 3rd person sing. present subjunctive because of the anticipation of the queen’s anger. ¹⁴ ira, -ae, F., ‘anger’ ¹⁵ maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, ‘remain’ ¹⁶ tē (acc.), ‘you’ ¹⁷ parō (1), ‘get ready’ ¹⁸ pārō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, ‘obey’ (+ dat.) ¹⁹ māne (adv.), ‘early in the morning’ ²⁰ lacrimō (1), ‘cry, weep, shed tears’ ²¹ quod (conj.), ‘because’ ²² relinquo, -ere, reliquī, relictus, ‘leave behind’ ²³ Anna, -ae, F., ‘Anna’, the queen’s sister ²⁴ sine (prep. + abl.), ‘without’ ²⁵ mē (acc.), ‘me’ ²⁶ sic (adv.), ‘in this way’ ²⁷ sē (acc.), ‘herself’
²⁸ necō (1), ‘kill’ ²⁹ discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, ‘withdraw’ ³⁰ deōs (acc.), ‘gods’
³¹ ōrō (1), ‘beg for’ (with two accusatives: i.e., one begs someone in the accusative for something in the accusative)

UNIT THREE

A. Nouns of the Second Declension

Nouns of the second declension are distinguished by the genitive singular ending **-ī**.

nātus, -ī, M.	son, child
puer, pueri, M.	boy
saxum, -ī, N.	rock, stone

While most nouns of the first declension are feminine, most of the second declension are masculine or neuter.

In order to decline a noun of the second declension, add the case endings for this declension to the stem. As usual, the stem is found by dropping the ending from the full genitive singular form. The endings are:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASCULINE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	NEUTER
Nom.	-us*	-um	-ī	-a
Gen.	-ī	-ī	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs
Acc.	-um	-um	-ōs	-a
Abl.	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs

* The **-us** ending occurs for the masculine singular in most instances. Occasionally, however, nouns ending in **-r** or **-er** will occur, as will be seen in the vocabularies (e.g., **vir, puer**).

NOTE CAREFULLY:

1. The neuter differs from the masculine of the second declension in three places:
 - a. nominative singular
 - b. nominative plural
 - c. accusative plural
2. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are *always* identical.

3. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**.

By applying these rules we can decline **nātus**, **puer**, and **saxum** as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	nātus	puer	saxum	nāti	pueri	saxa
Gen.	nāti	pueri	saxi	nātōrum	puerōrum	saxōrum
Dat.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātis	pueris	saxis
Acc.	nātum	puerum	saxum	nātōs	puerōs	saxa
Abl.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātis	pueris	saxis

B. First-Second Declension Adjectives

An adjective is a word which describes or modifies a noun. In Latin, adjectives must *agree* with the nouns they modify in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and so adjectives, like nouns, are *declined*.

First-second declension adjectives utilize the case endings of the first two declensions. When the endings of the first declension are used, the adjective is said to be feminine and will modify feminine nouns; when the endings of the second declension are used, the adjective is said to be masculine or neuter and will modify masculine or neuter nouns respectively.

In the dictionary, the adjectival forms given are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter (in that order):

magnus, -a, -um large, big, great

The full forms are

magnus, magna, magnum

The entire declension is:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnis	magnis	magnis
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnis	magnis	magnis

Some first-second declension adjectives exhibit the **-er** ending in the masculine nominative singular (e.g., **dexter**, **dextra**, **dextrum**, 'right' [as opposed to left], 'favorable'). The stem in such words may be derived from the feminine nominative form by dropping its ending:

dextr/a

The entire declension will be formed on this stem:

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextrī	dextrae	dextrī
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
			...etc.

C. Noun-Adjective Agreement

As noted under B above, an adjective must agree with the noun it modifies in *gender, number, and case*.

'of a rock' (genitive) = saxī

'of a large rock' = magnī saxī

(The noun is neuter, singular, genitive; the adjective must be neuter, singular, genitive.)

'to/for a woman' (dative) = fēminae

'to/for a wretched woman' = fēminae miserae

(The noun is feminine, singular, dative; the adjective must be feminine, singular, dative.)

At first glance it may seem needless to go through the considerations of gender, number, and case, for agreement appears to be achieved simply by matching endings. But this is generally not true. Consider the following example:

poēta, -ae, M., 'poet'

'great poet' (nominative): The noun is masculine, singular, nominative; thus, the adjective must be *masculine, singular, nominative*.

Thus: poēta magnus

'great poets' (nominative): The noun is masculine, plural, nominative; thus, the adjective must be *masculine, plural, nominative*.

Thus: poētae magnī

More often than not, the endings of words which go together are *not* identical; therefore, one should not look for such correspondence.

D. Adjectives Used As Nouns

As in English, an adjective may be used without a noun if that noun can be understood. Cf.:

The good (men) and the just (men) voted for freedom. Fortune favors the brave (men). Examples:

magnus (masculine)	a great man
magna (feminine)	a great woman
magnum (neuter)	a great thing
Magna optō.	I desire great things.
Multa bona habet.	He has many good things; he has many goods; he has much property.
Rōmānōs timet.	He fears the Romans.

E. Ablative of Means (Instrument)

The ablative *without* a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

Nautae gladiīs pūgnant.	The sailors fight <i>with (by means of) swords</i> .
Oculis vidēmus.	We see <i>with (by means of) [our] eyes</i> .
Fēminās taedā terruit.	He frightened the women <i>with (by means of) a torch</i> .

F. Ablative of Manner

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. The **cum** is required in this construction when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

Verba misera cum veniā audivistī.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with indulgence (indulgently)</i> .
Verba misera magnā (cum) veniā audivistī.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with great indulgence (very indulgently)</i> .

Note that phrases of this type can usually be translated by an English adverb ending in *-ly*.

G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses

In the sentence “I fight to overcome the sailor,” “to overcome the sailor” expresses the *purpose* for which the subject is fighting. Purpose is frequently expressed in English by the infinitive; in Latin a subordinate clause is normally required: “I fight in order that I may overcome the sailor”. Purpose clauses are frequently introduced by the subordinating conjunctions **ut** (in this case, meaning ‘in order that’) or **nē** (‘in order that . . . not’); they have their verbs in the subjunctive.

In Unit One the various tenses of the indicative were divided into two categories: primary and secondary. The tenses of the subjunctive, as well, may be so divided. The scheme follows:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRIMARY TENSES	Present	Present
	Future	Perfect
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	
	Future Perfect	
SECONDARY TENSES	Imperfect	Imperfect
	Perfect (English past)	Pluperfect
	Pluperfect	

In most subordinate clauses in which the subjunctive is used, a system called *sequence of tenses* occurs. That is, if the verb of the main (independent) clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the subordinate (dependent) subjunctive clause must be primary. This is called *primary sequence*. Likewise, if the verb of the main clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the subordinate clause must be secondary. This is called *secondary sequence*.

In primary sequence, the *present subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *perfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

In secondary sequence, the *imperfect subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *pluperfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

Thus:

Present and Imperfect Subjunctive — contemporaneous or subsequent action (with reference to the main verb)

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — prior action (with reference to the main verb)

It will be observed, then, that the tenses of the subjunctive frequently have no specific English tense values of their own but are *relative* to the tense of the main verb of a given sentence.

Since purpose clauses must logically refer to an action which will occur subsequent to the main verb, only the present and imperfect subjunctives are used in this construction.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE :

Pūgnō ut nautam superem .	I fight <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnābō ut nautam superem .	I shall fight <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāvī ut nautam superem .	I have fought <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāverō ut nautam superem .	I shall have fought <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.

SECONDARY SEQUENCE :

Pūgnābam ut nautam superārem .	I was fighting <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāvī ut nautam superārem .	I fought <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāveram ut nautam superārem .	I had fought <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.

Negative purpose clauses are introduced by the subordinating conjunction **nē** instead of **ut**.

Pūgnō nē nauta fēminam superet .	I fight <i>in order that the sailor may not overcome</i> the woman.
Pūgnābam nē nauta fēminam superāret .	I was fighting <i>in order that the sailor might not overcome</i> the woman.

H. Indirect Commands

Consider the sentence, “I beg that you overcome the sailor”. “That you overcome the sailor” is an indirect command and represents a direct imperative: “I beg you. Overcome the sailor!” Many verbs of *ordering, warning, begging, urging, asking*, and the like, take such a construction. The indirect command is really a substantive clause which functions as the direct object of the main verb.

Ōrō ut nautam superēs.	I beg <i>that you overcome</i> the sailor.
Ōrābam ut nautam superārēs.	I begged (was begging) <i>that you overcome</i> the sailor.
Ōrāvī ut verba cum veniā audirēs.	I begged <i>that you hear</i> (my) words with indulgence.
Ōrābam nē verba nautae audirēs.	I begged <i>that you not hear the</i> words of the sailor.

UNIT THREE — VOCABULARY

acerbus, -a, -um	bitter, harsh
ager, agrī, M.	field
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus	hear, listen (to)
bellum, -ī, N.	war
bonus, -a, -um	good
caecus, -a, -um	blind, hidden, secret
campus, -ī, M.	plain, level surface
clārus, -a, -um	bright, clear, famous
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right (as opposed to left), favorable
dextra, -ae, F.	right hand
ad dextram	to the right
dīligentia, -ae, F.	diligence
dōnum, -ī, N.	gift
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus	conduct, manage, wage
gladius, -ī, M.	sword
laetus, -a, -um	happy
liber, libera, liberum	free
magnus, -a, -um	large, big, great
malus, -a, -um	evil, bad, wicked
Marcus, -ī, M.	Marcus (proper name)
miser, misera, miserum	miserable, unhappy, wretched
multus, -a, -um	much, many
nātus, -ī, M.	son
nē (conj.)	(in purpose clauses) in order that...not; (in indirect commands) that...not
oculus, -ī, M.	eye
ōrō (1)	beg (for)

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus	seek (with ā + abl.), ask (for) (cf. 'I ask for [seek] money from my son', Pecūniam ā nātō petō.)
portō (1)	carry
puer, puerī, M.	boy; child
pūgnō (1)	fight; (with cum + abl.), fight with (i.e., against)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful
Rōmānus, -a, -um	Roman
saxum, -ī, N.	rock, stone
scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus	write
servus, -ī, M.	slave
spectō (1)	look at
ut (conj.)	(in purpose clauses) in order that; (in indirect commands) that
validus, -a, -um	strong, healthy
vēlum, -ī, N.	cloth, covering, sail
vēla dare	to set sail
venia, -ae, F.	indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition
ventus, -ī, M.	wind
verbum, -ī, N.	word
vir, virī, M.	man

UNIT THREE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Associating an English word with the Latin will be helpful in remembering when the **-e-** of a second declension masculine word remains and when it drops out: e.g., agriculture (**ager, agrī, M.**, 'field'), pulchritude (**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, 'beautiful'), liberal (**liber, libera, liberum**, 'free').

Gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus means 'conduct, manage'; when it is used with **bellum**, it means 'wage (war)'; **Rōmānī multa bella gessērunt**, 'The Romans waged many wars'.

Gladius, gladiī, M., 'sword' has a diminutive **gladiōlus**, 'little sword', which gives the name of the flower whose leaf looks like a little sword. The diminutive endings will be discussed later.

Multus, multa, multum usually means 'much' in the singular and 'many' in the plural. However, one can say in Latin: **Multus Rōmānus gladiō pūgnāvit**, 'Many a Roman fought with a sword'.

Nātus, nātī, M. is really the passive form of the perfect participle of a verb meaning 'to be born'; thus **nātus** is 'the one having been born, the son, child'.

Ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, 'beg (for)' may govern two accusatives: the thing begged for and the person begged: **Rēgīnam pecūniam ōrāvit**, 'He begged the queen for money'.

Petō, petere, petīvī, petītus means 'ask' or 'ask for'. If one asks someone for

something in Latin using the verb **petō**, he asks something from somebody: **Nātus dōnum ā Marcō petīvit**, '(His) son asked Marcus for a gift'.

Pūgnō, **pūgnāre**, **pūgnāvī**, **pūgnātus**, 'fight' is an intransitive verb and is used with **cum** to mean 'fight against': **Multī cum Rōmānīs pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) fought with the Romans'. (Note that "with" in this sense means 'against', *not* 'on the side of'.) **Repūgnō** is a compound of **pūgnō** (**re-** + **pūgnō**) and means 'fight back, resist'.

Scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus** means 'write'; thus, **īnscrībō**, 'write in *or* on'; **rescrībō**, 'write back'.

Spectō, a first conjugation verb, 'look at' has many compounds:

aspectō (ad + spectō)	look toward, face
exspectō	look out for, await
respectō	look back
	...etc.

There is another verb in Latin closely related to **spectō**: **speciō**, **specere**, **spēxī**, --, which also means 'look at' and has many compounds:

aspiciō	look at <i>or</i> toward
dēspiciō	look down upon
īnspiciō	look into, examine
respiciō	look back, consider

Vēlum, **vēlī**, N. is a 'cloth' or 'covering'; it can also mean a 'sail'. The idiom **vēla dare** means 'to set sail': **Vēla ab īnsulā dedērunt**, 'They set sail from the island'.

UNIT THREE — DRILL

I.

Change these noun forms to the plural. In some cases there may be several possibilities.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. bellum | 3. oculum | 5. veniae |
| 2. nātī | 4. saxō | |

II.

Change these noun forms to the singular:

- | | | |
|-------------|----------|------------|
| 1. bellōrum | 3. saxa | 5. fēminās |
| 2. puerōs | 4. virīs | |

III.

A. Decline **caecus**, **-a**, **-um** in the singular.

Decline **bonus**, **-a**, **-um** in the plural.

B. For each of the following, supply the proper form of **magnus, -a, -um**:

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. fēmina | 3. puerō | 5. campus | 7. nautārum |
| 2. bellum | 4. poētae | 6. aquam | 8. ager |

IV.

Translate the following sentences, all of which contain clauses of purpose or indirect commands:

1. Puella dē noxā tacet ut cum nautā ambulet.
2. Puella cūram fāmae cēlāvit ut pecūniam habēret.
3. Poēta tacet ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitet.
4. Poēta tacuit ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitāret.
5. Fēminae pecūniam optābant ut ad prōvinciam venīrent.
6. Tacuērunt incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtāret.
7. Tacent incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtet.
8. Monēmus ut dē vitā cōgitētis.
9. Cum lacrimis monuit nē dē vitā cōgitārēmus.
10. Nīl clāmāvit nē incolās terrēret.
11. Nīl clāmāvit nē fēminae oculōs lacrimis implērent.
12. Nīl clāmāvit nē fēminae oculōs lacrimis implēre inciperent.
13. Cum cūrā labōrābāmus ut nautās ē prōvinciā pellerēmus.
14. Dē morā nautārum clāmāre dubitābat nē fēminae timērent.
15. Monēbimus ut sententiam mūtētis.
16. Monuistis ut pecūniam cēlem.

V.

Translate the following sentences which contain adjectives used as nouns and/or ablatives of means or manner.

1. Nōtus cum cūrā labōrat. [Nōtus, -a, -um, 'well-known, famous']
2. Nōtōs taedīs pepulērunt.
3. Pecūniamne nōtae cēlāvisti?
4. Nōta cum invidiā cēlāvimus.
5. Nōta magnā (cum) invidiā cēlāvimus. [magnus, -a, -um, 'great']
6. Puellās monēbāmus nē nōtās taedīs terrērent.

UNIT THREE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F)

1. Puer laetus dōna multa ā servis petivit.
2. Multa ā servis petivistī sed dōna virō bonō veniā bonā dedērunt.

3. Saxum magnum in aquā erat sed in terrā erant saxa magna et multa.
4. Si nauta miser ventōs bonōs ōrāvisset, laetusne fuisset?
5. Si liberī magnā cum diligentīā in agrō pūgnābunt, malōs superābunt.
6. Si pulchrae poētā caecum audirent, sententiās malās dē vitā mūtārent.
7. Verba acerba poētae caeci audivistis et miserī esse incēpistis.
8. Nātis servōrum gladiōs magnōs dedimus.
9. Rōmānī bella multa acerbaque gessērunt.
10. Malumne est bellum gerere?
11. Si virī malī in campis clāris Marcī pūgnent, incolās bonōs terrae superent.
12. Cum glōriā puerī gladiīs pūgnābant.

UNIT THREE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nautae validī magnā cum cūrā pūgnābant ut incolās insulae superārent.
2. Saxīs pūgnāverāmus nē nautae acerbi fēminās poētārum clārōrum spectārent.
3. Virī magnā diligentīā labōrant nē cum puerīs malīs in prōvinciā pūgnent.
4. Rēgīna magnum gladium virō bonō dabit ut cum Rōmānis in campō pūgnet.
5. Marcus, vir magnus et bonus, corōnam ad poētā portāvit.
6. Nautae Rōmānī vēla ventis dextrīs dabant nē virī malī campōs tenērent.
7. Virī liberī bellum cum diligentīā gessērunt ut liberī semper essent.
8. Liberī malōs multīs gladiīs superābunt nē servī miserī sint.
9. Rēgīna pulchra poētae caecō dōnum bonum dederat ut verba clāra semper audiret.
10. Turba magna rēgīnam bonam gladiīs terruit ut et prōvinciam et insulam superāret.
11. Virī validī nautās ōrāvērunt ut incolās prōvinciae bellō et gladiīs superārent.
12. Si dōnum bonum poētae Marcō darētis, magna verba cum diligentīā scriberet.
13. Si verba mala puerōrum audivistis, laetī nōn erātis.
14. Liberī prōvinciae servī fuissent, nisi nautae Rōmānī bellum in patriā gessissent.
15. Nisī tacuisset, miserum monuissem ut lacrimās cēlāret.
16. Nisī tacuerint, miserōs monēbō ut lacrimās cēlent.
17. Sententiās rēgīna prōvinciae mūtāvit nē poētae timērent.
18. Rēgīna virōrum sententiās mūtāvit ut nātī in agrīs labōrāre optent.
19. Poētae bonō si pecūniam dedissēs, multa dē agrīs prōvinciae scripsisset ut incolīs magna fāma esset.
20. Validī incolae patriam et fāmam in dextrīs tenent. Per dextram ōrāmus ut magnā diligentīā cum malīs pūgnent ut semper Rōmānī simus liberī. [per, 'by' (in oaths)]

21. Pueri ad dextram spectāverant ut gladiōs malōrum oculis vidērent.
22. Vidistisne magnum bellum in campis? Fēminae sī bellum vidissent, nātōs magnis cum lacrimis monuissent ut malōs ex agris patriae expellerent.
23. Nisi verba poētārum audivissēs, nihil dē nātūrā animae et vitae nunc sentirēs et vitam miseram nōn mūtāvissēs.
24. Nisi malōs saxis gladiisque ē cellā pepulissēmus, patriam cum glōriā nōn tenuissēmus, et nunc servī essēmus.
25. Ā rēginā petivistī ut veniam incolis daret.
26. Poēta validōs in agris monuit ut clārum gladium sub saxō peterent.

II.

1. The Romans conquered the inhabitants of the island in order that they might frighten the free men of the province.
2. The wretched child desires to listen to the words of the poet in order that he may be happy.
3. The strong men were silent in order that they might not frighten the beautiful children.
4. The Romans very diligently (with great diligence) conquered the free men with swords and the slaves with kindness.
5. If you had looked at the girl with (your) eyes, she would have begged very tearfully (with many tears) that you not set sail.
6. The great queen had given swords to the strong sailors in order that they might fight with the wicked inhabitants of the island.

III. Reading

Postquam¹ Aenēās ab Africā vēla dedit, sub terram īvit² ut patrem³ mortuum⁴ vidēret. Ut in Orcum⁵ veniret, dōnum rēginae Orci⁵ dedit. In Orcō⁵ animōs⁶ et laetōs et miserōs multōrum mortuōrum⁴ oculis vidit. Ibi⁷ rēginam mortuam⁴ vidit et ōrāvit nē sē⁸ insidiārum dāmnāret, sed rēgina neque spectāvit neque Aenēan⁹ audivit. Aenēās viā¹⁰ ambulāvit; ad dextram erat ager laetōrum, sed ad laevam¹¹ erant animi⁶ malōrum. In agrum laetōrum vēnit et patrem³ vidit. Pater¹² nātō verba multa dē vitā et dē Rōmānis cum veniā dixit.¹³ Aenēās patrem³ audivit laetus. Postea¹⁴ ad Italiam¹⁵ vēla dedit et ibi⁷ bellum cum incolis gessit. Et gladiis et saxis magnā cum diligentīā pūgnāvērunt. Aenēās cum turbā incolās Italiae¹⁵ superāvit et ab Aenēā pācem¹⁶ petivērunt.

¹ postquam (conj.), 'after' ² eō, ire, īvi, itus, 'go' ³ patrem (acc.), 'father' ⁴ mortuus, -a, -um, 'dead' ⁵ Orcus, -ī, M., 'the land of the dead' ⁶ animus, -ī, M., 'soul'
⁷ ibi (adv.), 'there' ⁸ sē (acc.), 'him' ⁹ Aenēan (acc.), 'Aeneas' ¹⁰ viā, 'along the road'
¹¹ laevus, -a, -um, 'left' ¹² pater (nom.), 'father' ¹³ dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, 'say'
¹⁴ postea (adv.), 'afterward' ¹⁵ Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy' ¹⁶ pācem (acc.), 'peace'

UNIT FOUR

A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations

1. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

In order to illustrate the inflections of the entire verbal system, we shall use the following verbs:

1. optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus desire
2. impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus fill
3. { dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus lead
 { incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus begin
4. sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus feel

Note that *two* verbs have been listed for the third conjugation. These differ from one another in the *-i-* which appears before the final *-ō* in the first person singular form of one of them. This *-i-* will appear in various other places throughout the conjugation. Such verbs are called *i-stems*. It will be observed that all verbs of the fourth conjugation also have an *-i-* before the ending, and so *i-stems* of the third conjugation will have something in common with verbs of the fourth conjugation. (The major difference is the length of the vowel: in the third conjugation it is short; in the fourth it is generally long.)

The conjugation of the present indicative can best be illustrated by the following table:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4	Ending
optō	impleō	dūcō	incipiō	sentiō	-ō
optās	implēs	dūcis	incipis	sentis	-s
optat	implet	dūcit	incipit	sentit	-t
optāmus	implēmus	dūcimus	incipimus	sentimus	-mus
optātis	implētis	dūcitis	incipitis	sentitis	-tis
optant	implent	dūcunt	incipiunt	sentiant	-nt

The personal endings are identical for all four conjugations. The difficulty

in the third conjugation lies in the stem vowel: we should expect it to be **-e-** (**dūce/re**), but it appears as **-i-** or, in the third person plural, **-u-**. Also, note that for **i-stem** verbs, the **-i-** appears in the first person singular and the third person plural.

2. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The sign for the present subjunctive of the first conjugation is the vowel **-ē-**; for the second, third, and fourth conjugations, it is **-ā-**, but this **-ā-** in some conjugations appears in conjunction with another vowel. It will be easiest to form the present subjunctive for all conjugations as follows:

- a. Arrive at the stem.
- b. Drop the stem vowel.
- c. In place of the original stem vowel, substitute **-ē-** for the first conjugation, **-eā-** for the second, **-ā-** for the third, **-iā-** for **i-stems** of the third, and **-iā-** for the fourth.
- d. Add the endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

The following will illustrate:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optem	impleam	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optēs	impleās	dūcās	incipiās	sentiās
optet	impleat	dūcat	incipiat	sentiat
optēmus	impleāmus	dūcāmus	incipiāmus	sentiāmus
optētis	impleātis	dūcātis	incipiātis	sentiātis
optent	impleant	dūcant	incipiant	sentiant

These forms should now be compared to those of the present indicative, so that the differences may be discerned readily.

One will observe at once some difficulties in the recognition of forms and will understand how important it is to know the principal parts of verbs, particularly the second part which indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs. **Dūcat**, for example, looks dangerously like **optat**. Only by knowing that **dūcō** belongs to the third conjugation, while **optō** belongs to the first, can one tell that the **-a-** in **dūcat** is the sign of the present subjunctive, while in **optat** it is the sign of the present indicative.

3. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the imperfect indicative of all conjugations is **-bā-**. In the third conjugation, the stem vowel lengthens (from **-e-** to **-ē-**). In **i-stem** verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, **-iē-** appears before the tense sign throughout:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābam	implēbam	dūcēbam	incipiēbam	sentiēbam
optābās	implēbās	dūcēbās	incipiēbās	sentiēbās
optābat	implēbat	dūcēbat	incipiēbat	sentiēbat
optābāmus	implēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	incipiēbāmus	sentiēbāmus
optābātis	implēbātis	dūcēbātis	incipiēbātis	sentiēbātis
optābant	implēbant	dūcēbant	incipiēbant	sentiēbant

4. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect active subjunctive for all conjugations has been illustrated in section C2 of Unit 2 (page 36 above).

5. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the future of the first two conjugations is **-bi-** (with **-bō-** in the first person singular and **-bu-** in the third person plural). The sign for the future of the third and fourth conjugations is **-ē-** (with **-a-** in the first person singular). This vowel replaces the original vowel of the stem. I-stems show the **-i-** throughout.

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābō	implēbō	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optābis	implēbis	dūcēs	incipiēs	sentiēs
optābit	implēbit	dūcet	incipiet	sentiet
optābimus	implēbimus	dūcēmus	incipiēmus	sentiēmus
optābitis	implēbitis	dūcētis	incipiētis	sentiētis
optābunt	implēbunt	dūcent	incipient	sentient

Again, some possible difficulties in interpretation will be noted:

dūcet; optet; implet

Dūcō, -ere is a third conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the future; therefore, **dūcet** is third person singular future active indicative.

Optō, -āre is a first conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the present subjunctive; therefore, **optet** is third person singular present active subjunctive.

Impleō, -ēre is a second conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the vowel of the present stem; therefore, **implet** is third person singular present active indicative.

Frequently, however, the syntactical structure of a sentence will help determine the form of the verb, even if the conjugation to which the verb belongs is not known.

Ōrō ut urnam impleās.

The **ōrō ut** indicates that a subjunctive clause is being introduced; hence, the **-ā-** in **impleās** must be the sign of the present subjunctive and not the vowel of the present indicative of the first conjugation. Therefore:

Ōrō ut urnam impleās. I beg you to fill the urn.

B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations

If one can conjugate a verb in the active voice, he can do it easily in the passive. Instead of appending the personal endings **-ō (-m)**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt** to the appropriate stem or tense sign, he will append a special set of *passive* personal endings. These are:

-or, -r	-mur
-ris (-re)	-minī
-tur	-ntur

The active and passive forms are placed side by side in the following paradigms to illustrate this formation.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

1			
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
optō	I desire	optor*	I am desired
optās	you desire	optāris (optāre)	you are desired
optat	he desires	optātur	he is desired
optāmus	we desire	optāmur	we are desired
optātis	you desire	optāminī	you are desired
optant	they desire	optantur*	they are desired

* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-r** and **-ntur**.

2		3	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
impleō	impleor	dūcō	dūcor
implēs	implēris (implēre)	dūcis	dūceris (dūcere)*
implet	implētur	dūcit	dūcitur
implēmus	implēmur	dūcimus	dūcimur
implētis	implēminī	dūcitis	dūcimini
implent	implentur	dūcunt	dūcuntur

3 i-stem		4	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiō	incipior	sentiō	sentior
incipis	inciperis (incipere)*	sentis	sentīris (sentīre)
incipit	incipitur	sentit	sentitur

* Note that the short **-i-** becomes short **-e-** before the **-ris (-re)** ending.

incipimus	incipimur	sentimus	sentimur
incipitis	incipimini	sentitis	sentimini
incipiunt	incipiuntur	sentiunt	sentiuntur

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE

optābam	I was desiring
optābās	you were desiring
...etc.	

PASSIVE

optābar	I was being desired
optābāris	you were being desired
(optābāre)	
...etc.	

2

ACTIVE

implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris
...etc.	(implēbāre)
...etc.	...etc.

PASSIVE

3

ACTIVE

dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris (dūcēbāre)
...etc.	...etc.

PASSIVE

3 i-stem

ACTIVE

incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris
...etc.	(incipiēbāre)
...etc.	...etc.

PASSIVE

4

ACTIVE

sentiēbam	sentiēbar
sentiēbās	sentiēbāris
...etc.	(sentiēbāre)
...etc.	...etc.

PASSIVE

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE

optābō	I shall desire
optābis	you will desire
optābit	he will desire
optābimus	we shall desire
optābitis	you will desire
optābunt	they will desire

PASSIVE

optābor	I shall be desired
optāberis (optābere)*	you will be desired
optābitur	he will be desired
optābimur	we shall be desired
optābimini	you will be desired
optābuntur	they will be desired

2

ACTIVE

implēbō	implēbor
implēbis	implēberis (implēbere)*
implēbit	implēbitur

PASSIVE

3

ACTIVE

dūcam	dūcar
dūcēs	dūcēris (dūcēre)
dūcet	dūcētur

PASSIVE

* Note that the short **-i-** becomes short **-e-** before the **-ris (-re)** ending.

implēbimus	implēbimur	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
implēbitis	implēbimini	dūcētis	dūcēmini
implēbunt	implēbuntur	dūcent	dūcentur

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiam	incipiar	sentiam	sentiar
incipiēs	incipiēris (incipiēre)	sentiēs	sentiēris (sentiēre)
incipiet	incipiētur	sentiet	sentiētur
incipiēmus	incipiēmur	sentiēmus	sentiēmur
incipiētis	incipiēmini	sentiētis	sentiēmini
incipient	incipientur	sentient	sentientur

4

4. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES

As one would expect, the present and imperfect subjunctives are formed in the same way as the active, except that the *passive* personal endings are used instead of the active ones. For an illustration of this, see the review chart on page 66.

C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations

All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are conjugated identically in the perfect system.

In the perfect system the passive is a *compound* form; that is, it is composed of two words: a participle and a helping verb, **sum**. The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of most verbs. This form, while given in the vocabularies with a **-us** ending (**optātus**), is, in fact, an adjective and so can be declined. It might be written **optātus, -a, -um** just like the adjective **magnus, -a, -um**.

1. PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

The perfect passive indicative is composed of the fourth principal part of the verb (perfect passive participle) and a form of the present indicative of the verb **sum**. The ending of the participle is declined to show the number and gender of the subject. Since it refers to the subject, it is in the nominative case.

optātus sum	I (masc.) have been desired, I was desired
optāta sum	I (fem.) have been desired, I was desired
optātus est	he has been desired, he was desired
optāta est	she has been desired, she was desired
optātum est	it has been desired, it was desired
optātī sunt	they (masc.) have been desired, they were desired

The paradigm for the perfect passive indicative is:

optātus (-a, -um) sum	optātī (-ae, -a) sumus
optātus (-a, -um) es	optātī (-ae, -a) estis
optātus (-a, -um) est	optātī (-ae, -a) sunt

2. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) eram	optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus
optātus (-a, -um) erās	optātī (-ae, -a) erātis
optātus (-a, -um) erat	optātī (-ae, -a) erant

3. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus future of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) erō	optātī (-ae, -a) erimus
optātus (-a, -um) eris	optātī (-ae, -a) eritis
optātus (-a, -um) erit	optātī (-ae, -a) erunt

4. PERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus present subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) sim	optātī (-ae, -a) simus
optātus (-a, -um) sis	optātī (-ae, -a) sitis
optātus (-a, -um) sit	optātī (-ae, -a) sint

5. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) essem	optātī (-ae, -a) essemus
optātus (-a, -um) essēs	optātī (-ae, -a) essētis
optātus (-a, -um) esset	optātī (-ae, -a) essent

D. Review of Verb Conjugations

The chart on page 66 will illustrate the forms of all the tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive of all four conjugations.

E. Ablative of Personal Agent

The *agent* (agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, 'do') or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**, 'by'.

Puella **ā** rēgīnā terrētur. The girl is frightened *by the queen*.

Review of Verb Conjugations

(Shown in each box are the *active* forms of the 1st and 2nd person singular, followed by the *passive* forms.)

	1ST CONJUGATION	2ND CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION: i-stem	4TH CONJUGATION
Present Indic.	optō, optās optor, optāris (optāre)	impleō, implēs impleor, implēris (implēre)	dūcō, dūcis dūcor, dūceris (dūcere)	incipiō, incipis incipior, inciperis (incipere)	sentiō, sentis sentior, sentiris (sentire)
Imperfect Indic.	optābam, optābās optābar, optābāris (optābare)	implēbam, implēbās implēbar, implēbāris (implēbare)	dūcēbam, dūcēbās dūcēbar, dūcēbāris (dūcēbare)	incipiēbam, incipiēbās incipiēbar, incipiēbāris (incipiēbare)	sentiēbam, sentiēbās sentiēbar, sentiēbāris (sentiēbare)
Future Indic.	optābō, optābis optābor, optāberis (optābere)	implēbō, implēbis implēbor, implēberis (implēbere)	dūcam, dūcēs dūcar, dūceris (dūcere)	incipiam, incipiēs incipiar, inciperis (incipiēre)	sentiam, sentiēs sentiar, sentieris (sentire)
Perfect Indic.	optāvī, optāvisti optāvus (-a, -um) sum, optāvus (-a, -um) es	implēvī, implēvistī implēvūs (-a, -um) sum, implēvūs (-a, -um) es	dūxī, dūxisti ductus (-a, -um) sum, ductus (-a, -um) es	incēpi, incēpisti inceptus (-a, -um) sum, inceptus (-a, -um) es	sēnsi, sēnsisti sēnsus (-a, -um) sum, sēnsus (-a, -um) es
Pluperf. Indic.	optāveram, optāverās optāvus (-a, -um) eram, optāvus (-a, -um) erās	implēveram, implēverās implēvūs (-a, -um) eram, implēvūs (-a, -um) erās	dūxeram, dūxerās ductus (-a, -um) eram, ductus (-a, -um) erās	incēperam, incēperās inceptus (-a, -um) eram, inceptus (-a, -um) erās	sēnseram, sēnserās sēnsus (-a, -um) eram, sēnsus (-a, -um) erās
Fut. Perf. Indic.	optāverō, optāveris optāvus (-a, -um) erō, optāvus (-a, -um) eris	implēverō, implēveris implēvūs (-a, -um) erō, implēvūs (-a, -um) eris	dūxerō, dūxeris ductus (-a, -um) erō, ductus (-a, -um) eris	incēperō, incēperis inceptus (-a, -um) erō, inceptus (-a, -um) eris	sēnserō, sēnseris sēnsus (-a, -um) erō, sēnsus (-a, -um) eris
Present Subj.	optem, optēs opter, optēris (optēre)	impleam, impleās implear, impleāris (impleāre)	dūcam, dūcās dūcar, dūcāris (dūcāre)	incipiam, incipiās incipiar, incipiāris (incipiāre)	sentiam, sentiās sentiar, sentiāris (sentiāre)
Imperfect Subj.	optārem, optārēs optārer, optārēris (optārēre)	implērem, implērēs implērer, implērēris (implērēre)	dūcerem, dūcerēs dūcerer, dūcerēris (dūcerēre)	inciperem, inciperēs inciperer, inciperēris (inciperēre)	sentirem, sentirēs sentirer, sentirēris (sentirēre)
Perfect Subj.	optāverim, optāveris optāvus (-a, -um) sim, optāvus (-a, -um) sis	implēverim, implēveris implēvūs (-a, -um) sim, implēvūs (-a, -um) sis	dūxerim, dūxeris ductus (-a, -um) sim, ductus (-a, -um) sis	incēperim, incēperis inceptus (-a, -um) sim, inceptus (-a, -um) sis	sēnserim, sēnseris sēnsus (-a, -um) sim, sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperf. Subj.	optāvissem, optāvisēs optāvus (-a, -um) essem, optāvus (-a, -um) essēs	implēvissem, implēvisēs implēvūs (-a, -um) essem, implēvūs (-a, -um) essēs	dūxissem, dūxisēs ductus (-a, -um) essem, ductus (-a, -um) essēs	incēpisssem, incēpissēs inceptus (-a, -um) essem, inceptus (-a, -um) essēs	sēnsissem, sēnsisēs sēnsus (-a, -um) essem, sēnsus (-a, -um) essēs

Ablative of personal agent should not be confused with the ablative of means, which has no preposition, and which refers to a thing, not a person (see section E of Unit Three).

Puella fāmā rēginae terrētur. The girl is frightened *by (means of) the reputation* of the queen.

UNIT FOUR — VOCABULARY

aeternus, -a, -um	eternal
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus	do, drive, discuss, spend (time), conduct
altus, -a, -um	high, tall, deep
amicus, -a, -um	friendly (+ dat.)
inimicus, -a, -um	unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
caelum, -ī, N.	heaven, sky
cārus, -a, -um	dear (+ dat.)
cibus, -ī, M.	food
circum (prep. + acc.)	around
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus	destroy
deus, -ī, M.	a god, deity
nom. pl. dī	
gen. pl. deōrum or deum	
dat., abl. pl. dīs	
dea, -ae, F.	goddess
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus	lead; consider
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus	make, do
factum, -ī, N.	deed
fīlius, -ī, M.	son
fīlia, -ae, F.	daughter
honestus, -a, -um	respected, honorable, distinguished
intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus	understand
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus	choose, select; read
liber, librī, M.	book
littera, -ae, F.	letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter (epistle)
mēnsa, -ae, F.	table
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus	send
mōnstrō (1)	show, point out, demonstrate
oppidum, -ī, N.	town
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus	destroy, lose, waste
periculum, -ī, N.	danger

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus	put, place, set aside
quod (conj.)	because
rēgnum, -ī, N.	realm, kingdom
respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsus	answer
studium, -ī, N.	enthusiasm, zeal
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus	cover, conceal
tēctum, -ī, N.	roof, house
trādō, -ere, trādidi, trādītus	hand over, betray
umbra, -ae, F.	shadow
urna, -ae, F.	urn
vērus, -a, -um	true, real
vērē or vērō (adv.)	truly, indeed
videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus	see; (in passive) seem, <i>as well as</i> be seen
vīlla, -ae, F.	country house, farmhouse

UNIT FOUR — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Agō, agere, ēgī, āctus is an important verb which has many meanings: ‘do, drive, discuss, spend time, conduct (life)’. When a speaker **agit**, he is ‘pleading (a case)’; when an actor **agit**, he is ‘acting’. Note that the **a-** in the present stem lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, and to **ā-** in the perfect passive form. **Grātiās agere** with the dative means ‘to thank’ someone: **Grātiās rēgīnae ēgī**, ‘I thanked the queen’.

The preposition **cum**, when it is used as a prefix, is spelled **com-** or sometimes **co-**. The verb **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** means ‘drive together, collect, compel’ (compounded from **cum** + **agō**).

Altus, -a, -um describes something measured up or down; thus, it has both meanings, ‘high’ and ‘deep’.

The adjective **amīcus, -a, -um**, ‘friendly’, and its opposite **inimīcus, -a, -um**, ‘unfriendly’, are very often used substantively (as many adjectives are). Thus **amīcus**, ‘a friendly (man)’ is a ‘friend’, and **amīca**, a ‘girlfriend’ as well as a ‘prostitute’; **inimīcus** as a noun refers to a personal ‘enemy’ as opposed to a public enemy.

The plural forms of **deus, deī, M.**, ‘god’, are: **dī, deōrum** or **deum, dīs, deōs, dīs**. Just as **deus, deī** is ‘god’ and **dea, deae**, ‘goddess’, so **filius, filii** is ‘son’ and **filia, filiae**, ‘daughter’.

Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus not only means ‘lead’ but also ‘consider’.

Just as the **a-** of **agō** lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, so the **-a-** of **faciō, facere**, ‘make, do’, lengthens in **fēcī**, the perfect active form; however, it

remains short in **factus**, the perfect passive participle. There are many compounds of this verb:

afficiō (ad + faciō)	do (something) to (someone), affect
cōnficiō (where the prefix con- has the meaning 'completely')	do completely, accomplish
perficiō (per, 'thoroughly')	do thoroughly, complete, accomplish
reficiō (re- can also mean 'again' as well as 'back')	make again, renew
praeficiō (prae, 'in front of')	make (someone) in front of (others); put in charge

Factum, factī, N., is 'the thing which has been done', thus, 'deed'.

Honestus, -a, -um does *not* mean 'honest', but 'honorable, respected, distinguished'.

Legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus basically means 'gather, choose'; it then extends its meaning to 'read'. **Intellegō** is a compound of **legō (inter- [intel-], 'between, among')**. When one chooses among other ideas, he understands. Some of the compounds of **legō** keep the **-g-** in the perfect active stem; others, like **intellegō**, change the **-g-** to **-x-**. There is no rule to indicate which compound will take which spelling.

Do not confuse **liber, librī**, M., 'book', with **liber, libera, liberum**, 'free'. **Littera, litterae**, F., is a letter of the alphabet; the plural is used for an epistle. Thus **litterae, litterārum** is a 'letter': **Litterās Marcī vidī**, 'I saw Marcus' letter'. If one wants to speak of 'letters', an adjective must be used: "several letters", "many letters", "two letters", etc. As in English, the plural may be used for "literature"; cf. in English, "a man of letters".

Mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus means 'send'. In Latin, one sends something to someone or someplace using **ad** with the accusative, not the dative case alone:

Litterās ad amicum mīsī.	I sent a letter to	[motion stressed]
	(my) friend.	
Litterās amicō mīsī.	I sent a letter for	[the person referred to is stressed]
	(my) friend.	

Do not confuse the form **mīseris** ('you will have sent' or second person singular perfect subjunctive active) with its long **-ī-** with the dative and ablative plural of **miser, misera, miserum (miserīs)** which has a short **-i-** in its root.

An indirect object is often found with **mōnstrō**, a first conjugation verb, 'show, point out, demonstrate'. One points something out to someone in the dative case: **Rēgīnam virō mōnstrābō**, 'I shall point out the queen to the man'.

Pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus means 'put, place, set aside'. Thus:

compōnō (com-, 'together')	put together
dēpōnō	put down, deposit
impōnō (im- for in-)	place in <i>or</i> on
praepōnō (prae, 'in front of')	put in front of, place at the head
prōpōnō (prō-, 'forward')	put forth
repōnō (re-, 'back')	put back

Tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, 'cover, conceal', is related to two nouns of interest. **Tēctum, tēctī, N.**, is a 'covering' and so 'roof'; the meaning is then extended to 'house'. With a slight vowel change in the root of this verb there is produced the famous covering or garment for which the Romans are known, **toga, togae, F.**

Trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus is a compound of **trāns-**, 'across' and **dō**, 'give', but note that although **dō** is a first conjugation verb, this compounded form belongs to the third conjugation. Literally it means 'give across' and so the meaning is 'hand over' or 'betray'.

The adverb from **vērus, -a, -um** is either **vērē** or **vērō**; there is no difference between them.

The passive of **videō** means 'seem': **Marcus honestus vidētur**, 'Marcus seems honorable'. It can also mean 'be seen': **Marcus in tēctō vīsus est**, 'Marcus was seen in the house'.

Villa, villae, F.; is a 'country house, farmhouse'. It was not necessarily a villa in our sense of the word, but a simple dwelling in which countryfolk lived.

UNIT FOUR — DRILL

I.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.

B. Change the forms to the passive.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. spectās | 8. capiētis | 15. dāmnābās |
| 2. corōnāmus | 9. capiātis | 16. dāmnāvisti |
| 3. dētis | 10. capitis | 17. incēpisset |
| 4. dōnent | 11. cēlābāmus | 18. incēpissent |
| 5. habeam | 12. cōgitāret | 19. labōrāverit (2 possibilities) |
| 6. impleat | 13. cōgitet | 20. monuerātis |
| 7. vidēbitis | 14. cōgitat | |

II.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.

B. Change the forms to the active.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. mūtāti sumus | 8. pulsa essem | 15. tenēris |
| 2. mūtāti simus | 9. pulsae sumus | 16. auditum sit |
| 3. mūtāti erimus | 10. sentiāmini | 17. audiāmur |
| 4. mūtāti erāmus | 11. sentimini | 18. audiēbāmur |
| 5. pelleris | 12. sentiēmini | 19. gesta sunt |
| 6. pellēris | 13. tenēberis | 20. geruntur |
| 7. pellāris | 14. tenēbāris | |

III.

1. Identify **agere** (2 possibilities).
2. Identify **agēre**.
3. Distinguish among:
 - (a) dāmnētis, vidētis, incolētis
 - (b) portant, taceant, veniant
 - (c) scrībam, scrībēbam, scrībit, scrībet, scrībēbat

IV.

1. Fēminae per portās venient ut rēginam videant.
 - a) Change **venient** to the perfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
2. Monēmur nē multa verba amicis servōrum scrībāmus.
 - a) Change **monēmur** to the pluperfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
3. Dōnum ā nautīs cēlātum erat; dōnum undīs cēlātum est.
4. Sī dōnum vīsum esset, tacuissēmus.
 - a) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
5. Semper monitus eram nē ab incolīs vidērer, sed nōn audivi.

**UNIT FOUR — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES
(SECTION A)**

1. Multa vērō dē diligentīā viri clārī scrībam (scrībō, scrībēbam).
2. Ā liberis petēmus ut oppida inimīca dēleant.
3. Sī malōs incolīs prōvinciae trādant, dē insidiis taceāmus.
4. Honestī oppidī ad villam veniunt ut incolam ē periculō dūcant.
5. Rōmānī ad ārās deum multis cum dōnīs veniēbant ut veniam ōrārent.
6. Intellegisne librum poētae clārī?
7. Dē factis acerbis aeternōrum deum audiēmus (audīmus, audiēbāmus).
8. Villamne cum filiīs incolēbātis?
9. Sī virum honestum in prōvincia sentiās, laetus esse incipiam.
10. Multās litterās amicis scrībit ut multās legat.

UNIT FOUR — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nautae malī ab incolis liberīs in viam ācti sunt.
2. Incolae liberī nautās Rōmānōs in viam ēgērunt quod nautae missī erant ut oppidum dēlērent.
3. Si oppidum validum superābitur, liberī erunt servi.
4. Liber ā poētā cum diligentīā scriptus est ut magnum periculum bonis mōnstrārētur.
5. Si litterae ā rēginā pulchrā ad honestōs missae essent, moniti essent ut bellum gererent, et oppidum ab amicis malōrum nōn superātum esset.
6. Urna pulchra in mēnsā ā fēminis rēginae pōnētur ut cibō aquāque impleātur.
7. Si umbris magnis aqua alta ā dis tēcta esset, nautae Rōmāni vēla nōn darent.
8. Magnō cum studiō filiī rēginae respondēre incēpērunt; ōrāvērunt ut periculum incolis prōvinciārum magnā diligentīā dūcerētur.
9. Nisi nautae ad aquam dūcantur, vēla nōn dent.
10. Magnā cum diligentīā bellum gestum est nē ab incolis prōvinciae Rōmānae malis rēgnum superārētur.
11. Si verba vēra magnō studiō ā viris bonis honestisque legentur et intellegentur, periculum belli dēlēbitur.
12. Viri liberī et honesti semper ōrābant nē bellō et gladiis oppidum dēlērētur; incolās enim monuērunt ut vitam bonam agerent.
13. Litterae ad oppidum clārum ā rēginā prōvinciae missae sunt ut incolae veniam vēram vidērent et intellegerent.
14. Fēminae pulchrae virōs miserōs ē prōvincia Rōmānā ad amicum oppidum cum magnā turbā mittunt nē incolae prōvinciae esse videantur.
15. Filia rēginae bonae ad āram ā nautis Rōmānis ducta est ut honesta dis agerentur.
16. Periculum rēgnō magnum filiis liberōrum vidētur.
17. Circum oppidum dūcēbāris ut ā bonis malisque vidērēre.
18. Nisi poēta verba honesta vēraque dē factis bonōrum scribet, pecūniam nōn faciet.
19. Bonā veniā honesta audiēs; honesta bonā veniā audiuntur; ōrō ut honestum bonā veniā audiātur.
20. Si litterae filiō honestō mittantur, respondeatne?
21. Ōrābimus ut urnae aquā ā puellā impleantur.
22. Si magna bella ab incolis gerentur, rēgnum vērē dēlēbitur.
23. Si āra umbris tēcta esset, incolae cibum deōrum nōn vidissent.
24. Multa vērō pecūnia in mēnsā pōnitur ut honesti pecūniam capiant et magnum tēctum filiis faciant.
25. Nisi ab amicis trādītus esset, vitam nōn perdidisset.

26. Monuerat ut litterās amīcō trāderētis quod vēra dē periculīs rēgnō legere nōn optāvistis.
27. Āra aeterna ab incolīs oppidī facta est ut dōna dīs cāra darentur.
28. Oppidum enim dēlētum erat quod servī portās magnīs cum īnsidiīs patriae inimīcīs trādiderant.
29. Deās in caelō ōrāvīmus ut vīllam pulchram habeāmus.

II.

1. Very tearfully (with many tears) the queen demonstrated the dangers of war to the inhabitants of the island in order that they might not be overcome by the swords of the strong Roman sailors.
2. If the town is destroyed, the queen, with great kindness, will send both food and money to (**ad**) the wretched inhabitants.
3. The Romans always will wage wars very zealously (with great zeal) in order that they may not be placed in danger by (their) enemies.
4. If many urns had been made by the children, gifts of money would have been given by the queen.
5. If the evil men should be led around the towns of the queen's realm, the inhabitants would not be betrayed by (their) treachery.

III. Reading

Liber aeternus, honestīs virīs cārus, ā Vergiliō¹ scrīptus est. In librō vir, fīlius ē deā, ā dīs missus est ut oppidum in Italiā² conderet.³ Vir ā dīs lēctus erat ut factum faceret quod honestus bonam vītā ageret.⁴ Patriam, Trōiā,⁵ ab inimīcō trāditam⁶ reliquit.⁷ Trōiā⁵ dēlēta erat postquam⁸ incolae longum⁹ bellum cum Graecīs¹⁰ gesserant: īnsidiīs perdita est. Multī inimīcī in altō equō¹¹ ligneō¹² tēctī erant; Graecus¹⁰ vir incolīs oppidī amīcus ductus,⁶ magnō cum studiō amīcōs, Trōiānīs⁵ inimīcōs, ex equō¹¹ dūxit et tēcta mōnstrāvit ut accenderentur¹³ et incolās ut interficerentur.¹⁴ Trōiā⁵ magnō in periculō posita est; nē¹⁵ fīlius quidem¹⁵ deae cum amīcīs oppidum servāre¹⁶ potuit.¹⁷ Cum parvā¹⁸ turbā amīcōrum patriam reliquit⁷ et vēla ad Italiā² dedit.

¹ Vergilius, -ī, M., 'Vergil', the author of the Roman epic poem *The Aeneid* ² Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy' ³ condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, 'found' ⁴ ageret The subjunctive is used to express someone else's reason for doing a thing, not a reason one knows for sure. Subjunctive = mood of possibility ⁵ Trōiā, -ae, F., 'Troy', a city in Asia Minor, Trōiānus, -a, -um, 'Trojan' ⁶ trāditam (trādītus, -a, -um) and ductus (ductus, -a, -um) come from the fourth principal part of the verb and are perfect passive participles. Since a participle is an adjective, it must agree with the noun which it modifies in gender, number, and case. Translate trādītus, -a, -um 'having been betrayed, betrayed', and ductus, -a, -um 'having been considered, considered' ⁷ relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus, 'abandon' ⁸ postquam (conj.), 'after' ⁹ longus, -a, -um, 'long' ¹⁰ Graecus, -a, -um, 'Greek' ¹¹ equus, -ī, M., 'horse' ¹² ligneus, -a, -um, 'wooden' ¹³ accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, 'set on fire' ¹⁴ interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, 'kill' ¹⁵ nē quidem, 'not even' ¹⁶ servō (I), 'save' ¹⁷ possum, posse, potuī, --, 'be able' ¹⁸ parvus, -a, -um, 'small'

REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR

Review of Syntax

1. Dāmnor semper ab acerbis malōrum factōrum, sed fāma nōn perdita est.
(ablative of personal agent; adjective used as a noun; genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning)
2. Libri malī ab honestīs dāmnor, sed magnā cum invidiā ab amicis legitur et bonus esse dūcitur.
(genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning; ablatives of personal agent; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of manner; predicate adjective)
3. Sī multa mala dē factis deōrum audīta essent, incolae ad ārās nōn vēnissent.
(adjective used as a noun; past contrary-to-fact condition)
4. Sī ad insulam clāram mittēmur nē in patriā videāmur, multās litterās amicis cāris scribēmus nē ab inimicis trādāmur.
(future more vivid condition; two purpose clauses in primary sequence; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of personal agent)
5. Cārusne dīs videāris sī dōna cibī in ārīs pōnās?
(dative with a special adjective; future less vivid condition)
6. Sī oppidum insidiis dēlērētur, facta mala inimicōrum ab incolīs intellegerentur.
(present contrary-to-fact condition; ablative of means; adjective used as a noun; ablative of personal agent)
7. Fēminae lacrimās cēlāre nōn dubitant. Fēminās ōrāmus nē lacrimās cēlent. Tacēmus nē fēminae lacrimās cēlent.
(indirect command in primary sequence; purpose clause in primary sequence)
8. Petēbāmus ā nātīs ut saxa clāra in cellam neque cum morā neque cum noxā portārentur, nē in campīs cēlārentur et perderentur.
(ā + abl. with **petō**; indirect command in secondary sequence; ablatives of manner; purpose clause in secondary sequence)

Synopsis of Verbs

A synopsis (refer to Preliminary Exercises for Unit Two) should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

The following synopsis of **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** in the first person plural will serve as a model:

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead, consider'

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dūcimus	dūcimur
Imperfect	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur
Future	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
Perfect	dūximus	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
Pluperfect	dūxerāmus	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
Future Perfect	dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	dūcāmus	dūcāmur
Imperfect	dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
Perfect	dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) sīmus
Pluperfect	dūxissēmus	ductī (-ae, -a) essēmus

UNITS 1–4: Self-Review A

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

I.

A. Change these forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- impleverunt
- terrueritis (2 possibilities)
- viderat
- spectes
- sentiebam

B. Change these forms to the active, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- monitus esses
- teneremur
- capiemini
- gesta sit
- mittitur

II.

Fully describe each of the following as to *form*, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. *positae sunt*
2. *gladii* (2 possibilities)
3. *tegere* (3 possibilities)
4. *audiverit* (2 possibilities)
5. *villae* (3 possibilities)

III.

Translate each sentence into English and then do whatever is required by any questions which follow:

1. *Incolae miseri verba filiorum audiverunt ut multa intellegant.*
 - a) Change **intellegant** to the imperfect subjunctive and show how this would alter your translation of **audiverunt**.
 - b) Change the form **audiverunt** to the imperfect tense.
2. *Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo; regina enim monuit ut urnam laeto impleam.*
 - a) Rewrite in Latin completely in the plural.
 - b) Give the syntax of **videberis**.
 - c) Give the case of **laeto**.
 - d) Rewrite **Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo** as a simple present condition.
 - e) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
 - f) Rewrite as a past contrary-to-fact condition.
3. *Si insidiarum damnatus esset, nauta ab incolis oppidi honestis petivisset ut audiretur ne in periculo poneretur.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **insidiarum**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **audiretur**.
4. *Magnae turbae servorum ex agris ad portas oppidi venerunt ut multis cum lacrimis viros validos orarent ut de natura belli tacerent.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **orarent**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **tacerent**.
5. *Multum enim de periculo ab honesto actum et lectum et scriptum est ne regnum a malo deleretur.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **malo**.
 - b) Rewrite the entire sentence in Latin in the plural.
6. *Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia gestum esset, viri nunc vela ad insulam non darent.*
 - a) Give syntax of **gestum esset**.

- b) Give syntax of **darent**.
 - c) Give syntax of **gladiis**.
 - d) Give syntax of **diligentiā**.
 - e) Rewrite in Latin as a future less vivid condition.
 - f) Translate the Latin sentence you wrote under 6e.
7. Si amica facta deorum ducentur magnā cum curā, vitam bonam agere optabimus.

IV.

Translate into Latin:

1. If they think about the danger, the inhabitants will begin to place big rocks around the island in order that the town may be free.
2. The book had indeed been read zealously by the boy.

Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review A

I.

- A. 1. implēti, -ae, -a sunt
 2. territi, -ae, -a sitis
 territi, -ae, -a eritis
 3. visus, -a, -um erat
 4. spectēris (spectēre)
 5. sentiēbar
- B. 1. monuissēs
 2. tenērēmus
 3. capiētis
 4. gesserit
 5. mittit

II.

1. 3rd pl. fem. perfect passive indicative: **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**
2. genitive sing.; nominative pl.: **gladius, -ī, M.**
3. present active infinitive; 2nd sing. future passive indicative (when -e- is long);
 2nd sing. present passive indicative (when -e- is short): **tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**
4. 3rd sing. future perfect active indicative; 3rd sing. perfect active subjunctive:
audiō, audīre, audivī, auditus
5. genitive sing.; dative sing.; nominative pl.: **vīlla, -ae, F.**

III.

1. The wretched inhabitants have heard (have listened to) the words of their sons in order that they may understand many things.
 - a) intellegent
'listened to, heard'
 - b) audiēbant
2. If you do (will) not seem to be happy (unless you (will) seem. . .), I shall not fill the urn with water; indeed the queen has warned (has advised) that I fill the urn for a (the) happy man.
 - a) Nisi laeti esse vidēbimini, aquis urnās nōn implēbimus; rēginae enim monuērunt ut urnās laetis impleāmus.
 - b) 2nd sing. future passive indicative in protasis of a future more vivid condition
 - c) dative sing.
 - d) Nisi laetus esse vidēris (vidēre), aquā urnam nōn impleō.
 - e) Nisi laetus esse vidērēris (vidērere), aquā urnam nōn implērem.
 - f) Nisi laetus esse visus essēs, aquā urnam nōn implēvissem.
3. If he had been condemned for treachery, the sailor would have asked the honorable inhabitants of the town that he be heard in order that he might not be placed (put) in danger.
 - a) genitive pl. with a verb of condemning
 - b) 3rd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
4. Large crowds of slaves came out of the fields to the gates of the town in order that they might beg the strong men very tearfully (with many tears) that they be silent about the nature of (the) war.
 - a) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in a clause of purpose
 - b) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in an indirect command
5. Indeed much was done and read and written by the (an) honorable man about the danger in order that the kingdom might not be destroyed by the (an) evil man.
 - a) ablative of personal agent
 - b) Multa enim dē periculis ab honestis ācta et lēcta et scripta sunt nē rēgna ā malis dēlērentur.
6. If the war had been waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not now be setting sail to the island.
 - a) 3rd sing. pluperfect subjunctive passive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
 - b) 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive active in the apodosis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition

- c) ablative of means
 - d) ablative of manner
 - e) Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia geratur, viri vĕla ad insulam nōn dent.
 - f) If the war should be waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not set sail to the island.
7. If the friendly deeds of the gods are (will be) considered very carefully (with great care), we shall desire (choose) to conduct a good life.

IV.

1. Si dĕ periculō cōgitābunt, incolae magna saxa circum insulam pōnere incipient ut oppidum liberum sit.
2. Liber enim ā puerō cum studiō lēctus erat.

UNITS 1–4: Self-Review B

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

I.

- A. Identify the form of each of the following, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. gesseritis | 3. nautis | 5. studia |
| 2. mitterere | 4. sentiar | |

- B. Change the following verb forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. superamus | 3. egeratis | 5. perdiderim |
| 2. terrebis | 4. intellegant | |

- C. Change the following verb forms to the active voice, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. audiebatur | 3. positi estis | 5. visae essemus |
| 2. pulsa erunt | 4. donaremini | |

II.

Translate each of the following and then do whatever is required by the questions which follow:

1. Si nautae validi poenas dedissent, magno studio regina aras deorum donis implevisset.

- a) Explain the ending of **validi**.
 - b) Give the syntax of **studio**.
 - c) Explain the syntax of **implevisset**.
 - d) Change the above condition to the **negative**.
 - e) Rewrite the above as a future less vivid condition.
 - f) Rewrite as a future more vivid condition.
 - g) Rewrite as a contrary-to-fact condition in present time.
2. Si bellum in provinciā geretis, magnum regnum perdetis.
 - a) Give the syntax of **geretis**.
 3. Marcus, vir honestus clarusque, servos miseros monuit ut naturam animae intellegerent ut laeti essent.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **intellegerent**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **essent**.
 - c) Change the subordinate clauses to the **negative**.
 - d) Change **monuit** to the simple present and make any additional change(s) necessary.
 4. Multa verba acerba de periculo belli magnā cum diligentia a poetis scripta sunt ne boni bellum gerere optarent.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **diligentia**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **poetis**.
 - c) Change the verb in the subordinate clause to primary sequence. How would this alter your translation of **scripta sunt**?
 5. Nautae villas insulae gladiis saxisque delere inciperent nisi regina litteras incolis misisset ut multa bona amicis nautarum darentur.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **gladiis**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **misisset**.
 6. Venia vera deorum aeternorum in caelo natis monstrata est ut vitam bonam agant.
 - a) Change **monstrata est** to the simple future tense and make any other necessary change(s).
 7. Si incola inimicus a viris visus esset, feminas e villis ad aras duxissent ut a dis peterent ne oppidum periculo et villae lacrimis implerentur.

III.

Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. We came to the town very zealously in order that we might warn the sailors that they not betray (their) friends.
2. If we should be seen by the men of the town, we would be considered hostile and would be driven from the province.

Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review B

I.

- A. 1. 2nd pl. future perfect active indicative; 2nd pl. perfect active subjunctive:
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
2. 2nd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive: **mittō, mittere, misi, missus**
3. dative/ablative pl.: **nauta, -ae, M.**
4. 1st sing. future passive indicative; 1st sing. present passive subjunctive:
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsi, sēnsus
5. nominative/accusative pl.: **studium, -ī, N.**
- B. 1. **superāmur**
2. **terrēberis (terrēbere)**
3. **ācti, -ae, -a erātis**
4. **intellegantur**
5. **perditus, -a, -um sim**
- C. 1. **audiēbat**
2. **pepulerint**
3. **posuistis**
4. **dōnārētis**
5. **vidissēmus**

II.

1. If the strong sailors had paid the penalty, very zealously (with great zeal) the queen would have filled the altars of the gods with gifts.
- a) nominative pl. M. adjective agreeing with **nautae, M.**
- b) ablative of manner
- c) 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the apodosis of a past contrary-to-fact condition
- d) **Nisi nautae validi poenās dedissent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnīs nōn implēvisset.**
- e) **Si nautae validi poenās dent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnīs impleat.**
- f) **Si nautae validi poenās { dabunt / dederint } magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnīs implēbit.**
- g) **Si nautae validi poenās darent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnīs implēret.**
2. If you (pl.) (will) wage war in the province, you (pl.) will destroy a great kingdom.

- a) 2nd pl. future active indicative in the protasis of a future more vivid condition
3. Marcus, an honorable and famous man, warned the wretched slaves that they understand the nature of the soul in order that they might be happy.
- a) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
- b) 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a purpose clause in secondary sequence
- c) ...servōs miserōs monuit nē nātūram animae intellegerent nē laeti essent.
- d) monet ut...intellegant ut...sint
4. Many harsh (bitter) words about the danger of war were written very diligently (with great diligence) by poets in order that good men might not choose (desire) to wage war.
- a) ablative of manner
- b) ablative of personal agent
- c) optent
'have been written'
5. The sailors would (now) begin to destroy the country houses of the island with swords and rocks if the queen had not (unless the queen had) sent a letter to (for) the inhabitants in order that many good things might be given to the sailors' friends.
- a) ablative of means
- b) 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
6. The true favor (kindness) of the eternal gods in the sky (heaven) has been shown (pointed out) to the children (sons) in order that they may conduct a good life.
- a) mōnstrābitur
no other changes necessary
7. If the unfriendly inhabitant had been seen by the men, they would have led the women out of the country houses to the altars in order that they might ask the gods that the town not be filled with danger and the country houses (not be filled) with tears.

III.

1. Ad oppidum magnō cum studiō vēnimus ut nautās monērēmus nē amicōs trāderent.
2. Sī ā virīs oppidī videāmur, inimicī habeāmur (dūcāmur) et ē prōvinciā pellāmur (expellāmur).

UNIT FIVE

A. Participles: Definition and Formation

If we wish to take a verb and make an adjective out of it, we construct a *verbal adjective or participle*.

The *shouting* woman departed.

The men saw the *destroyed* town.

A participle, like any other adjective, must agree with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and case. In the sentences given as examples above, “shouting” is feminine, singular, nominative to agree with “woman”; “destroyed” is neuter, singular, accusative to agree with “town”. The participle also has the attributes of tense and voice: “shouting” is present active; “destroyed” (i.e., “having been destroyed”) is perfect passive.

The participle, although an adjective, still retains its verbal powers and accordingly, for example, can take an object:

The men *destroying the town* were sailors.

The formation of participles is illustrated below:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāns desiring	--
Perfect	--	optātus, -a, -um having been desired, desired
Future	optātūrus, -a, -um going to desire, about to desire	optandus, -a, -um having to be desired, to be desired*

1. **PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the present active participle, add **-ns** to the present stem. In the case of i-stem verbs, **-ie-** will appear in the present participle:

optā/ns implē/ns dūcē/ns incipiē/ns sentiē/ns

* The future passive participle regularly carries the accessory notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

The form given is the nominative singular for all three genders. The present participle declines, but according to a scheme which differs from that which you have already learned. This will be discussed in Unit Eight. (Note that a vowel lengthens before **-ns**.)

2. **PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of the verb:

optātus, -a, -um implētus, -a, -um ductus, -a, -um inceptus, -a, -um
sēnsus, -a, -um

3. **FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future active participle, take the fourth principal part of the verb, drop the **-us** ending and add in its place **-ūrus, -a, -um**:

optātūrus, -a, -um implētūrus, -a, -um ductūrus, -a, -um
inceptūrus, -a, -um sēnsūrus, -a, -um

4. **FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future passive participle, add **-ndus, -a, -um** to the present stem. In *i*-stem verbs, **-ie-** will appear:

optandus, -a, -um implendus, -a, -um dūcendus, -a, -um
incipiendus, -a, -um sentiendus, -a, -um

Note that a long vowel shortens before **-nd**.

B. Some Uses of the Participle

The tense of the participle is *relative* to that of the main verb. A *present* participle refers to an action *contemporaneous* with that of the main verb; a *perfect* participle refers to an action *prior* to that of the main verb; a *future* participle refers to an action *subsequent* to that of the main verb. There are some problems which arise in this system because of the lack of certain participial forms (i.e., present passive and perfect active), but these may be circumvented easily, as will be seen later.

Multiple interpretations of a participle are possible in English:

1. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina **clāmāns** discessit. The *shouting* woman departed.
The woman departed *shouting*.
Shouting, the woman departed.
The woman *who was shouting* departed.
The woman, *since she was shouting*, departed.
The woman, *although she was shouting*,
departed.
When (while) she was shouting, the woman
departed.
If she was shouting, the woman departed.

OBSERVATIONS:

- a) In each case, the present participle **clāmāns** refers to an action which was going on at the same time as that of the main verb.
- b) The participle can be translated into English with causal (“since”), concessive (“although”), temporal (“when, while”), or conditional (“if”) force. The participle alone, then, can stand for the if-clause (protasis) of a conditional sentence. It can also stand for a relative clause. The interpretation of a participle must depend upon the requirements of the *context* of each specific passage.
- c) Frequently when a participle is meant to be taken as concessive, the word **tamen**, ‘nevertheless’, is inserted to qualify the main verb.

Fēmina clāmāns tamen discessit. Although the woman was shouting, nevertheless she departed.

2. PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina **territa** clāmāvit. The *having-been-frightened* woman shouted.
 The woman, *having been frightened*, shouted.
Having been frightened, the woman shouted.
 The *frightened* woman shouted.
 The woman *who had been frightened* shouted.
Since she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
Although she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
When (after) she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
If she had been frightened, the woman shouted.

OBSERVATIONS:

- a) The perfect passive participle refers to an action which occurred prior to the time of the main verb.
- b) The absence of the perfect active participle in Latin makes it impossible at this stage of our study to express a verbal idea in the active voice as having occurred prior to the time of the main verb.

The woman, having shouted (after she had shouted), departed.

A subordinate clause, introduced perhaps by the subordinating conjunction **postquam**, ‘after’, would have to be used in this case:

Postquam clāmāvit, fēmina discessit. After she shouted, the woman departed.

3. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

- Fēmina **discessūra** virum vīdit. The *about-to-depart* woman saw (her) husband.
 The woman, *about to depart*, saw (her) husband.
About to depart, the woman saw (her) husband.
 The woman *who was about (going) to depart* saw (her) husband.
Since the woman was going to depart, she saw (her) husband.
Although the woman was going to depart, she saw (her) husband.
When (as) the woman was going to depart, she saw (her) husband.
If the woman was going to depart, she saw (her) husband.

OBSERVATION: The future active participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.

4. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

- Librōs **legendōs** in mēnsā posuit. He placed *having-to-be-read* books on the table.
 He placed books *to be read* on the table.
 He placed books *which had to be read* on the table.

OBSERVATIONS:

- a) The future passive participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.
- b) The future passive participle (sometimes called the *gerundive*) carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

These participial constructions may occur in any grammatical case:

- Fēminae **discessūrae** pecūniam dedit. He gave money to the about-to-depart woman.
 He gave money to the woman who was about to depart.

C. Periphrastics

The future participles (active and passive) are compounded with the verb **sum** to form the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

1. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The active periphrastic is translated by the English 'about to, going to, ready to'.

INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sum	I am about to desire
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) eram	I was about to desire
Fut.	optātūrus (-a, -um) erō	I shall be about to desire
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fui	I have been (was) about to desire
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram	I had been about to desire
Fut. Pf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have been about to desire

SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuissem

2. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The passive periphrastic is translated by 'have (has) to, should, ought to', or 'must'.

INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sum	I am having-to-be desired, I have to be desired, I should (ought to) be desired, I must be desired
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) eram	I had to be desired
Fut.	optandus (-a, -um) erō	I shall have to be desired
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fui	I had to be desired
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fueram	I had had to be desired
Fut. Pf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have had to be desired

SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuissem

These compound periphrastic forms should not be confused with the compound passives of the perfect system which have been met earlier. Distinguish:

optātus est	he has been desired	(passive)
optātūrus est	he is about to desire	(active periphrastic)
optandus est	he is (has) to be desired	(passive periphrastic)

D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic

Personal agent is regularly expressed by the ablative case preceded by the preposition *ā* (**ab**). With the passive periphrastic, however, the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition. In fact, this use of the dative is purely referential; the action of the verb is viewed as necessary with reference to the agent.

Poēta rēgīnae videndus est. The poet must be seen *by the queen*.

(Note that the **-us** ending on **videndus** agrees with the subject **poēta** which is masculine.)

E. Dative of the Possessor

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

Corōna est rēgīnae. A crown is *to the queen*; *the queen* has a crown; the crown is *the queen's*.

Liber est amīcō. A book is *to the friend*; *the friend* has a book; the book is *the friend's*.

F. The Verb *possum*, 'be able'

This verb is a compound of **sum**. In the present system, when the form of **sum** begins with **s**, the prefix **pos-** is added to conjugate **possum**; when the form of **sum** begins with **e**, the prefix **pot-** is added. The imperfect subjunctive is constructed, as usual, on the full present infinitive, and the perfect system is formed as one might expect.

possum, posse, potuī, --

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
INDICATIVE					
<i>possum</i>	<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterō</i>	<i>potuī</i>	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerō</i>
<i>potes</i>	<i>poterās</i>	<i>poteris</i>	<i>potuisti</i>	<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potueris</i>
<i>potest</i>	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.
<i>possumus</i>					
<i>potestis</i>					
<i>possunt</i>					

Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>possim</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>possis</i>	<i>possēs</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potuissēs</i>
<i>possit</i>	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.
<i>possimus</i>			
<i>possitis</i>			
<i>possint</i>			

G. Complementary Infinitive and Object Infinitive

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like.

<i>Amicum vidēre optō.</i>	I desire <i>to see</i> (my) friend.
<i>Amicum vidēre possum.</i>	I am able <i>to see</i> (my) friend.
<i>Bonus esse vidētur.</i>	He seems <i>to be</i> good.

Such infinitives are called *complementary* infinitives because they *complete* the idea of the verb. When they are used with transitive verbs, as in the first example above, they are in effect *object* infinitives since they function as the direct object of the transitive verb.

UNIT FIVE — VOCABULARY

ante (prep. + acc.)	before, in front of
(adv.)	before, previously
antīquus, -a, -um	ancient
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus	burn, be on fire; desire
arma, -ōrum, N. (pl.)	arms, weapons
aurum, -ī, N.	gold
aureus, -a, -um	golden, of gold
autem (postpositive conj.)	however, moreover
bene (adv.)	well
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus	sing (of)
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus	go, move, yield
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go to, approach
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go from, depart, leave
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus	owe, ought
dominus, -ī, M.	master, lord
dūrus, -a, -um	hard, harsh
ferrum, -ī, N.	iron, sword
flamma, -ae, F.	flame, fire
imperium, -ī, N.	authority, power, empire

imperō (1)	give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s) (The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by an <i>ut</i> clause [negative <i>nē</i>] of indirect command.)
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	kill
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus	go into, invade, attack
magister, magistrī, M.	superior, director, master, teacher
medius, -a, -um	middle of, middle
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus	move
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus	remove, take away, set aside
mox (adv.)	soon
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus	learn, (in perfect) know
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus	learn, (in perfect) know
novus, -a, -um	new, strange
numquam (nunquam) (adv.)	never
umquam (unquam) (adv.)	ever
pius, -a, -um	loyal, dutiful, pious
impius, -a, -um	irreverent, wicked, impious
populus, -ī, M.	people
possum, posse, potuī, --	be able, can
post (prep. + acc.)	after, behind
(adv.)	afterwards, after, behind
postquam (conj.)	after (+ indicative)
quamquam (conj.)	although (+ indicative)
ruīna, -ae, F.	fall, downfall, ruin, destruction
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus	fall, go to ruin, rush
sine (prep. + abl.)	without
socius, -a, -um	allied
socius, -ī, M.	ally
tamen (adv.)	nevertheless
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus	be alive, live
vocō (1)	call

UNIT FIVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The prepositions *ante*, ‘before’, and *post*, ‘after’, are well known, since one speaks of the ante-bellum South, or the post-bellum South, for example, in reference to the Civil War. These expressions will serve as reminders that both prepositions govern the accusative case. Both words can be used adverbially as well: *ante*, ‘previously, before’; *post*, ‘afterwards, after, behind’. And so, one

might say either *Urna ante mēnsam posita est*, 'The urn was placed in front of the table', or *Litterās ante scripsimus*, 'We wrote the letter before'.

The word *arma, armōrum* has no singular; it is a neuter word found only in the plural.

Aurum, aurī, N., 'gold', has as its adjective *aureus, -a, -um*, 'golden, of gold'. The chemical symbol for gold, *Au*, comes from the first two letters of *aurum*.

Autem, 'however, moreover', like *enim*, 'indeed', is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

Cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus is another verb with many compounds. It means 'go, move, yield', and so *accēdō (ad + cēdō)* is 'go to, approach'; *discēdō (dis-, 'apart' + cēdō)*, 'go from, depart, leave'; *excēdō*, 'go out'; *recēdō*, 'go back', etc.

Dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, when used with an infinitive, means 'ought'; otherwise it means 'owe'.

Ferrum, ferri, N., is the word for 'iron' (chemical symbol *Fe*); it can also mean 'sword'.

Imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus, 'order, command', may govern the dative case. One gives a command to someone that he do something (*ut* or [negative] *nē* + subjunctive): *Fēminae ut canat imperō*, 'I order the woman to sing'.

Interficiō is another compound of *faciō* and means 'kill'.

Magister, magistri, M., is the person in charge of something, 'superior, director, master, teacher'.

Medius, -a, -um means 'the middle of'; it is an adjective like any other adjective, taking the case of the noun which it modifies: *in mediō oppidō*, 'in the middle of the town'; *ad medium oppidum*, 'toward the middle of the town'.

Moveō, movēre, 'move', lengthens its *-o-* in the perfect tenses: *mōvī, mōtus*. *Removeō*, a compound of *re-* + *moveō*, means 'move back, remove, take away, set aside'.

Nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus and *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus* both mean 'learn' in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. However, once one has learned something, he knows it; therefore, the perfect tenses mean 'know'.

Umquam (sometimes spelled *unquam*) means 'ever'; its opposite, *numquam* (sometimes spelled *nunquam*) means 'never'.

Pius, -a, -um, 'loyal, dutiful, pious', has as its negative counterpart *impius, -a, -um*, 'irreverent, wicked, impious'; the prefix *in-* may have the meaning 'not'.

Populus with a short *-o-* means 'people' and is masculine; with a long *-ō-* it means 'poplar tree' and is feminine. Obviously, a careful pronunciation is needed to make a distinction between these two words. *Populus, populī*, M., 'people', is a collective noun and since it is singular, any adjective modifying it or verb used with it must also be singular. In the plural, it means 'peoples'.

Possum, posse, potui has no fourth principal part; it means 'be able, can'. If the meaning 'be able' is used, it will be easy to remember that a complementary infinitive is used with **possum**. A complementary infinitive completes the meaning of an intransitive verb. "I am able" or "I ought" does not mean anything until an infinitive is used to complete the meaning: **Canere possum**, 'I am able to sing'; **Ferrum removēre dēbeō**, 'I ought to remove the sword'.

The conjunction **postquam**, 'after', is sometimes cut up into two parts (**post...quam**); this is called *imesis*. By dividing the word, one gives the sentence a greater cohesion: **Dominus post interfectus est quam trāditus est**, 'The master was killed after he had been betrayed'.

The present stem of **ruō, ruere, rui, rurus**, 'fall, go to ruin, rush', is the same as the perfect active stem; thus, **ruit**, 'he rushes', or 'he has rushed'.

The adjective **socius, -a, -um**, 'allied', when used substantively means 'ally': **Multī sociī Rōmānis in magnō bellō pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) allied to the Romans fought in the great war' or 'Many men fought in the great war as allies to the Romans'. Often adding the English word "as" makes for a smoother translation of a Latin sentence: **Et domini et servi pīi ad ārās deōrum vēnērunt**, 'Both the dutiful masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods' or 'Both the masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods as dutiful men'.

UNIT FIVE — DRILL

I.

Translate these phrases:

1. puer intellegēns
2. poēta respondēns
3. oppidum pūgnāns
4. filius dubitāns
5. deus monēns
6. amicus audiēns
7. incola capiēns
8. a) incola captus b) incolae captō c) incolārum captōrum
9. a) litterae missae b) litteris missis
10. a) inimicus expulsus b) inimīci expulsī c) inimicō expulsō
11. a) liber lēctus b) librōrum lēctōrum
12. a) urna facta b) urnis factis
13. a) rēgnum perdendum b) rēgna perdenda c) rēgnō perdendō
14. a) servi spectandī b) servōrum spectandōrum
15. a) libri scribendī b) libris scribendis c) librōrum scribendōrum
16. a) dōna danda b) dōnōrum dandōrum

17. a) puella respōnsūra b) puellae respōnsūrae
18. a) vir pūgnātūrus b) viris pūgnātūris
19. a) rēgīnae dāmnātūrae b) ā rēgīnā dāmnātūrā
20. a) fēmina visūra b) fēminārum visūrārum

II.

Translate these sentences: (participles)

1. Īnsula ā virō capta dēlēbitur (dēlēta est).
2. Vir ĩnsulam capiēns pecūniam incolis dabit (dedit).
3. Vir ĩnsulam captūrus pecūniam incolis dabit (dedit).
4. Vir ĩnsulam captam dēlēre poterit (poterat).
5. Īnsula capienda est magna.
6. Nautae oppidum perditūrī fēminās incolārum terrent (terruērunt).
7. Nauta oppidum perdēns fēminās incolārum terret (terruit).
8. Oppidum dē periculō ab amicis monitum ab inimicis tamen perditum est.
9. Oppidum perdendum ab amicis monitum erat.
10. Dōnum viris librum lēctūrīs dedistī.
11. Glōria nautārum superātōrum erat magna.
12. Incolis ĩnsulam superātūrīs pecūniam dare potuit (potest).
13. Nautae incolās trāditūrō erat mala fāma.
14. Caecō dōna dis datūrō nōn erat pecūnia.
15. Caecus cibum ā virō ad oppidum missō petere optat.
16. Sī virōs oppidum dēlētūrōs vidēre possim, laetus esse possim.

III.

Translate the following: (periphrastics, etc.)

1. missūrī sunt
2. missūrī erant
3. missūrī erunt
4. trādendum est
5. Oppidum trādendum erat.
6. Oppidum incolis trādendum erit.
7. Sententiae puellārum mūtandae sunt.
8. Sententiae puellis mūtandae sunt.
9. Puellae sentiāns mūtātūrae sunt.
10. Venia petenda est.
11. Mali veniam petitūrī erant.
12. Nautae ad oppidum missi erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.
13. Nautae ad oppidum mittendī sunt ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellant.
14. Nautae ad oppidum mittendī erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.

15. Rēgina nautās ad oppidum missūra est (erat).
16. Bellum ab acerbis gestum timēbātur.
17. Acerbus bellum gerēns ab incolis timētur.
18. Si sententiae dē bellō viris mūtandae sint, incolae nōn intellegant.
19. Si sententiae dē bellō viris mūtandae essent (fuissent), incolae nōn intellegent (intellēxissent).
20. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus sis, amici nōn taceant.
21. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus essēs (fuissēs), amici nōn tacērent (tacuissent).

IV.

Translate: (datives of the possessor)

1. Nautis gladii sunt.
2. Fēminae est mēnsa pulchra.
3. Filiis poētae erant pulchri oculi.
4. Nautae multa pecūnia est; poētae nihil.

UNIT FIVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Dominus vocātus ad campum accessit.
2. Aurum ē cellā removēns, magister imperāvit ut in mediā mēnsā pōnerētur.
3. Piōs ad āram cessūrōs vidimus.
4. Sociis in periculum rutūris imperāvit.
5. Arma movenda spectāvimus.
6. Impiōs interficiendōs mōnstrāvērunt.
7. Patriam populi territī invādere nōn dēbētis.
8. Poēta autem virōs cognitōs cecinit.
9. Ruinae oppidōrum arsōrum ā nautis visae sunt.
10. Multam pecūniam capiēns, servus ā domini tēctō discessit.

UNIT FIVE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Villa alta, flammis ardēns, in ruīnam ante oculōs populi territōs ruit.
2. Magister magnus ab agrō discessūrōs ōrāvit ut oppidum sociōrum captōrum dēlērent. Magistrō enim non erant arma. discessūrīs multa.
3. Postquam viris ab agrō discessūrīs imperāvit ut multa dē nātūrā populi inimicī cognōscerent, ē mediō sine morā discessit.

4. a) Medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum ab impiīs tamen captum est.
b) Medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum piīs tamen capiendum est ut sine periculō bene vivant.
c) Piī medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum capere dēbent nē ab inimicīs interficiantur.
5. Magister honestus dōna multa et pulchra servīs bellō captīs dāns imperāvit ut cum diligentīā studiōque labōrārent ut liberi mox essent et ē rēgnō cēderent. Servi autem magistrum nōn audivērunt; ē rēgnō numquam cessērunt, sed ē vitā mox cessūri erant.
6. Rōmānī arma capta superātōrum dēlēbant ut imperium sine periculō tenēre possent.
7. Nōn sine glōriā vitam ēgi; et multa ē libris nōvi, et magna populō et rēgnō fēcī. Mala autem in vitam invāsērunt et nunc inimicīs interficiendus sum ut ē mediō removear. Lacrimīs fēminās inimicōrum movēre optāvī ut virōs ōrent nē pium bonōrum factōrum dāmnent, sed nōn potuī. Sī malam vitam ēgissem, nunc interficiendus nōn essem.
8. Impiōrum arma capta sunt ā turbā tēctum invāsūrā.
9. Nautārum Rōmānōrum turba invādēns arma capta liberōrum dēlēvit.
10. Poēta vivēns in imperiō arma virumque cecinit.
11. a) Si nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capere possit, clārus sit.
b) Si nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiat, clārus sit.
c) Nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiēns clārus sit.
12. Urna antiqua et aurea, in mediā mēnsā posita, ā puerō malō dēlēta est ut novam habēret.
13. Fēmina clāmāns servum ē villā discessūrum monuit ut urna cāra ā mēnsā removenda esset.
14. Multa dūra dē rēgīnā clāmāns populus tamen ā patriā nōn discessūrus est (erat, erit).
15. Postquam ad tēctum sociōrum accessērunt, servīs imperāvērunt ut dē patriā multa canerent.
16. Numquam ē patriā cēdam vivēns. Numquam ē patriā cēdere poterō.
17. Si nautās ē mediō oppidō vocētis, mox veniant ut insulam invādant.
18. Quamquam incolae miserī sunt, bellum tamen gerētur.
19. Quamquam poēta magnum librum scribet, clārus tamen nōn erit.
20. Poēta magnum librum scribēns clārus tamen nōn erit.
21. Bene cōgitāta nōn perduntur.
22. Bene perdit pecūniam amicis dāns.
23. Socius inimicōs nec ferrō potuit superāre nec aurō.
24. Si bellum dūrum sociīs nunc gerendum esset, pūgnātūri arma caperēmus.
25. Poēta bella gerenda canere potest (poterat, poterit).
26. Novōs librōs legendōs in mēnsā nātō posuissētis sī legere potuisset.

27. Ruinamne in vitā unquam vidistis? Si ruīnam in vitā vidissēmus, in periculum caeci nōn ruissēmus.
28. Ante portās pūgnāns interficiētur.
29. Ōrātūrī sumus ut dē vitā ante āctā domini cōgitētis nē insidiārum dāmnētur.
30. Faciam nōn nova, sed multa ante facta.
31. Si periculum veniat, ruina post sit; post periculum erit ruina.
32. Impiī vivunt et victūrī sunt; piī semper malis interficiendī erunt si imperium tenēre optābunt.

II.

1. The poet ought to write a book. (translate two ways)
2. The master will have to be overcome by the men who have been betrayed (i.e., the betrayed men) if they are going to drive evil from the land.
3. While the poet was singing of ancient empires destroyed by the sword, he was killed by the men who had been seen previously in the town.
4. A war must be fought by the captured allies in order that they may be free men.
5. After the war, those who had been conquered had neither money nor food. (use dative of the possessor)

III. Reading

Antequam¹ pius Aenēās oppidum condere² potuit, bellum Aenēae pūgnandum fuit. Arma autem Aenēae nōn fuērunt. Filius deae mātrem³ arma ōrāvīt ut inimicōs interficeret. Māter³ deō imperāvīt ut arma historiā⁴ populī Rōmānī inscripta⁵ faceret. Arma accipiēns⁶ Aenēās mox pūgnāre incēpit quamquam historiam⁴ populī Rōmānī intellegere nōn potuit. Inimicus erat impius Turnus, vir dūrus, pūgnāre ardēns. Mediā nocte⁷ dea ad Turnum vēnit ut ei⁸ imperāret ut cum Aenēā pūgnāret. Ruēns ad bellum Turnus sociōs Aenēae invāsīt et amicum Aenēae interfēcīt. Populus socius bellum gestūrus deōs auxilium⁹ ōrāvīt. “Auxilium⁹ cāris ā dis¹⁰ dandum est,” sēnsit; “si dī auxilium⁹ dabunt, dōna multa āris deōrum dare dēbēbimus.” Cum Aenēā socii magnō cum studiō cōgnāvērunt. Turnō parsūrus,¹¹ Aenēās tamen eum¹² interfēcīt. Turnus interficiendus erat ut pius impium superāns oppidum conderet.²

¹ *antequam* (conj.), ‘before’ ² *condō, -ere, condidī, conditus*, ‘found’ ³ *māter* (nom.), *mātrem* (acc.), ‘mother’ ⁴ *historia, -ae, F.*, ‘history’ ⁵ *inscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scripsus*, ‘inscribe’ ⁶ *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus*, ‘receive’ ⁷ *nocte* (abl.), ‘in the night’
⁸ *eī* (dat.), ‘him’ ⁹ *auxilium, -ī, N.*, ‘aid’ ¹⁰ The ablative of agent with a passive periphrastic is regularly used instead of the dative of agent in order to avoid confusion when another dative is closely associated with the verb. ¹¹ *parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus*, ‘spare’ + dat.) ¹² *eum* (acc.), ‘him’

UNIT SIX

A. Nouns of the Third Declension

Nouns of the third declension occur very frequently in Latin and are distinguished by the genitive singular ending **-is**. This declension admits of all three genders, and while there are several minor variations within the system, all nouns in this declension can be dealt with easily according to the observations which follow.

In order to decline a noun of the third declension, determine the *stem* by dropping the genitive singular ending and then add the specified endings for this declension.

THIRD DECLENSION ENDINGS

MASCULINE

&

FEMININE

NEUTER

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Nom.	---	-ēs		---	-a (-ia)
Gen.	-is	-um (-ium)		-is	-um (-ium)
Dat.	-ī	-ibus		-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs (-īs)		---	-a (-ia)
Abl.	-e	-ibus		-e (-ī)	-ibus

OBSERVATIONS:

1. As is the case with all neuter nouns in Latin, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are identical.
2. There is no specific nominative singular ending for this declension. It must be learned for each noun as a vocabulary item.
3. The alternate endings in parentheses above belong to a class of nouns called *i-stems*. In this book, nouns which are *i-stems* will be signaled in the vocabulary by the addition of the genitive plural ending **-ium** to the regular principal parts: **māter, mātris, F.**, 'mother'; but **urbs, urbis, -ium, F.**, 'city'. Those who care to learn rules for determining which nouns are *i-stems* may find the notes at the end of this section helpful.

4. Masculine and feminine i-stems frequently have **-īs** as an alternate for **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

It will be easy to decline the following nouns according to the observations above.

rūmor, -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
nox, noctis, -ium, F.	night
sidus, -eris, N.	star, constellation
moenia, -ium, N. (only in pl.)	(city) walls

MODEL FOR MASC.—

FEM. NON-I-STEMS

rūmor	rūmōrēs
rūmōris	rūmōrum
rūmōri	rūmōribus
rūmōrem	rūmōrēs
rūmōre	rūmōribus

MODEL FOR MASC.—

FEM. I-STEMS

nox	noctēs
noctis	noctium
nocti	noctibus
noctem	noctēs (noctis)
nocte	noctibus

NEUTER

NON-I-STEM

sīdus	sīdera
sīderis	sīderum
sīderi	sīderibus
sīdus	sīdera
sīdere	sīderibus

NEUTER

I-STEM

(moene	moenia
moenis	moenium
moeni	moenibus
moene	moenia
moeni)	moenibus

NOTES: RULES FOR DETERMINING WHICH THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ARE I-STEMS
A third declension noun will generally be an i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables:

ignis, ignis, -ium, M. fire

2. the stem of the noun ends in two consonants *except* if the second consonant is an l or r:

nox, noctis, -ium, F. night
mōns, montis, -ium, M. mountain

BUT:

pater, patris, M. father
māter, mātris, F. mother

(even though the first rule applies also)

3. the nominative singular of a neuter noun ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**:

mare, maris, -ium*, N.	sea
animal, animālis, -ium, N.	animal
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium, N.	model

These neuter words end in **-ī** in the ablative singular (instead of **-e**) and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

* Although this form is not found in extant literature, it has been reconstructed here.

B. Infinitives

Although the Latin verb has six infinitives — present active, present passive, perfect active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive — only five are in common use. In addition, the future active and future passive participles combined with an infinitive of the verb **sum** yield the infinitives of the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

1. PRESENT INFINITIVE

a) **ACTIVE**. The present active infinitive is the second principal part of the verb:

optāre	to desire
dūcere	to lead

b) **PASSIVE**. To form the present passive infinitive for the first, second, and fourth conjugations, replace the final **-e** of the active infinitive with **-ī**. For the third conjugation, replace the entire **-ere** with **-ī**:

optārī	to be desired
implērī	to be filled
dūcī	to be led
incipī	to be begun
sentīrī	to be felt

2. PERFECT INFINITIVE

a) **ACTIVE**. The perfect active infinitive is formed for all verbs by adding **-isse** to the stem of the third principal part:

optāvisse	to have desired
implēvisse	to have filled
dūxisse	to have led
incēpisse	to have begun
sēnsisse	to have felt

- b) **PASSIVE.** The perfect passive infinitive is formed with the fourth principal part (perfect passive participle) plus the infinitive of **sum** (**esse**).

optātus, -a, -um esse	to have been desired
implētus, -a, -um esse	to have been filled
ductus, -a, -um esse	to have been led
inceptus, -a, -um esse	to have been begun
sēnsus, -a, -um esse	to have been felt

3. FUTURE INFINITIVE

- a) **ACTIVE.** The future active participle plus **esse** are the ingredients for the future active infinitive.

optātūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to desire
implētūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to fill
ductūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to lead
inceptūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to begin
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to feel

- b) **PASSIVE.** The future passive infinitive occurs so rarely in Latin that its discussion has been omitted from this text.

4. PERIPHRASTIC INFINITIVES

The periphrastic conjugations also have infinitives formed by compounding the present or perfect infinitives of the verb **sum** with the future active and future passive participles. In the active periphrastic conjugation, this infinitive (with **esse**) merges with, and is in fact one and the same thing as, the future active infinitive. The infinitive of the passive periphrastic carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety, just as the finite passive periphrastic forms do.

- a) **ACTIVE.**

optātūrus esse	to be going to desire
optātūrus fuisse	to have been going to desire

- b) **PASSIVE.**

optandus esse	to have to be desired
optandus fuisse	to have had to be desired

C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive

The statement “Dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day)” is a *direct* statement.

Aurōra terrās novō lūmine spargit.

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, we are able to

express statements *indirectly*; that is, the essence of the original speaker's ideas is reported by someone else, although not necessarily in his exact words.

He says that dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day).

In English an indirect statement is generally introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, for which there is no equivalent in classical Latin. Instead, a construction with the subject in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive is used.

In order to change a statement from direct to indirect, take the subject of the direct one and make it accusative; take the finite verb and change it to an infinitive. The rest of the sentence remains unchanged.

Dicit **aurōram** terrās novō He says *dawn to sprinkle* the lands with a new
lūmine **spargere**. light (day); He says *that dawn is sprinkling*
the lands with a new light (day).

The tense of the infinitive in this construction is relative to that of the main verb (much like the tense of participles discussed in the previous unit). The *present* infinitive expresses an action which is or was going on at the *same time* as that of the main verb; the *perfect* infinitive refers to an action which occurred *prior* to that of the main verb; and the *future* infinitive signals one which will occur *subsequent* to that of the main verb.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō He says (i.e., now) that dawn is sprinkling the
lūmine spargere. lands with new light (i.e., now).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn was
lūmine spargere. sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e.,
yesterday).
Dicet aurōram terrās novō He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn is
lūmine spargere. sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e.,
tomorrow)

PERFECT INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō He says (i.e., now) that dawn has sprinkled
lūmine sparsisse. (sprinkled) the lands with new light (i.e.,
yesterday).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn had
lūmine sparsisse. sprinkled the lands with new light (i.e., the
day before yesterday).
Dicet aurōram terrās novō He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn has
lūmine sparsisse. sprinkled (sprinkled) the lands with new
light (i.e., today).

FUTURE INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram* esse.	He says (i.e., now) that dawn will sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., tomorrow).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram esse.	He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn would sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., today).
Dicet aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram esse.	He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn will sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., the day after tomorrow).

* Since the future active, perfect passive, and the periphrastic infinitives are composed of a participle and the infinitive of *sum*, the participle is, in effect, a predicate adjective and must agree with its noun (the subject of the indirect statement) in gender, number, and case.

D. The Irregular Noun *vis*

In the singular this noun regularly means 'force' or 'power'. In the plural it means 'strength'.

<i>vis</i>	<i>virēs</i>
--	<i>virium</i>
--	<i>viribus</i>
<i>vim</i>	<i>virēs (viris)</i>
<i>vi</i>	<i>viribus</i>

E. Ablative of Separation

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions *ā* (*ab*), 'away from', *ē* (*ex*), 'from, out of', or *dē*, 'from, down from', are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

Hominēs incolās insulae <i>servitūte</i> liberāvērunt.	The men freed the inhabitants of the island <i>from slavery</i> .
Oedipus, quod liber (ē) <i>cūrā</i> nōn erat, sē <i>oculis</i> privāvit.	Oedipus, because he was not free <i>from</i> <i>care</i> , deprived himself of (<i>his</i>) eyes.

The word *careō*, -*ēre*, 'lack, be wanting', takes an ablative of separation:

Pecūniā careō. I lack *money*.

Allied with this construction are the following:

1. ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

Aenēās (ē) *deā* nātus est. Aeneas is the son *from a goddess*.

2. ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

In order to express place from which, the ablative is used with the preposi-

tions **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), or **dē**. But with names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

Ab Italiā vēnit. He came *from Italy*.

BUT:

Rōmā vēnit. He came *from Rome*.

F. Accusative of Place To Which

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

Ad Italiam vēnit. He came *to Italy*.

Ad urbem vēnit. He came *to the city*.

BUT:

Rōmam vēnit. He came *to Rome*.

Domum vēnit. He came *home*.

G. The Locative Case (*locus*, -i, M., 'place')

The names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus** and **rūs** require a special case to express *place in which* or *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. This case is called the *locative*.

For nouns of the first and second declensions, the locative singular is identical to the genitive singular. In the plural for these two declensions, it is identical in form to the ablative plural.

For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in either -e or -ī in the singular, in -ibus in the plural.

<i>Rōmae</i>	at Rome	(Rōma, -ae, F.)
<i>Athēnīs</i>	at Athens	(Athēnae, -ārum, F.)
<i>domī</i>	at home	(domus, -ī, F.)
<i>Carthāgine</i>	at Carthage	(Carthāgō, -inis, F.)
	or <i>Carthāginī</i>	
<i>rūrī</i>	in the country	(rūs, rūris, N.)

UNIT SIX — VOCABULARY

animal, -ālis, -ium, N.

animal

Athēnae, -ārum, F. (pl.)

Athens

atque or ac (conj.)	and
aurōra , -ae, F.	dawn
careō , -ēre, -uī, -itus	lack, be without (+ abl.)
corpus , corporis, N.	body
dīcō , -ere, dīxī, dictus	say, tell, speak
diū (adv.)	for a long time
domus , -ī, F.	house, home
exemplar , -āris, -ium, N.	copy, model, example
exemplum , -ī, N.	example
frāter , frātris, M.	brother
homō , hominis, M.	human being, man
ignis , ignis, -ium, M. (abl. sing. igne or ignī)	fire
Italia , -ae, F.	Italy
Iūnō , Iūnōnis, F.	Juno (sister and wife of Jupiter)
Iuppiter , Iovis, M.	Jupiter (god of the sky)
liberō (1)	free
lūmen , lūminis, N.	light
mare , maris, -ium, N.	sea
māter , mātris, F.	mother
mēns , mentis, -ium, F.	mind, disposition, intellect
mīles , mīlitis, M.	soldier
moenia , moenium, N. (pl.)	(city) walls
mōns , montis, -ium, M.	mountain
nōn solum . . . sed etiam	not only . . . but also
nox , noctis, -ium, F.	night
oppūgnō (1)	attack, fight against
pater , patris, M.	father
regō , -ere, rēxī, rēctus	rule
rēx , rēgis, M.	king
Rōma , -ae, F.	Rome
rūmor , -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
rūs , rūris, N.	country (as opposed to city)
sānus , -a, -um	sound, healthy, sane
sciō , -īre, -īvī, -ītus	know
servitūs , servitūtis, F.	slavery
sīdus , sīderis, N.	constellation, star; heaven
soror , -ōris, F.	sister
spargō , -ere, sparsī, sparsus	scatter, sprinkle, distribute
timor , timōris, M.	fear, dread
urbs , urbis, -ium, F.	city
vigor , -ōris, M.	liveliness, activity, vigor
vīs ; (pl.) virēs , virium, F.	force, power; (pl.) strength

UNIT SIX — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Athēnae, Athēnārum, 'Athens', is a feminine plural word.

The verb **careō, carēre, caruī, caritus**, 'lack, be without', governs the ablative case: **Lūmine carēmus**, 'We are without light'. The mark ^, a caret, shows that something is lacking.

Dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, 'say, tell, speak', often governs an object and an indirect object. Verbs of giving, telling, and showing take an indirect object. **Rūmōrem auditum frātrī dicam**, 'I shall tell my brother a rumor that I've heard'.

The word **domus** is sometimes considered a second declension noun and sometimes a fourth declension noun. In this book it is presented in Unit Six as second declension, and again in Unit Eight as second or fourth. Note that it is a feminine word even though it has the same endings as a masculine noun in the second declension.

Exemplar, exemplāris, N., and **exemplum, exemplī, N.**, may be used interchangeably. The abbreviation *e.g.*, **exempli grātiā** (*grātiā*, with preceding genitive, 'for the sake of'), means 'for the sake of an example'.

Moenia, moenium is a neuter plural word of the third declension; these are protective (city) walls as opposed to the walls of a house.

Nōn solum . . . sed etiam means 'not only . . . but also': **Nōn solum sorōre sed etiam frātre careō**, 'I am without not only a sister but also a brother'.

Notice that **māter, mātris, F.**, 'mother', **pater, patris, M.**, 'father', and **frāter, frātris, M.**, 'brother', are not i-stems and that **pater** has a short -a-.

Regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, 'rule', lengthens its -e- in the perfect tenses. **Rēx, rēgis, M.**, 'king', and **rēgnum, rēgnī, N.**, 'kingdom', are connected with this verb.

The ending **-tūs, -tūtis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns that indicates a quality or state of being. **Servus** is 'slave' and so **servitūs, servitūtis, F.**, is the 'state of being a slave', that is, 'slavery'.

Students often have difficulty with the irregular noun **vīs**. In the singular, which lacks a genitive and dative form, the meaning is 'force, power' and in the plural, it means 'strength'. There is no reason to confuse it with **vir**, 'man', which has a short -i- and belongs to the second declension, since **vīs** has a long -ī- and is a third declension noun. The accusative plural of 'men' is **virōs**, of 'strength', **virēs** or **virīs**. The dative and ablative plural of 'men' is **virīs**, of 'strength', **viribus**.

UNIT SIX — DRILL

I.

Supply forms of the adjective **bonus, -a, -um** to modify the following nouns.

miles, militis, M.	soldier
soror, sorōris, F.	sister
corpus, corporis, N.	body
mēns, mentis, -ium, F.	mind
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.	example, model

1. miles	11. militi	21. milite	31. militum
2. soror	12. sorōri	22. sorōre	32. sorōrum
3. corpus	13. corpori	23. corpore	33. corporum
4. mēns	14. menti	24. mente	34. mentium
5. exemplar	15. exemplāri	25. exemplāri	35. exemplārium
6. militis	16. militem	26. militēs	36. militibus
7. sorōris	17. sorōrem	27. sorōrēs	37. sorōribus
8. corporis	18. corpus	28. corpora	38. corporibus
9. mentis	19. mentem	29. mentēs	39. mentibus
10. exemplāris	20. exemplar	30. exemplāria	40. exemplāribus

II.

A. Rewrite these sentences in indirect statement after **sentit**, 'he feels':

1. Puella incolās dē periculō monet (monēbit, monuit).
2. Fēminae sententiās semper mūtānt (mūtābunt, mūtāvērunt).
3. Tēcta in mediō oppidō flammis dēlentur (dēlēta sunt).
4. Socii ē terrā discēdere nōn possunt (potuērunt).
5. Amicus vītam sine culpā agit (aget, ēgit).
6. Vīta bona ab amīcō agitur (ācta est).
7. Honesti in periculō nōn pōnendī sunt (pōnendī erant).
8. Litterae ad magistrum mittuntur (mittēbantur).
9. Nōtī dē malis cōgitant (cōgitābunt, cōgitābant).
10. Oppidum ab inimicis trāditur (trāditum est).
11. Amīcō est (erat, erit) multa pecūnia.
12. Sine cūrā rēgina vīvere nōn potest (potuit).

B. Translate the indirect statements you wrote above, first after **sentit**, 'he feels', then after **sēnsit**, 'he felt'.

III.

Omit the initial verbs of the head and rewrite the indirect statements as direct ones:

1. Vidimus fāmam rēginae esse (fuisse, futūram esse) magnam.
2. Cognōverātis incolās rēginae multam pecūniam dēbere (dēbuisse).
3. Respondit bellum cum diligentīā pūgnātum esse (pūgnāri).

4. Intellegō nautās villam perdidisse (perdere, perditūrōs esse).
5. Intellēxī villam ā nautis perditam esse (perdī).
6. Sentiunt honestōs malum ē terrā pellere nōn posse (potuisse).

IV.

Translate the following sentences which contain “place” constructions or ablatives of separation or source:

1. Multōs familiā honestā nātōs ab oppidō ad insulam mīsimus. [**familia**, -ae, F., ‘family’]
2. Multōs Syrācūsīs Tarentum mīsimus. [**Syrācūsae**, -ārum, F. pl., ‘Syracuse’, a city in Sicily; **Tarentum**, -ī, N., ‘Tarentum’, a town in Southern Italy]
3. Ruīnae Syrācūsīs vidērī potuērunt, sed neque Tarentī neque in patriā.
4. **Ē** viā in cellam ambulāvērunt.
5. **Liberī** invidiā vitam agimus.
6. Malōs magnā vi dē saxō altō iactāverant. [**iactō** (1), ‘throw, hurl’]

UNIT SIX — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTION A)

1. Rēx militibus imperāvit nē discēderent.
2. Multa lūmina urbis ab hominibus captis visa sunt.
3. Flammae ignium multōrum nōn solum in monte sed etiam in mari visae sunt.
4. Multa animālia sorōribus frātribusque mōnstrāvimus.
5. Patri erat magnus timor maris.
6. Si mentēs militum timōre implēbuntur, hominēsne pūgnāre poterunt?
7. Liberī servitūtem timent et cum vigōre pūgnābunt nē servi sint.
8. Rūmōrēsne novōs dē moenibus igni dēlētis audivistis?
9. Militēs domōs mātrum patrumque vidēre optāvērunt.
10. a) Corpora multōrum hominum vigōre carent.
b) Corpora multōrum animālium valida sunt.

UNIT SIX — EXERCISES

I.

1. Populus ruēns in viam frātrēs cum frātribus pūgnāre in bellō clāmābat.
2. Poēta dicit mentem sānam in corpore sānō optandam esse.
3. Rūmor est urbem ā militibus oppūgnātam vi dēlētam esse.

4. Pater mäterque audivērunt filiōs ante moenia Rōmae igni et ferrō pūgnāvisse.
5. Populus antiquus dicēbat Iovem esse patrem deōrum atque hominum rēgem et terram esse mātrem hominum animāliumque.
6. Dicēbātur Iūnō esse soror Iovis.
7. Vidēmus novam aurōram lūmine mare, terram, et caelum spargere.
8. Postquam antiquum exemplar positum est, poētae Rōmāni nova scribere incēpērunt.
9. Militēs in mediā urbe nōn mentis solum vigōre sed etiam corporis viribus bellum gessērunt.
10. Noctem mox tēctūram esse terrās umbris intellegimus.
11. Noctem ruere dē montibus mox vidēre poterimus.
12. Erant novī rūmōrēs corpora militum esse sāna et militēs validis viribus pūgnāre.
13. Hominēs urbium semper pūgnābant ut urbēs essent liberae.
14. Ā frātre dictum est animālia ā marī in terram vi ducta esse.
15. Postquam urbs oppūgnāta est, mātři imperāvimus nē timēret quod sēnsimus sorōrem frātreque pecūniā ac cibum incolis datūrōs esse nē in periculō essent.
16. Respondistī nova pericula validis hominibus oppidī mōnstrāta esse.
17. Postquam urbs superāta est, multus miles patrem mātremque vidēre ardēbat.
18. Rēx populō dixit terram, montēs, mare animāliaque esse cāra Iovi Iūnōnique.
19. Quamquam sīdera clāra in caelō vidēri nōn poterant, nautae vēla dedērunt ut rēx esset laetus.
20. Bonum est scīre multum populum ā piō homine, ē deā nātō, ē patriā ad Italiā dūci potuisse.
21. Ut urbem timōre liberēmus, imperābimus militibus ut discēdant.
22. Sī insulam servitūte liberēmus, timor incolārum removeātur.
23. Sī vēra scivissēmus, dixissēmus incolās in multis insulis nōn solum aquā sed etiam pecūniā carēre.
24. Rōmae diū fuerant rēgēs, numquam Athēnis.
25. Rūri atque in urbe incolis erant multa pericula.
26. Rēx rēgnum cum vigōre et magnā veniā regit ut novis sit rēgibus exemplum.
27. Urbs capta dēlenda est (dēlenda erat, dēlenda fuit); scimus urbem captam dēlendā esse (dēlendā fuisse).
28. Aureae urnae servis pōnendae erant in mēnsis ut amicis dominī ad villam ventūris mōnstrārent deōs multa bona piis dōnāre.
29. Nox sī terrās mox umbris tegat, nōn solum moenia inimicōrum sine periculō oppūgnāre possimus sed etiam amicōs servitūte liberēmus.
30. Hominēs honesti in Italiā magnis cum viribus semper pūgnātūri erant ut urbēs cūrā essent liberae et fēminae periculō et timōre carērent.

31. Domum sine morā venient.
32. Incolae sentiunt rēgem mala ex urbe pellere dēbere.

II.

1. We understood that the city, after it had been attacked, was being destroyed by the strength of the soldiers.
2. Did you hear the rumors that the soldiers were rushing into the cities?
3. We understand that a model of the city walls has been shown to the men (who are) about to attack the city with fire and sword.
4. They told the father of the brothers that the sons had been chosen in order that they might fight around the city walls.
5. We shall say that poets should write books not only about Jupiter and Juno but also about the sea and about the animals of the mountains.
6. We know that a war cannot be waged forcefully on the sea by the soldiers without great danger.

III. Reading

Cicero warns the Roman senators about men plotting against the state (*In Catilinam** I.2.4–5, liberally adapted):

Optō, patrēs cōscriptī,¹ mē² esse pium, optō in tantis³ urbi periculis mē² nōn sine cūrā vidēri, sed nunc mē² inertiae⁴ nēquitiaeque⁵ dāmnō. Castra⁶ sunt in Italiā contrā⁷ populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae⁸ montibus conlocāta.⁹ crēscit¹⁰ semper inimicōrum numerus;¹¹ castrōrum⁶ autem imperātōrem¹² ducemque¹³ inimicōrum intrā¹⁴ moenia atque adeō¹⁵ in patrum cōscriptōrum¹ numerō¹¹ vidētis, et intellegere dēbētis illōs¹⁶ dē periculō et magnis malis urbi nostrae¹⁷ cōgitāre.

* *Catīlina*, -ae, M., 'Catiline', the name of the leader of a conspiracy that Cicero was eager to put down

¹ cōscribō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'. (The "enrolled fathers" were the senators.) ² mē (acc.), 'me, myself' ³ tantus, -a, -um, 'so much, so great' ⁴ inertia, -ae, F., 'laziness' ⁵ nēquitia, -ae, F., 'worthlessness' ⁶ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ⁷ contrā (prep. + acc.), 'against' ⁸ Etrūria, -ae, F., 'Etruria', a district north of Rome ⁹ conlocō (1), 'locate' ¹⁰ crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, 'grow' ¹¹ numerus, -ī, M., 'number' ¹² imperātōr, -ōris, M., 'commander' ¹³ dux, ducis, M., 'leader' ¹⁴ intrā (prep. + acc.), 'within' ¹⁵ adeō (adv.), 'even' ¹⁶ illōs (acc. pl.), 'those (men)' ¹⁷ noster, nostra, nostrum, 'our'

UNIT SEVEN

A. Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative (*dēmōnstrō* (1), 'point out') adjectives *point out* the word with which they agree. There are three demonstrative adjectives of extreme importance:

- (1) **hic, haec, hoc**, 'this'
- (2) **ille, illa, illud**, 'that'
- (3) **is, ea, id**, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

hic, haec, hoc 'this'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, 'that'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

is, ea, id, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Hunc (illum, eum) virum vidēs. You see *this (that, this or that)* man.
Cum hōc (illō, eō) virō ambulās. You walk with *this (that, this or that)* man.
Vidēsne hoc (illud, id) dōnum? Do you see *this (that, this or that)* gift?

The connotative distinctions between **hic**, **ille**, and **is** can be gauged from the following:

Hunc librum optās? Do you want this book (i.e., here, as opposed to that book there)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Illum librum optās? Do you want that book (i.e., there, as opposed to this book here)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Eum librum optās? Do you want this (that) book (i.e., the one just referred to, e.g.)? [Unemphatic Demonstrative]

As is the case with other adjectives, **hic**, **ille**, and **is** are often found used substantively:

Hunc (illum, eum) vidēs. You see *this (that, this or that)* man.
Cum hōc (illō, eō) ambulās. You walk with *this (that, this or that)* man.
Vidēsne hoc (illud, id)? Do you see *this (that, this or that)* thing?

In English it is often more convenient to translate **is**, **ea**, **id** when used substantively as a pronoun or, as in the last two examples below, as a possessive adjective:

Eum vidēs. You see *this (that)* man; you see *him*.
Cum eō ambulās. You walk with *this (that)* man; you walk with *him*.
Vidēsne id? Do you see *this (that)* thing? Do you see *it*?
Eius librum habeō. I have the book *of this (that)* man (woman); I have the book *of him (her)*; I have *his (her)* book.
Patrem eārum vidēmus. We see the father *of these (those)* women; we see the father *of them*; we see *their* father.

B. Personal Pronouns

Since the endings of a Latin verb already indicate the subject of that verb, personal pronouns are not required. However, pronouns in the nominative case are sometimes used for *emphasis*.

Clāmō. I shout.
Ego clāmō. It is *I* who shout; *I* am the one who shouts.

The other cases of the personal pronouns are used as they are in English, i.e., as substitutes for nouns.

Librum mihi dat. He gives the book *to me*.
Mē videt. He sees *me*.

Mēcum ambulās. You are walking with *me*. (Note that, with personal pronouns, the **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.)

1. FIRST PERSON

ego	I	nōs	we
meī	of me	nostrum } nostrī }	of us
mihi	to/for me	nōbīs	to/for us
mē	me	nōs	us
mē	from/with/in/by me	nōbīs	from/with/in/by us

2. SECOND PERSON

tū	you	vōs	you
tui	of you	vestrum } vestri }	of you
tibi	to/for you	vōbīs	to/for you
tē	you	vōs	you
tē	from/with/in/by you	vōbīs	from/with/in/by you

NOTE: **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as *partitive* genitives (page 154):

multi **nostrum** many *of us* (“many” is the part, “us” is the whole)

Nostrī and **vestrī** are used as *objective* genitives; that is, they function as the *object* of the word on which they depend (pages 178–9):

Odium **nostrī** est magnum. The hatred *of (for) us* is great.
(**nostrī** is the *object* or recipient of the hatred)

3. THIRD PERSON

There is no third person personal pronoun as such. As indicated in section A above, the forms of **is**, **ea**, **id** are frequently used without a noun as a substitute for the third person pronoun. However, a third person *reflexive* pronoun does occur.

4. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A *reflexive* (**reflectō**, **-ere**, **-flexī**, **-flectus**, ‘bend back, reflect’) pronoun generally refers to or *reflects* the subject of its own clause; therefore, it cannot have a nominative case.

In the first and second persons, there is no separate reflexive pronoun; one uses simply the correct case of **ego** or **tū**, and whether the usage is reflexive or not can be determined from the relationship of the pronoun to the subject: If they are the same person or thing, then the pronoun is reflexive; if they are different, then the pronoun is not reflexive.

Mē videō.	I see <i>myself</i> .	(Reflexive)
Mē videt.	He sees <i>me</i> .	(Not Reflexive)
Tē vidēs.	You see <i>yourself</i> .	(Reflexive)
Tē videt.	He sees <i>you</i> .	(Not Reflexive)

In the third person, however, a separate form is used.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Nom.	--
Gen.	sui
Dat.	sibi
Acc.	sē
Abl.	sē

Sē videt.	He (she, it) sees <i>himself</i> (<i>herself, itself</i>).
Sē vident.	They see <i>themselves</i> .

Note the following examples, which illustrate reflexive and nonreflexive usage:

Eum videt.	He (person A) sees <i>him</i> (person B).
Sē videt.	He sees <i>himself</i> .
Eōs videt.	He sees <i>them</i> .
Sē vident.	They see <i>themselves</i> .
Mē videt.	He sees <i>me</i> .
Mē videō.	I see <i>myself</i> .

C. Possessive Adjectives

The possessive adjectives for the first person are **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'my', and **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, 'our'. For the second person, they are **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'your', and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, 'your'. Since they are adjectives, they must agree with the thing possessed in gender, number, and case.

Tuum frātre ^m videō.	I see <i>your</i> brother.
Nostram mātre ^m vidēmus.	We see <i>our</i> mother.
Meum imperiū ōdit.	He hates <i>my</i> authority.

As has been seen throughout this text, the possessive adjective need not be expressed in Latin when its sense can be inferred easily from the context. When the adjective is used in Latin, it is strictly emphatic or is used to clarify a point which the context would otherwise leave obscure.

Patrem videō.	I see (my) father.
---------------	--------------------

BUT:

Patrem meum videō.	I see <i>my</i> father. (the adjective is emphatic or elucidative, i.e., as opposed to "your" father, "their" father, etc.)
---------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The possessive adjective for the third person is **suus**, **-a**, **-um** (singular and plural), but this word is used only *reflexively*; that is, the thing possessed belongs to the subject. When reflexive possession is not desired in the third person, a form of **is**, **ea**, **id** in the genitive case is used.

Suum imperium odit. He/she hates *his/her (own)* authority.

Suum imperium odērunt. They hate *their (own)* authority.

BUT:

Eius imperium odit. He/she hates the authority *of him (her/it/this one/that one)*; he/she (person A) hates *his/her/its (person B's or something's)* authority.

Eorum imperium odērunt. They hate the authority *of them (of these/those men)*; they (group A) hate *their (group B's)* authority.

OBSERVATION: The genitive of the personal pronouns is *never* used to show possession. In order to express possession in the first and second persons, the *possessive adjectives* must be used.

D. Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent (**ante** + **cēdō**, 'go before'; thus, 'that which goes before') of that pronoun.

The man *whom* you see is my friend.

The relative pronoun "whom" agrees in gender and number with its antecedent, "man", but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. Consequently in Latin the pronoun is masculine singular because of its antecedent, but accusative because it is the object of the verb "you see".

The forms of the relative pronoun follow:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
who	who	which (that)			
cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
of whom, whose					
cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
to/for whom					
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
whom					
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus
from/with/in/by					
whom					

Note these examples:

Poēta **cuius** amicus erat The poet *of whom* the friend was blind was
caecus puerum audiēbat. listening to the boy; the poet *whose* friend
was blind was listening to the boy.

(**cuius**: masculine singular because of its antecedent **poēta** which is masculine singular; genitive because of its dependence on **amicus** in its own clause)

Fēminās **quae** in viā clāmant ōdimus. We hate the women who shout in
the street.

(**quae**: feminine plural because of its antecedent **fēminās** which is feminine plural; nominative because it is the subject of the verb **clāmant**)

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AT THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE (CONNECTING RELATIVE)

The relative pronoun is frequently used in Latin to begin a sentence where the English would use a demonstrative or a personal pronoun. Since the antecedent of the relative pronoun is a word or idea in the previous sentence, this usage makes for greater cohesion between sentences and thoughts.

Filius dixit urbem in periculō magnō My son said that the city was in great
esse. **Quae** postquam audivi, vērō danger. After I heard *which things*
timēbam. (*these things*), I was truly afraid.

Miles mē monuerat ut ex oppidō The soldier had warned me that I
discēderem. **Quem** postquam mē depart from the town. After I
interfectūrum esse sēnsi, mox perceived that *whom (he)* was
discessi. going to kill me, I soon (i.e.,
thereupon) departed

E. Interrogative Adjective

The interrogative adjective (which? what?) is identical in form to the relative pronoun.

Quem virum vidēs? *Which (what) man do you see?*

Cum **quō** virō ambulās? *With which (what) man are you walking?*

Quod dōnum vidēs? *Which (what) gift do you see?*

F. Interrogative Pronoun

The interrogative pronoun is identical to the interrogative adjective in the *plural*; in the *singular*, the following forms are used:

M. F.	N.
quis	quid
cuius	cuius
cui	cui
quem	quid
quō	quō

Quem vidēs?	<i>Whom</i> do you see?
Quōcum* ambulās?	With <i>whom</i> are you walking?
Quid vidēs?	<i>What</i> do you see?

* Note that with the interrogative pronouns, as with personal pronouns, **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.

IN REVIEW — Note the following comparisons between pronominal and adjectival usage:

Pronoun: Cui taedam dedisti?	<i>To whom (to which one)</i> did you give the torch?
Adjective: Cui fēminae taedam dedisti?	<i>To which (what)</i> woman did you give the torch?
Pronoun: Quis taedam tibi dedit?	<i>Who</i> gave you the torch?
Adjective: Quae fēmina taedam tibi dedit?	<i>Which (what)</i> woman gave you the torch?

G. Ablative of Accompaniment

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

Ad urbem cum amīcō venit.	He comes to the city <i>with (his) friend</i> .
Ad urbem mēcum venit.	He comes to the city <i>with me</i> .

H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

Illō tempore miser erat.	<i>At that time</i> he was unhappy.
Quīnque annīs hoc opus perficiet.	<i>Within five years</i> he will complete this task.

I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question “for how long?”, whether it be of time or distance.

Quīnque annōs miser erat.	<i>For five years</i> he was unhappy.
Quīnque pedēs ad dextram ambulāvit.	He walked <i>five feet</i> to the right.

J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement (subject accusative and infinitive) normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is frequently determined according to the rules of tense sequence (Unit Three, section G) after the verb or phrase of the head which introduces the indirect statement

- Vir quem vidēs pecūniam optat. The man whom you see desires money.
- Dicō virum quem videās pecūniam optāre. I say that the man whom *you see* (*may see*) desires money.
(present subjunctive, primary sequence, simultaneous action after dicō)
- Dixi virum quem vidērēs pecūniam optāre. I said that the man whom *you saw* (*might be seeing*) desired money.
(imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, simultaneous action after dixi)
- Vir quem vidisti (vidēbās) pecūniam optat. The man whom you saw desires money.
- Dicō virum quem videris pecūniam optāre. I say that the man whom *you saw* (*may have seen*) desires money.
(perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, prior action after dicō)
- Dixi virum quem vidissēs pecūniam optāre. I said that the man whom *you had seen* (*might have seen*) desired money.
(pluperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, prior action after dixi)

The development of this usage is logical, for the subjunctive is the mood of *idea*, *intention*, *possibility*, etc., as opposed to *fact*, and the person reporting the statement (in this case, "I") does not claim responsibility that the subject of the relative clause (in this case, "you") *actually* sees the man. The indicative might have been used in this case, but the tone would then be:

- Dicō virum quem vidēs pecūniam optāre. I say that the man whom *you actually see* (and I accept responsibility for this statement) desires money.

UNIT SEVEN — VOCABULARY

amō (1)	love
amor, amōris, M.	love
annus, -ī, M.	year
Asia, -ae, F.	Asia
auctor, -ōris, M.	producer, founder, author

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M. or F.	citizen
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	complete
ego, meī (pron.)	I
fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M.	end, boundary, limit
genus, generis, N.	descent, origin, race, sort
hic, haec, hoc	this, the latter
hōra, -ae, F.	hour, season
hostis, hostis, -ium, M.	enemy, public enemy
ille, illa, illud	that, the former
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	come upon, discover, find
is, ea, id	this, that; he, she, it
locus, -ī, M.	place, spot
meus, -a, -um	my, mine, my own
mors, mortis, -ium, F.	death
noster, nostra, nostrum	our, ours, our own
ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb lacking in the present system; per- fect forms have present meanings)	hate
opus, operis, N.	work
opus est (+ nom. or abl. [instrumental] of thing needed; less frequently + gen.)	there is need of Pecūnia mihi opus est. Money exists for me (as a) need; there is need of money to me; I need money. Opus est mihi pecūniā. The need exists to me by means of money; there is need to me of money; I need money.
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	accomplish, complete, finish
pēs, pedis, M.	foot
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus	be pleasing to, please (+ dat.)
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus	press, press upon, press hard
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus	press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress
quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.)	who, which, that
quī, quae, quod (interrogative adj.)	which, what
quīnque (indeclinable adj.)	five
quis, quid (interrogative pron.)	who, what
salūs, -ūtis, F.	health, safety
salūtem dicere	say hello, greet
spērō (1)	hope (for)
—, suī (reflexive pron.)	himself, herself, itself, themselves

suus, -a, -um	his own, her own, its own, their own
tempus, -oris, N.	time, period, season
tū, tuī (pron.)	you
tuus, -a, -um	your, yours, your own (sing.)
vester, vestra, vestrum	your, yours, your own (pl.)
vōx, vōcis, F.	voice

UNIT SEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Cōnficiō and **perficiō** are both compounds of **faciō** with an intensive prefix and mean ‘do completely, accomplish’. The **-ō-** of **cōnficiō** is long because it precedes **-nf**. A vowel is lengthened before **-ns**, **-nf**, and **-nct**.

Genus, generis, N., not only means ‘descent, origin, race’, but also ‘sort’: **Est homō illius generis**, ‘He is a man of that sort’.

Hic, haec, hoc and **ille, illa, illud** are emphatic words which point out the word they modify: this book as opposed to that one; **hic liber . . . ille**. Since **ille** points to something further away, it can also mean the thing mentioned previously, ‘the former’, as opposed to the last thing said (**hic**, ‘the latter’).

Inveniō is a compound of **veniō**, ‘come’; it means ‘come upon, find’.

Is, ea, id is a weaker word; it does not point out so strongly as **hic** and **ille** and so it can mean either ‘this’ or ‘that’. Of course, when it is used substantively, ‘this man’, ‘this woman’, ‘this thing’ are more easily expressed as ‘he’, ‘she’, ‘it’. The abbreviation *i.e.*, **id est**, means ‘that is’.

Locus, locī, ‘place’, is masculine in the singular, but, most often, neuter in the plural, **loca, locōrum**, ‘places’. **Locī, locōrum**, masculine, when it does occur, usually refers to passages of literature or the points of an argument.

Ōdī is a defective verb. It has only perfect tenses and so the perfect infinitive is given. The perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as imperfect, and the future perfect as future: **ōdī**, ‘I hate’, **ōderam**, ‘I hated’, **ōderō**, ‘I shall hate’.

Opus and **tempus**, like **corpus**, are neuter words whose nominative singular ends in **-us**. **Opus est** is an idiom meaning ‘there is need of’. What is needed is put into the nominative case or the ablative, less frequently the genitive; the person who is in need is in the dative case: **Opus tibi est mēnsa?** or **Opus tibi est mēnsā?** or **Opus tibi est mēnsae?**, ‘Do you need a table?’

Opprimō is a compound of **premo**. Once again, the vowel in the uncompounded verb weakens when the verb is compounded.

Quī, quae, quod can be either the relative pronoun ‘who, which, that’ or the interrogative adjective ‘which, what’. The relative pronoun will have an antecedent; the interrogative adjective will not, but, since it is an adjective, it will

be used with a noun: **Vir quem vidimus nōs ōdit**, 'The man whom we saw hates us'; **Quem librum legis?**, 'What book are you reading?'

Quis, quid is the interrogative pronoun, 'who, what': **Quem vidēs?**, 'Whom do you see?'

Salūs, salūtis, F., means 'health, safety'; the idiom **salūtem dicere** means 'to greet, say hello': **Pater tuus nōbis salūtem dixit**, 'Your father said hello to us'.

Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they occur (for exceptions, see Unit Fourteen, section E) and so there is no nominative case. The same forms are used for the singular and plural and for all three genders. The possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um** refers to something owned by the subject: **Rēgīna nautīs suīs imperāvit ut vēla darent**, 'The queen ordered her sailors that they set sail'.

The pronoun **tū** is 'you', referring to one person; **vōs** is the plural 'you'. The plural is never used as a polite form of 'you' in Latin as is the case in many modern languages. The possessive adjective **tuus, -a, -um** is used to indicate possession by a singular 'you'; **vester, vestra, vestrum**, by the plural 'you': **tuus pater**, 'your (singular 'you') father'; **tui librī**, 'your (singular 'you') books'; **vester fīlius**, 'your (plural 'you') son'; **vestrae sorōrēs**, 'your (plural 'you') sisters'.

Vōx, vōcis, F., 'voice', is associated with **vocō**, 'call'.

UNIT SEVEN — DRILL

I.

Give the gender, number, and case of the pronouns or adjectives in italics in the following sentences. Then, referring to the paradigms in the Unit, translate only those words into Latin.

1. Is *this* your book? Is *it* his?
2. With *whom* were you walking at *that* time? Not with *your* mother, but with *his*.
3. *What* do you think about the voice of *this* man?
4. I hate *those* men, but I love *these*.
5. To *whom* did you give the gifts *which* I sent to you from *that* island?
6. *This* man knew that *he* hated the voice of *that* man.
7. I completed the work, not *you*.
8. *Whose* book is *this* *which* was placed on *your* table?
9. The women *whom* we saw at *that* time were the mothers of *those* boys to *whom* we had given money.
10. (At) *what* time shall we see *them*?
11. *His* friends will love *him* and the woman *whom* he loves.

12. *Whose* right hand has written *that* book about *which* people say many good things?
13. The unhappy man sent gifts neither to *his* sister nor to *his* brother, but *his* friend sent gifts to *his* (i.e., the unhappy man's) mother.
14. The soldier hates *his* country's enemies and *he* desires to conquer *them*.
15. *We* lived in *their* country for five years and *they* did not consider *us* enemies.

II.

Translate the following sentences:

1. Scimus tē domum quae ardeat multōs mēnsēs incoluisse. [mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., 'month']
2. Dixērunt sē per oppida in quibus socii vidēri potuissent trēs noctēs ambulāvisse. [trēs, fem. acc. pl. adj., 'three']

UNIT SEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Hunc locum scimus; illum locum nōn scimus. 2. Hunc scimus; illum nōn scimus. 3. Nōs patrem nostrum vidimus; is nōs nōn vidit. 4. Patrem eius vidit; patrem suum vidit. 5. Mē sciō; tēne scis? 6. Eum scit; sēne scit? 7. Sē scit; sēne sciunt? 8. Hi nōbis salūtem dixērunt. 9. Multī vestrum mortem timent. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. Auctor opus suum cōnfēcit quamquam id odit. 11. Opus suum odērunt. 12. Opus nostrum odimus. 13. Opusne vestrum odistis? 14. Mors nōs premit. 15. Mors nōbis nōn placet. 16. Eis multus amor nostrī est. 17. Mihi opus est vōce magnā. 18. Pēs mātris tuae est magnus: pēs meus est parvus. 19. Vōcem eārum audivērunt. 20. Vōcem suam audivērunt. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

UNIT SEVEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Ad quem misisti librōs quōs noster clārus auctor illō tempore scripsit ut populō tuō placēret?
2. Hunc librum cuius auctor scitur ā vestris civibus amāmus, sed illum librum quī est in mēnsā odimus.

3. Dīcit fēminās quās vīderimus in illō locō esse mātṛēs eōrum puerōrum qui Rōmam ex Asiā vērunt ut sibi laetās vītās petant.
4. Hī ab illā insulā quae est in nostrō mari vērunt, sed illi in hōc locō semper vixerunt.
5. Ego illum librum lēgī, tūne hunc lēgisti?
6. Cui dedisti librum quem magister dixit mihi legendum esse?
7. Quī liber tibi legendus est?
8. Quid (tū) agis? Ego litterās scribō. Ego litterās meis scribō.
9. In quibus terris servitūs vidēri potest?
10. Quibuscum ambulavisti ē villā in viam quae populō implēta est? Cum quibus fēminis? Cum quibus viris? Cum tuis?
11. Filius mei amici vidit vōs, sed nōs neque tē neque tuōs sociōs vidimus.
12. a) Ōdimus eōs quibus patria nōn placet, sed nōbīs est amor honestōrum piōrumque.
b) Dīcimus nōs ōdisse eōs quibus patria nōn placeat.
13. Libri quōs ad nōs misisti ab hominibus qui amant suum opus scripti sunt.
14. Scribisne in tuō librō dē generibus animālium quae scīs?
15. Dixērunt dōna quae petitūri essēmus pulchra futūra esse.
16. Isne est vir quem tua māter vidit?
17. Cui fēminae dōna dedit quae optāverāmus?
18. Ii quī piō genere nātī sunt nōn solum amant patriam quam incolunt sed etiam ōdērunt hostēs qui eam invāsērunt.
19. Hic amat quod ille ōdit.
20. Quis est haec? Quis nostrārum fuit?
21. Dicam servitūtem quae opprimat hōs quōs videritis malam esse.
22. Quī locus est? Ad quem locum vērni et quōcum?
23. “Quis fuit?” “Marcus.” “Quī Marcus?” “Is quī urbem hostibus qui multum tempus genus nostrum oppressissent invādendam esse dixit.”
24. Quae patria est tua?
25. Quem quīnque hōris vidēbō? Tē et tuōs.
26. Ille vir, cui patriae salūs est cāra, pius habētur ā populō qui eum scit, sed nōn sē amat.
27. Quod opus ante tempus perfēcisti? Quod opus eō tempore perfēcisti?
28. Tempore careō ut perficiam opus quod scribō.
29. a) Cīvēs illārum urbium quae habuerunt rēgēs dāmnābātis.
b) Sēnsit cīvēs illārum urbium quae rēgēs habērent dāmnandōs esse.
30. Quīnque hōris vidēbimus amicōs quibuscum vivēbāmus.
31. a) Rēx cuius soror Rōmae vivit bene sē gessit.
b) Scimus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae vivat bene sē gessisse.
c) Scimus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae diū vixerit bene sē gerere.
32. Cuius liber quīnque annōs petitus est?

33. Tibine ea quibus opus est invēnistī? Quod nōn opus est, nōn est cārum.
34. Māter filiō dixit multam salūtem quem multōs annōs nōn viderat.
35. Dixit et sē et suōs amicōs et vōs invidiā populī periculisque bellī premī; sē autem spērāre nec suōs nec vōs miserōs futūrōs esse. “Nisi malō premerēmur, numquam nātūram vītae intellexerēmus.”
36. Tibi imperō ut sciās mortem nōn esse timendam: quae bona si nōn est, finis tamen illa malōrum est.
37. Quīnque annīs bellum cum nostris hostibus gerere poterimus ex quibus spērāmus nōs multam pecūniam et magnum imperium captūrōs esse.
38. Dicit illud opus tibi cōnfectum ā populō lēctum esse.
39. Ut laetī nōs simus, nōbīs amōre opus est.
40. Magnā vōce clāmāvimus multa eius generis inventa esse.
41. Sentis vōcēs eōrum quī clāment ei hominī nōn placēre.
42. Quīnque pedēs ad dextram nōs mōvimus ut verba magistrī audirēmus.
43. Illi vērunt ut quīnque hōrās tēcum agant. Quibuscum in oppidō ambulārēs nisi fessus essēs. [fessus, -a, -um, ‘tired’]
44. Civēs illius oppidī spērābant nōs mox discessūrōs esse. Quī quamquam nōbīs erant amicī, nōs nōn amāvērunt.
45. Rēx dīxit rūmōrēs in urbe audītōs esse pellendōs. Quae (eī) quī audiēbant probābant. [probō (1). ‘approve (of)’]
46. Eō tempore tuus ad nōs vēnit ut salūtem diceret. Cui respondimus “Et nōs tibi salūtem dīcimus!”

II.

Rewrite sentences 11, 13, and 28 in indirect statement after **dicit** and **dīcēbat**. Translate each of the sentences you wrote.

III.

1. What book is this which has been sent to us by our friends (by his friends) with whom we were walking?
2. The man whom you saw at that time is the sailor to whom I gave those gifts.
3. For five years he hoped that he would complete this, his own work, but now he hates it.
4. We said that we would move five feet to the right in order that we might see your king with his queen and their sons.
5. Those wretched people not only hate themselves, but they also say that we hate them.

IV. Readings

- A. The poet Catullus, after renouncing his love for Lesbia, addresses her (Catullus 8.15–19):

... Quae tibi manet¹ vita?
 Quis nunc tē adībit?² Cui vidēberis bella?³
 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dicēris?
 Quem bāsiābis?⁴ Cui labella⁵ mordēbis?⁶

¹ maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, 'remain' ² adībit (3rd person sing. future indicative), 'will approach' ³ bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful' ⁴ bāsiō (1), 'kiss' ⁵ labellum, -ī, N., 'little lip' ⁶ mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus, 'bite'

NOTE: For some observations on the rhythm of this and subsequent selections from verse which will appear in the readings, see *A Note on Quantitative Rhythm*, p. 401.

B. Martial 12.73:

Herēdem¹ tibi mē, Catulle,² dicis.
 Nōn crēdam,³ nisi⁴ lēgerō, Catulle.²

¹ herēs, herēdis, M., 'heir' ² Catullus, -ī, M., a man's name; here, it is in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, Section G) ³ crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, 'believe' ⁴ nisi (for nisi): occasionally, certain metrical necessities cause a long vowel to shorten in verse.

C. Catullus 58:

Caeli,¹ Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
 illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam²
 plūs³ quam⁴ sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,⁵
 nunc in quadriviis⁶ et angiportis⁷
 glūbit⁸ magnanimī⁹ Rēmī¹⁰ nepōtēs.¹¹

¹ Caelius, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ² ūnus, -a, -um, 'alone' ³ plūs (adv.), 'more' ⁴ quam (adv.), 'than' ⁵ omnēs (acc. pl. M.), 'all' ⁶ quadrivium, -ī, N., 'crossroads' ⁷ angiportum, -ī, N., 'alley' ⁸ glūbō, -ere, 'bark, peel, skin' ⁹ magnanimus, -a, -um, 'great-souled' ¹⁰ Rēmus, -ī, M., 'Remus', the brother of Romulus, the founder of Rome ¹¹ nepōs, nepōtis, M., 'descendant'

D. Martial 1.38:

Quem recitās¹ meus est, Ō Fidentine,² libellus:³
 sed male⁴ cum⁵ recitās,¹ incipit esse tuus.

¹ recitō (1), 'recite' ² Fidentīnus, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ³ libellus, -ī, M., 'little book' ⁴ male (adv.), 'badly' ⁵ cum (conj.), 'when'

E. Martial 1.32:

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī,¹ nec possum dicere quārē:²
hoc tantum³ possum dicere, nōn amo tē.

¹ Sabidius, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ² quārē (adv.), 'why' ³ tantum (adv.), 'only'

F. Martial 5.43:

Thāis¹ habet nigrōs,² niveōs³ Laecānia¹ dentēs.⁴
Quae ratiō⁵ est? Ēmptōs⁶ haec habet, illa suōs.

¹ Thāis and Laecānia are names of women in the nominative case. ² niger, nigra, nigrum, 'black' ³ niveus, -a, -um, 'snowy white' ⁴ dēns, dentis, M., 'tooth' ⁵ ratiō, -ōnis, F., 'reason' ⁶ emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, 'buy'

G. Martial 12.80:

Nē laudet¹ dignōs,² laudat¹ Callistratus³ omnēs.⁴
Cui malus est nēmō,⁵ quis bonus esse potest?

¹ laudō (1), 'praise' ² dignus, -a, -um, 'worthy' ³ Callistratus, -ī, M., a man's name
⁴ omnēs (acc. pl. M.), 'all' (i.e., 'everyone') ⁵ nēmō (nom. sing.), 'no one'

H. Martial 7.3:

Cūr¹ nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne,² libellōs?³
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne,² tuōs.

¹ cūr (adv.), 'why' ² Pontiliānus, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ³ libellus, -ī, M., 'little book'

I. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Nunc illōs quī in urbe remānsērunt¹ atque adeō² quī contrā³ urbis salūtem
omniumque⁴ vestrum in urbe ā Catilinā relictī sunt,⁵ quamquam sunt
hostēs, tamen, quia⁶ nātī sunt⁷ civēs, monitōs etiam atque etiam⁸ volō.⁹

¹ remaneō, -ēre, remānsī, remānsus, 'remain' ² adeō (adv.), 'thus far' ³ contrā
(prep. + acc.), 'against' ⁴ omnium (gen. pl.), 'all' ⁵ relinquo, -ere, reliquī, relictus,
'leave behind' ⁶ quia (conj.), 'because' ⁷ nātī sunt, 'they were born' ⁸ etiam atque
etiam, 'again and again' ⁹ volō, velle, volui, --, 'want'

UNIT EIGHT

A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles

There are two types of adjectives in Latin:

1. those which have the endings of the first and second declensions;
2. those which have the endings of the third declension.

First-second declension adjectives have already been learned. Most third declension adjectives are declined largely like i-stem nouns of the third declension. The important features are:

ablative singular: **-ī**

genitive plural: **-ium**

accusative plural (M. and F.): **-īs** as well as **-ēs**

nominative and accusative plural (N.): **-ia**

Adjectives of the first and second declension have three terminations; that is, there is a separate nominative singular form for each of the three genders (**bonus**, **-a**, **-um**). Adjectives of the third declension can have either three, two, or one termination. These varieties are illustrated below.

1. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of three terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative: **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, 'sharp'.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs(-īs)	ācrēs(-īs)	ācria
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

The stem for such adjectives will be found by dropping the ending from the feminine singular nominative form.

2. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of two terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine and neuter nominative: **omnis, omne**, 'every, all'.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus
omnem	omne	omnēs(-is)	omnia
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus

3. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

Adjectives of one termination are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine-neuter nominative and the genitive singular: **ingēns, ingentis**, 'huge'.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.
ingēns	ingentēs, ingentia (neut.)
ingentis	ingentium
ingenti	ingentibus
ingentem, ingēns (neut.)	ingentēs(-is), ingentia (neut.)
ingenti	ingentibus

The genitive singular for adjectives of one termination is given so that the stem on which the declension is built may be known.

4. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

Present participles are declined like third declension adjectives of one termination.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.
optāns	optantēs, optantia (neut.)
optantis	optantium
optanti	optantibus
optantem, optāns (neut.)	optantēs(-is), optantia (neut.)
optanti(-e)	optantibus

NOTE: For the moment, the following distinction between the **-ī** and **-e** endings of the ablative singular should be remembered:

- ī generally occurs when the participle is used as an attributive adjective
- e generally occurs when the participle is used as a noun

B. Fourth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending for the fourth declension is **-ūs**. While there are three genders of nouns in this declension, the neuter is rare.

frūctus, -ūs, M., 'enjoyment'

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	frūctus	frūctūs
Gen.	frūctūs	frūctuum
Dat.	frūctui	frūctibus
Acc.	frūctum	frūctūs
Abl.	frūctū	frūctibus

Most nouns ending in **-us** in this declension are *masculine*; the others are feminine. Neuter nouns differ from this paradigm in these places:

1. the nominative and accusative singular end in **-ū**
2. the dative singular ends in **-ū**
3. the nominative and accusative plural end in **-ua**

C. Fifth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending is **-eī**, but when the stem ends in a vowel, the ending is **-ēī**. Most nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*.

rēs, reī, F., 'thing'

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	reī	rērum
Dat.	reī	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

NOTE: This completes our discussion of the declensional system in Latin. There are no adjectives which have the endings of the fourth and fifth declensions. Also, the number of nouns which belong to these two declensions is limited; the great bulk of Latin nouns belongs to the third declension.

D. Ablative of Respect (Specification)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the *ablative without a preposition*.

Haec fēmina **speciē** pulchra est.

This woman is beautiful *in (respect to) appearance*.

Meā **sententiā** nihil perficient.

In (respect to) my opinion, they will accomplish nothing.

E. The Irregular Verb *eō, ire, 'go'*

The verb *eō, ire, īi* (or *īvī*), *itus, 'go'*, exhibits some irregularities in the present system. The rest of the verb is regular, except as follows:

1. In the perfect active indicative, the second person singular is *istī* (for *iistī*), and the second person plural is *istis* (for *iistis*).
2. The perfect active infinitive is *isse* (for *iisse*), which provides the stem for the pluperfect active subjunctive. For the full conjugation, see Appendix, pp. 354–355.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

eō *imus*
is *itis*
it *eunt*

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

eam *eāmus*
eās *eātis*
eat *eant*

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

(conjugates according to normal rules for the imperfect, but with no *-iē-*)

ibam *ibāmus*
ibās *ibātis*
ibat *ibant*

FUTURE INDICATIVE

(conjugates like first-second conjugation verbs with *-bi-*)

ibō *ibimus*
ibis *ibitis*
ibit *ibunt*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

iēns, euntis

F. The Present Imperative (*imperō* (1), 'command')

The *imperative* is the mood of *command*. The present imperative is formed for the four conjugations as follows:

1. ACTIVE

For all conjugations, the *singular* imperative active is the present stem:

optā! *desire!* *incipē!* *begin!*
implē! *fill!* *sentī!* *feel!*

For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *plural* imperative is formed by adding *-te* to the present stem; for the third conjugation, the stem vowel is changed from *-e-* to *-i-* before adding *-te*:

optāte! *desire!* *incipite!* *begin!*
implēte! *fill!* *sentite!* *feel!*

EXCEPTIONS: The following third conjugation verbs do not have the *-e* in the singular of the present imperative active: *dīcō*, 'say'; *dūcō*, 'lead'; *faciō*, 'make, do'; *ferō*, 'carry'.

dic!	BUT	dicite!
dūc!		dūcite!
fac!		facite!
fer!		ferte! (note absence of stem vowel -i-)

2. PASSIVE

The singular imperative passive is identical to the second person singular of the present passive indicative with the **-re** ending:

optāre!	be desired!
implēre!	be filled!
incipere!	be begun!
sentire!	be felt!

It will be noted that these forms look like those of the present active infinitive.

The plural imperative passive is identical to the second person plural of the present passive indicative:

optāmini!	be desired!
implēmini!	be filled!
incipimini!	be begun!
sentimini!	be felt!

3. NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Negative imperatives are expressed by the command words **nōli** (singular) and **nōlite** (plural), 'be unwilling', followed by the present infinitive of the verb:

Nōli optāre!	Don't (sing.) desire!
Nōli optāri!	Don't (sing.) be desired!
Nōli implēre!	Don't (sing.) fill!
Nōli implēri!	Don't (sing.) be filled!
Nōli dūcere!	Don't (sing.) lead!
Nōli dūci!	Don't (sing.) be led!
Nōlite dūcere!	Don't (pl.) lead!
Nōlite dūci!	Don't (pl.) be led!

Negative imperatives may also be expressed with the present or perfect subjunctive (with no obvious distinction in meaning) introduced by **nē**:

Nē optēs.	May you not desire; (I hope that you) don't desire.
Nē dūcātis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.
Nē dūxeritis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.

[Another imperative form, the so-called *future imperative*, appears rarely in Latin, generally in formal or legal documents and as a regular imperative

for a few verbs. It has been omitted from the exercises in this book, but it is discussed in the Appendix, p. 362.]

G. The Vocative Case (*vocō* (1), 'call')

The *vocative* is the case of *direct address*. It is generally identical to the nominative, except for second declension nouns ending in **-us** or **-ius**:

Nouns ending in **-us** have a vocative singular in **-e**:

Marcus venit. Marcus is coming.

Marce, veni! *Marcus*, come!

Nouns ending in **-ius** have a vocative singular in **-ī**:

Vergilius carmen scripsit. Vergil wrote a poem.

Vergili, scribe carmen! *Vergil*, write a poem!

The adjective **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'my', has the masculine singular vocative **mī**:

Meus filius venit. My son is coming.

Mī fili, veni! *My son*, come!

All plural vocatives are identical to the nominative plural.

H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction

Two datives frequently appear in close proximity, one denoting the *purpose* (*service*) with reference to which the action or idea expressed in the clause occurs, the other denoting the person or thing with reference to whom or which the action or idea occurs or is relevant.

Filii **mātrī fructuī** sunt.

The sons are (*for the purpose of*) an asset (*with reference*) to their mother; the sons serve *as an asset to* (*for*) their mother; the sons are *an asset to* their mother.

Ad urbem **salūtī mihi** vēnit.

He came to the city *for* (*the purpose of*) a salvation (*with reference*) to (*for*) me; he came to the city *to save me*.

Opiniō mali **periculō** erat **cīvitātī**.

The opinion of the evil (man) was (*for the purpose of*) a danger (*with reference*) to the state.

UNIT EIGHT — VOCABULARY

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**

sharp, keen, fierce

carmen, **-inis**, N.

song, poem, incantation

cīvitās, **cīvitātis**, F.

citizenship; state

diēs, -ēī, M.	day
domus, -ūs and -ī, F.	house, home
dulcis, -e	sweet, pleasant
eō, ire, īī (or īvī), itus	go
fēlix, fēlicis	happy, fortunate
infēlix, -īcis	unhappy, unfortunate
fidēs, -eī, F.	faith, trust, trustworthiness
fortis, -e	strong, brave
frigidus, -a, -um	cold
frūctus, -ūs, M.	enjoyment; fruit; profit
frūctū esse	to be (for [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset to (+ dat.)
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, --	flash, shine
gravis, -e	heavy, severe, important
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus	throw
iactō (1)	throw, scatter, shake; boast
ingēns, ingentis	huge
īra, -ae, F.	wrath, anger
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus	order, command (+ inf., not ut clause of indirect command)
libertās, libertātis, F.	freedom
lītus, litoris, N.	shore, beach
longus, -a, -um	long
longē (adv.)	far off, at a distance, far and wide
lūx, lūcis, F.	light
primā lūce	at the first light, at daybreak
manus, -ūs, F.	hand; band, troop
memor, memoris	mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
metus, -ūs, M.	fear, dread
mōtus, -ūs, M.	motion, movement
nōmen, nōminis, N.	name
nūmen, nūminis, N.	divinity, divine spirit
ob (prep. + acc.)	on account of
quam ob rem	on account of which thing, for what reason, why
omnis, -e	every, all
opiniō, -ōnis, F.	opinion
pectus, -oris, N.	heart, breast
prō (prep. + abl.)	in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for
profugus, -a, -um	fugitive, banished, exiled
pūblicus, -a, -um	public

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesītus	look for, search for, seek, ask
rēs, rei, F.	thing, matter, affair, situation
rēs pūblica	state, republic
saevus, -a, -um	cruel
sēsus, -ūs, M.	sensation, feeling
speciēs, -eī, F.	appearance
spēs, -eī, F.	hope
superus, -a, -um	above, upper
superī, -ōrum, M. pl.	the gods above
vertex, verticis, M.	head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind

UNIT EIGHT — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The suffix **-tās, -tātis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns which indicates a quality or state. **Cīvis** is a citizen; **civītās, civītātis, F.**, is the 'state of being a citizen', thus, 'citizenship, state'. **Liber**, 'free', thus becomes the stem of the abstract noun **libertās, libertātis, F.**, 'the state of being free', i.e., 'freedom'.

Diēs, diēi is one of the two masculine nouns in the fifth declension (the other is a compound of **diēs**). Sometimes it occurs in the singular as feminine, especially when a specific day is meant or when the reference is to time in general: **longa diēs**, 'a long day'.

Domus, 'house, home', has some forms which belong to the second declension and others which belong to the fourth declension; therefore, it is given in this book as both a second and fourth declension noun. The most common forms are:

domus	domūs
domūs	domuum
domui	domibus
domum	domōs
domō	domibus

The locative is **domī**.

The verb **eō, ire, iī or ivī, itus**, 'go', in the perfect active stem may shorten from **-iv-** to **-i-**. There are many compounds of this verb:

adeō	go to, approach
abeō	go away, depart
circumeō	go around, surround
ineō	go in, enter
exeō	go out, depart
	...etc.

Fēlix, fēlicis, 'happy, fortunate', takes the negative prefix **in-** to form the word for 'unhappy, unfortunate', **infēlix, infēlicis**.

Fructus, fructūs, M., ‘enjoyment, fruit, profit’, is used in the dative case with the verb **sum** to form the idiom **fructuī esse**, ‘to be an asset to’: **Nauta rēgīnae fructuī erat**, ‘The sailor was an asset to the queen’.

Iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, ‘throw’, produces the frequentative verb **iactō**. A frequentative verb is usually a first conjugation verb formed from the fourth principal part of another verb and which, originally, had the idea of the action being repeated; in many verbs, this idea became lost in time and no discernible difference in meaning is seen in the two verbs. However, **iactō** does have the additional meaning ‘boast’.

Iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus, ‘order’, is the only verb of ordering in Latin that does not regularly use the construction for an indirect command (**ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive), but rather an infinitive with subject accusative: **Rēgīna nautās vēla dare iussit**, ‘The queen ordered the sailors to set sail’.

The word **manus, manūs** is feminine even though, in addition to the meaning ‘hand’, it means ‘a band (of men)’.

Mōtus, mōtūs, M., is a noun of the fourth declension made from the perfect passive participle of **moveō**; it means ‘motion, movement’. In the same way, **sēnsus, sēnsūs, M.**, ‘sensation, feeling’, is formed from the perfect passive participle of **sentiō**.

The verb **quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus**, ‘seek, ask (for)’, may introduce an indirect command: **Quaesivimus nē domum irēs**, ‘We asked that you not go home’. If one seeks something from someone, either **ā (ab)**, **dē**, or **ex** is used: **Pecūniam ab (dē, ex) amicīs quaesivimus**, ‘We sought money from our friends’.

Rēs, reī, F., is an abstract word with many meanings, e.g., ‘thing, matter, affair, situation, business, lawsuit, event, property’; **rēs pūblica** is the ‘public thing, the public matter’, therefore, ‘state, republic’.

UNIT EIGHT — DRILL

I.

Give a form of the adjectives **magnus, -a, -um**, **gravis, -e**, and **ingēns, ingentis** to go with each of the following noun forms. In some cases, there may be several possible interpretations.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. frāter | 8. sīdera | 15. manūs | 22. periculōrum |
| 2. noctis | 9. rēgum | 16. manuī | 23. dōnō |
| 3. sidus | 10. rūmōribus | 17. diēs | 24. bella |
| 4. mātri | 11. frātrum | 18. fructibus | 25. gladiō |
| 5. sorōrem | 12. servitūtem | 19. spem | 26. nautae |
| 6. homine | 13. corporis | 20. manuum | |
| 7. hominēs | 14. rei | 21. prōvinciae | |

II.

Translate and give the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Hic homō **mente** est validus.
2. Haec fēmina pulchra est **fōrmā**.
3. Ille civis sānus est **corpore**.
4. Illi infēlicēs sunt **salūte**.
5. Superātī militēs **vītā** et **vigōre** sunt miseri.
6. Si Rōmam **eat**, amicis nōn careat.
7. Nisi militēs **urbī salūtī** **ībunt**, magnus erit timor.
8. Si ad insulam **isset** (**īret**), **fēlix** fuisset (essem).
9. Rōmam **it**; Athēnās **eunt**; Eis imperō ut Athēnās **eant**; Ad urbem **ībant**; Eis imperābam **nē** ad urbem **īrent**.
10. Homō ad prōvinciam **iēns** erat intellegēs.
11. Quae est filia hominis ad prōvinciam **euntis**?
12. Dicō hominī ad prōvinciam **euntī** esse filiam **speciē** pulchram.
13. **Discēde** ē prōvinciā!
14. **Oppūgnāte** urbem cum vigōre!
15. **Nōli discēdere** ē prōvinciā! **Nē discesseris** (**discēdās**) ē prōvinciā!
16. **Nōlite oppūgnāre** urbem! **Nē oppūgnāveritis** (**oppūgnētis**) urbem!
17. **Nōli, amice, spectāre** montem; **spectā** campum!
18. **Mi fili, nōli timōre opprimī**! **Nē timōre oppressus sīs** (**opprimāris**)!
19. Morsne erit bonō **fīni vītāe** nostrae?
20. Militēs **timōrī** civibus missi sunt.

UNIT EIGHT — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES
(SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. Haec civitās infēlix metū gravi **dēlētur**.
2. Sēnsūs omnis dē libertāte **mūtāvimus**.
3. Sēnsūs gravēs nōbis **mūtandī** erant.
4. Sēnsūs nostrī dē fidē eōrum **prō libertāte pūgnantium** **mūtandī** sunt.
5. **Ācrēs** sunt opiniōnēs oppressōrum **dē rē publicā**.
6. Quam ob rem infēlicēs domum ire iussī sunt?
7. Nōbis est metus **nūminum omnium**.
8. In hāc civitāte omnibus est magna **spēs libertātis**.
9. Memorēs metuum suōrum, profugi **primā lūce** **discessērunt**.
10. Carmina dulcia dē frūctū vītāe **audivērunt**.
11. Mihi quaerentī opus est mente **ācri** ut haec intellegam.

12. Semper erimus rerum omnium memores de rei publicae spebus.
13. Sidera fulgentia in caelo vidimus.
14. Opus est rei publicae manus fortium.

UNIT EIGHT — EXERCISES

I.

1. Intellegitur pectus reginae dulcis in cuius terram vivamus flammis acris amoris saevi ardere.
2. Rex acer, salutem sociis quaerens, iussit milites fortes civitatem patrum nostrorum gravem ignibus gladiisque superare ut nostra bona sibi fructui essent.
3. a) Lux aurea aurorae sidera quae flammis frigidis nocte fulgent vertice caeli movet.
b) Lux aurea aurorae sidera flammis frigidis nocte fulgentia vertice caeli movet.
4. Nautae oppressi in medio mari ventis acris et frigidis iactati clamaverunt: "O felices di, nostri memores, pellite ventos a nobis. Moveate noxam. Nos sumus frigidi atque miseri. Pone iram vestram et iubete mare magnis undis carere. Haec quaerimus pro omnibus dulcibus quae vobis dedimus."
5. Si pueri felices, Romam discedentes, Athenas eant, carmina pulchra poetae tibi audiant.
6. Milites fortes socios Romanorum gladiis et armis suis oppugnaverunt ut moenia ingentia urbis infelicis caperent.
7. Pater meus mihi dixit Romanorum manum, factis felicem, omnem rem publicam sine mora capturam esse; numinibus enim deorum salutem eorum curae futuram esse.
8. Illud periculum gravi regi superandum est ut cum oppugnantem manum militum sociorum pro libertate pugnet. Rex, i et pugna cum oppugnantem! Noli timere! Si metus tibi erit, nil perficies.
9. Homines fortes quos in nomine regis misisti ut nobis cibum pecuniamque darent militibus nostris captis fructui fuerunt.
10. Omnes milites spem fidemque reginae dederunt cuius oppidum ab invadentibus profugis superatum erat. Ne duxeris, regina, invadentes oppidum delenturos esse. Mea opinione, omnes vi superorum in salute ponemur.
11. Iacite magna saxa in mare ut in litore sine periculo ambulemus.
12. O Marce! Duc ad libertatem patriam tuam! Quaere viros impios et malos! Iace illos in re publica non solum pro civibus liberis sed etiam pro te!
13. Opus est mihi mente acris ut haec intellegam.

14. Arma virumque canō, Trōiae¹ quī primus² ab ōris³
[ad] Italiā, fātō⁴ profugus, Lāvīnaque⁵ vēnit [ad]
litora, multum⁶ ille et [in] terris iactātus et [in] altō
vī super[ōr]um, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram.

(Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.1–4)

¹ Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy' ² primus, -a, -um, 'first' ³ ōra, -ae, F., 'shore'
⁴ fātum, -ī, N., 'fate' ⁵ Lāvīnus, -a, -um, 'Lavinian', refers to Lavinium, a city of
Latium founded by Aeneas ⁶ multum (used adverbially), 'a great deal, a lot'

15. Profugō, libertātis rutae memori et salūtem sorōribus frātribusque quaerenti,
metus opprimentium saevōrum ingēns multōs diēs erat.
16. Quam ob rem domūs illius manūs nōs in periculō pōnentis dēlētae sunt?
Prō salūte rei pūblīcae!
17. Scimus metum rūmōris per oppida euntis magnum esse; Ō rūmōrēs dicentēs,
ite in malam rem!
18. Deō scribe carmina, cuius nūminī placent omnia pia.
19. Nōlite ārās deōrum fulgentēs fiammis ingentibus dēlēre, nisi ab eis opprimi
optētis.
20. Postquam manum militum suam superātam vidit sēque libertātem mox
perditūrum, memor generis amicōrumque et vīrium, in bellum ruit atque
pūgnāns interfectus est.
21. Rōma enim vertex omnium est civitātum. Quam ob rem ex urbe cēdis?
22. Sēnsus eōrum dē rē pūblīcā mihi placeat nisi genus suum et nōmen semper
populō dicentēs iactent.
23. Nisi rēgina infēlix amōre perdita esset, patriam ingentem numquam
trādīdisset et nunc omnēs eam populum bene regentem canerent. Multa enim
amicis salūtem quaerentibus semper fēcerat; libertās salūsque omnium
semper ei cūrae fuerant. Haec autem omnia mala ei ob amōrem sunt.
24. Vir fāmā ingēns glōriāque et vīribus sua iēcit in litus arma dicēns sē
numquam prō patriā pūgnātūrum esse nisi ingentia facta rēgī ā civibus
mōnstrārentur.
25. Ovidius poēta dicit dūrum hominum genus saxis in terram iactātis nātum
esse. [Ovidius, -ī, M., 'Ovid', a poet of the Augustan Age]
26. Helena, speciē pulchra, salūtem petēbat iēns longē sub lūnā per oppidum
ardēns. Incolentibus oppidum neque spēs erat neque frūctus. Dī superī
prīmā lūce post longum tempus domibus in oppidō discessērunt et novās
quaesivērunt. [Helena -ae, F., 'Helen', the name of the Greek woman over
whom the Trojan war was fought]
27. Nē longum sit, civēs, vōbīs omnia dicam ut dē sententiis huius rēgis sciātis.
28. Civēs, intellegite spem omnium in vestrīs manibus positam esse; pōnite
vestram spem in armis et pūgnāte magnā cum fidē et vigōre.
29. Ille est homō sine rē, sine fidē, sine spē.

30. a) Socius nōs iussit corpora lūce carentium ā campō removēre.
 b) Socius nōbis imperāvit ut corpora lūce carentium ā campō removērēmus.
 31. Magister nōbis dē mōtibus siderum in pūblicō dixit.

II.

1. He felt that the enemy was serving as the author of evil for that city which had been oppressed for many years by all sorts of destruction.
(use double dative construction)
2. Soldiers! Destroy the republic! Overcome all free men! Throw liberty, hope, and faith out of the state! Know that all men are your slaves!
3. At daybreak the fugitives, unfortunate in appearance, going hopefully through all the streets of the town, were sought far and wide by the soldiers.
4. Mindful of all dangers, the fugitives went from home, throwing cares from their breasts and seeking Rome as the summit to their hopes.
5. Marcus, my son, don't look at the arms of the invaders which are shining in the light of the moon.

III. Readings

A. Martial 5.57:

Cum¹ voco tē dominum, nōli tibi, Cinna,² placēre:
 saepe³ etiam⁴ servum sic⁵ resalūto⁶ tuum.

¹ cum (conj.), 'when' ² Cinna, -ae, M., a man's name ³ saepe (adv.), 'often'
⁴ etiam (adv.), 'even' ⁵ sic (adv.), 'thus, in this way' ⁶ resalūtō (1), 'greet in return'

B. Martial 5.58:

Crās¹ tē victūrum, crās¹ dicis, Postume,² semper.
 Dic mihi, crās¹ istud,³ Postume,² quando⁴ venit?
 Quam⁵ longē crās¹ istud,³ ubi⁶ est? Aut⁷ unde⁸ petendum?
 Numquid⁹ apud¹⁰ Parthōs¹¹ Armeniōsque¹² latet?¹³
 Iam¹⁴ crās¹ istud³ habet Priamī¹⁵ vel¹⁶ Nestoris¹⁷ annōs.

. . .

Crās¹ vivēs? Hodiē¹⁸ iam¹⁴ vivere, Postume,² sērum¹⁹ est:
 ille sapit²⁰ quisquis,²¹ Postume,² vixit heri.²²

¹ crās (adv.), 'tomorrow' ² Postumus, -ī, M., a man's name ³ istud (nom. sing. N.), 'that (of yours)'; here, modifying crās, which is being used as a noun ⁴ quandō (interrogative adv.), 'when' ⁵ quam (adv.), 'how' ⁶ ubi (adv.), 'where' ⁷ aut (conj.), 'or' ⁸ unde (adv.), 'from which place, from where' ⁹ numquid (interrogative adv.), introduces a question; do not translate ¹⁰ apud (prep. + acc.), 'at, with, among' ¹¹ Parthus, -ī, M., 'a Parthian' ¹² Armenius, -ī, M., 'an Armenian' ¹³ lateō, -ēre, latui, --, 'lie hidden' ¹⁴ iam (adv.), 'now, already' ¹⁵ Priamus, -ī, M., 'Priam', aged king of Troy ¹⁶ vel (conj.), 'or' ¹⁷ Nestor, -oris, M., 'Nestor', an aged Greek ¹⁸ hodiē (adv.), 'today' ¹⁹ sērus, -a, -um, 'late, too late' ²⁰ sapiō, -ere, -īvi, --, 'be wise' ²¹ quisquis (nom. sing. M.), 'whoever' ²² heri (adv.), 'yesterday'

C. A selection from Terence, *Eunuch* 130–135 (very slightly adapted). This explains how she came into the ownership of one of her slave women, Pamphila, supposed to be her sister.

Hoc audite amābō.¹ Māter mea illic² mortua est³
 nūper,⁴ cuius frāter aliquantum⁵ ad⁶ rem⁷ est avidus.⁸
 Is ubi⁹ esse hanc fōrmā¹⁰ videt honestā virginem¹¹
 et fidibus¹² scire,¹³ pretium¹⁴ spērāns¹⁵ illicō¹⁶
 prōdūcit,¹⁷ vendit.¹⁸ Forte¹⁹ fortunā¹⁹ adfuit²⁰
 hic meus amicus: emit²¹ eam dōnō mihi,
 imprūdēns²² hārum rērum ignārusque²³ omnium.

¹ amābō, the idiomatic way of saying “please” ² illic (adv.), ‘there’ ³ mortua est, ‘(she) died’
⁴ nūper (adv.), ‘recently’ ⁵ aliquantum (adv.), ‘somewhat’ ⁶ ad (prep. + acc.), here ‘for (the purpose of)’ ⁷ rēs, here ‘material gain, profit’ ⁸ avidus, -a, -um, ‘eager’
⁹ ubi (conj.), ‘when’ ¹⁰ fōrmā... honestā: the ablative is here used to describe hanc... virginem, this maiden ‘of distinguished beauty’ (see Unit Ten, section D)
¹¹ virgō, -inis, F., ‘maiden’ ¹² fidēs, -ium, F. (pl.), ‘a lyre, stringed instrument’ ¹³ sciō, here ‘be knowledgeable, skilled’
¹⁴ pretium, -i, N., ‘price’ ¹⁵ spērō (1), ‘hope (for)’
¹⁶ illicō (adv.), ‘right there, on the spot’ ¹⁷ prōdūcō (prō + dūcō), ‘lead forth, put up (for auction)’
¹⁸ vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus, ‘sell’ ¹⁹ forte fortunā, ‘by great good luck’, Fors Fortūna, a goddess whom the Romans associated with great strokes of good luck
²⁰ adsum (ad + sum), ‘be present’ ²¹ emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, ‘buy’ ²² imprūdēns, imprūdētis, ‘unaware (of)’ (+ gen.)
²³ ignārus, -a, -um, ‘ignorant (of)’ (+ gen.)

D. A WEALTHY MAN DESCRIBES HIS TOMBSTONE (Petronius, *Satyricon* 71.9):

Tē rogō¹ ut nāvēs² etiam³ in monumentō⁴ meō faciās plēnis⁵ vēlis euntēs, et
 mē in tribūnālī⁶ sedentem⁷ praetextātum⁸ cum ānulis⁹ aureis quinque et
 nummōs¹⁰ in pūblicō dē sacculō¹¹ effudentem.¹²

¹ rogō (1), ‘ask’ ² nāvis, nāvis, F., ‘ship’ ³ etiam (adv.), ‘even’ ⁴ monumentum, -i, N., ‘monument’
⁵ plēnus, -a, -um, ‘full’ ⁶ tribūnal, -ālis, N., ‘raised platform’ (on which magistrates sat)
⁷ sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, ‘sit’ ⁸ praetextātus, -a, -um, ‘wearing the toga worn by magistrates’
⁹ ānulus, -i, M., ‘ring’ ¹⁰ nummus, -i, M., ‘coin’
¹¹ sacculus, -i, M., ‘purse’ ¹² effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, ‘pour out’

REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT

Review of Syntax

1. Amice, nē mihi illud dixeris; nōlī mihi illud dicere; dic illud mihi.
(vocative; negative and positive imperatives; complementary infinitive)
2. Illis vitam male agentibus sunt multae cūrae. [male, 'badly']
(dative of the possessor)
3. Bellum prō patriā gestūrī et sociis dicentēs mortis timōrem ex animō pellendum esse, ā locō nostrī cessērunt nōn solum ut ad campum hostium īrent sed etiam ut exemplum mīlitibus pōnerent. [animus, ī. M., 'soul']
(subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of separation; ablative of place from which; accusative of place to which with ad; dative of reference)
4. Cēnantī mihi cum fēminā et filiis liber ā servō semper legitur. [cēnō (1), 'dine']
(ablative of accompaniment)
5. Meā opiniōne, illi profugī sentiunt libertātem civium dēlendā esse (fuisse).
(ablative of respect; subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement)
6. Eō tempore rēx spērāvit sē urbem timōre et servitūte liberātūrum esse. Illā autem nocte interfectus est. Nunc civitās rēge bonō caret.
(ablatives of time when; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablatives of separation)
7. Populus nōn solum ab insulā sed etiam Rōmā salutī civitāti vēnit.
(ablative of place from which, with and without a preposition; double dative construction)
8. Hominibus semper est cūra dē pecūniā; dis numquam.
(datives of possessor)
9. Rōmae Athēnisque et multis in urbibus populus liber semper pūgnābit ut multa bona habeat. In hāc autem urbe libertās populī ā rēge ācri dēlētā est; opus est fortī ut civēs liberī sint.
(locatives; place where with in; opus est with the ablative)
10. Dē caelō, terrā, maribus montibusque magister multa dixit ut dē nātūrā intellegāmus.

11. Quīnque annis eius corpus vigōre caruit quī semper ante fuerat.
(ablative of time within which; possession with the pronoun **is, ea, id**;
ablative of separation)
12. Dixistis illum multōs vestrum eō diē domum quae ab invādentibus dēlērētur
sine morā missūrum esse ut hostēs rūre pellerētis.
(ablative of time when; accusative of place to which without a preposition
with the word **domus**; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement;
subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect statement; ablative of
place from which without a preposition with the word **rūs**)
13. Omnēs frūctūs ē sē iēcērunt ut validi corporibus essent.
(ablative of separation; ablative of respect)
14. Poteritne civitās periculum temporum nostrōrum superāre?
(complementary infinitive)
15. Rūmor per Asiam ruerat et ad Italiam magnā cum vī ierat.
(accusative of place to which with **ad**)
16. Amōre carētis sine quō vīta nōn potest esse fēlix.
(ablative of separation; complementary infinitive)
17. Fidēs valida opus est in rēbus gravibus illius generis.
(**opus est** with nominative)
18. Sciō eōs malōs quī in urbe vivant (quī Rōmae vivant) amōre pecūniae multōs
annōs rēctōs esse.
(subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of place
where with **in**; subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect state-
ment; locative case; accusative of duration of time)
19. Bellum pūgnandum est sociis captīs ut sint liberi.
(passive periphrastic and dative of agent)
20. Post bellum superātis neque pecūnia neque cibus erat.
(dative of the possessor)
21. Liber ā poētā scriptus est; liber poētae scribendus est; poēta librum scribere
dēbet.
(passive periphrastic; dative of agent; complementary infinitive)
22. Poēta canēns imperia antiqua ferrō dēlēta interfectus est ā virīs in oppidō
ante vīsīs.
23. Quibuscum in oppidō vīsus es? Cum quibus amicīs in oppidō vīsus es?
Quibuscum ambulābāmus amicī sunt.
(ablatives of accompaniment)
24. Ē quā deā ille nātus est?
(ablative of origin)
25. Libertās civium erat rēgī cūrae. Cui dicēbās tē auxiliō futūrum. [**auxilium**,
-ī, N., 'aid']
(double dative construction)

Synopsis of Verbs

A full synopsis should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods, as well as all the participles and infinitives. The following synopsis of **inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** in the second person singular will serve as a model:

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, 'come upon, find'

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INDICATIVE		
Present	invenis	invenīris (invenīre)
Imperfect	inveniēbās	inveniēbāris (inveniēbāre)
Future	inveniēs	inveniēris (inveniēre)
Perfect	invēnistī	inventus (-a, -um) es
Pluperfect	invēnerās	inventus (-a, -um) erās
Future Perfect	invēneris	inventus (-a, -um) eris
SUBJUNCTIVE		
Present	inveniās	inveniāris (inveniāre)
Imperfect	invenirēs	invenirēris (invenirēre)
Perfect	invēneris	inventus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperfect	invēnissēs	inventus (-a, -um) essēs
PARTICIPLES		
Present	inveniēns	--
Future	inventūrus, -a, -um	inveniendus, -a, -um
Perfect	--	inventus, -a, -um
INFINITIVES		
Present	invenire	inveniri
Future	inventūrus (-a, -um) esse	--
Perfect	invēnisse	inventus (-a, -um) esse

UNITS 5–8: Self-Review A**I.**

A. Give all possibilities for the following forms, remembering to take into account long and short quantities:

1. sensus
2. res
3. ingenti animalī
4. spebus

B. Fully describe the *form* of each of the following, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. arsurus esse
2. tecta
3. spargere (give three possibilities when the *-e-* of the penult is short, and one additional possibility when the *-e-* is long)
4. petenda sunt
5. vocatae erant
6. quaeratis
7. iecisse
8. cani

II.

Translate these sentences and then do whatever is required for each one:

1. Socii si hostium urbem media nocte ferro flammisque capere potuissent, hoc genus belli nunc militibus nostris non pugnandum esset.
 - a) Give the syntax of **militibus**.
 - b) Give the syntax of **pugnandum esset**.
2. Sciebat auctores horum operum omnium quae omnes cives legissent multa de civitatis nostrae libertate cecinisse.
 - a) Give the syntax of **legissent**.
 - b) Give the syntax of **auctores**.
 - c) Change **sciebat** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s), explaining why you made them.
3. Verba illorum hominum se multis carere dicentium sed nihil tamen optare vos non solum servitute pecuniae liberabunt sed etiam felices facient.
 - a) Syntax of **se**?
 - b) Syntax of **dicentium**?
 - c) Syntax of **servitute**?
 - d) Rewrite in indirect statement after **scit**.
 - e) Rewrite the original sentence, changing the participial construction to a relative clause.
4. Quis hoc imperium, quis hunc timorem optare potest?
 - a) Rewrite completely in the plural.
 - b) Change **potest** to the *imperfect* tense.
5. Quibus manibus prima luce cives huius rei publicae opprimendi erant?
 - a) Syntax of **luce**?
6. Cape oppidum! Amici nostri ex urbe discedentes bellum in provincia gladiis gesturi sunt.
 - a) Syntax of **urbe**?

7. Pueris, carmina auctorum cum diligentia audire iussis, multi libri novi scripti erant ut mens sana in corpore sano eis esset.
a) Syntax of eis?

III.

Translate into Latin:

1. His sister said to her (own) friend that she (herself) had to destroy the severe rumor about her (own) father.
(Translate two ways: first, with a passive periphrastic; second, with **debeo**.)
2. Don't hate those men; for much time they have been oppressed by the soldiers, strong in body, who had attacked these walls.

Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review A

I.

- A. 1. nominative sing., genitive sing., nominative pl., accusative pl. of **sēsus**, -ūs, M.
OR masculine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of **sentiō**, -ire, **sēnsī**, **sēsus**
2. nominative sing., nominative or accusative pl. of **rēs**, **reī**, F.
3. dative or ablative sing. of **ingēns animal**
4. dative or ablative pl. of **spēs**, **speī**, F.
- B. 1. nominative masculine sing. of the future active infinitive: **ardeō**, -ēre, **arsī**, **arsus**
2. nominative or accusative pl. of **tēctum**, -ī, N.
OR nominative or accusative neuter pl. or feminine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of **tegō**, **tegere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus**
3. short -e-: present active infinitive, 2nd sing. present passive indicative, 2nd sing. passive imperative
long -ē-: 2nd sing. future passive indicative: **spargō**, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus**
4. 3rd pl. neuter present indicative passive periphrastic: **petō**, -ere, -īvi, -itus
5. 3rd pl. feminine pluperfect passive indicative: **vocō** (1)
6. 2nd pl. present active subjunctive: **quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**
7. perfect active infinitive: **iaciō**, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**
8. present passive infinitive: **canō**, -ere, **cecini**, **cantus**

II.

1. If the allies had been able to capture the enemies' city in the middle of the night with sword and flames, this kind of war would not now have to be fought by our soldiers.

- a) dative of agent with passive periphrastic
 b) passive periphrastic 3rd sing. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
2. He knew that the authors of all these works, which all the citizens had read, had sung many things about the freedom of our state.
 a) 3rd pl. pluperfect active subjunctive subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence. *Pluperfect* subjunctive because action occurs *before* that of **sciēbat**
 b) accusative pl., subject of **cecinnisse**, infinitive in indirect statement
 c) **sciet...lēgerint**
 perfect subjunctive, primary sequence
3. The words of those men who say (saying) that they lack many things, but nevertheless desire (wish for) nothing, will not only free you from the slavery of money but also will make you happy.
 a) accusative pl. subject of **carēre**, infinitive in indirect statement
 b) genitive pl. present participle in agreement with **hominum**
 c) ablative of separation
 d) **Scit verba illōrum hominum sē multis carēre dīcentium sed nihil tamen optāre, vōs nōn solum servitūte pecūniae liberātūra esse sed etiam fēlicēs factūra esse.**
 e) **Verba illōrum hominum quī dīcunt sē multis carēre...**
4. Who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this power, who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this fear?
 a) **Quī haec imperia, quī hōs timōrēs optāre possunt?**
 b) **poterat**
5. By what hands had the citizens of this republic to be oppressed at dawn?
 a) ablative of time when
6. Capture the town! Our friends departing (who are departing) from the city are about (going/ready) to wage war in the province with (their) swords.
 a) ablative of place from which
7. Many new books had been written for the boys ordered (who had been ordered) to listen diligently (with diligence) to the authors' poems in order that they might have a sound mind in a sound body.
 a) dative of possessor with **esset**

III.

1. **Soror eius amīcō suō dixit rūmōrem gravem sibi dē patre suō dēlendum esse. Soror eius amīcō suō dixit sē rūmōrem gravem dē patre suō dēlere dēbēre.**
2. **Nē ōderis (OR nōli ōdisse) illōs; multum tempus ā militibus, fortibus (validis) corpore, quī oppūgnāverant haec moenia oppressi sunt.**

UNITS 5–8: Self-Review B

I.

A. Identify each of the following forms, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative singular, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. arsis | 3. invadendi | 5. rebus | 7. manuum | 9. vocaturus |
| 2. imperans | 4. iturae | 6. vertice | 8. removisse | 10. iaci |

B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. illius lucis | 3. eo tempore | 5. meam vim |
| 2. huic fructui | 4. cuius sensus | |

C. List all infinitives, participles, and imperatives (active and passive) of **dico**.

II.

Translate each of the following and complete whatever is required in addition:

1. Si cives verba auctorum clarorum audivissent, viris infelicibus magna bella non pugnanda essent.
 - a) Explain the syntax of the phrase **viris infelicibus**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **pugnanda essent**.
 - c) Rewrite the sentence completely in the singular.
2. Dicit regem, qui oppida Romanorum bello oppugnet, milites validos superare posse.
 - a) Syntax of **regem**?
 - b) Syntax of **oppugnet**?
 - c) Syntax of **superare**?
 - d) Syntax of **posse**?
 - e) Write the sentence as a direct statement.
 - f) If **dicit** is changed to **dixit**, how will the translation be different? What change will have to be made in the subordinate clause?
3. Quibus viris, oppida Romanorum deleturis, gladii dati erant, ut cum hostibus eorum bellum gererent?
 - a) Explain the form of **deleturis**.
4. Eo tempore femina quae formā pulchra erat ab auctore librum novum scripturo amabatur.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **tempore**.
 - b) Syntax of **formā**?
 - c) Syntax of **scripturo**?

5. Magister superandus erit traditis si malum e terra pulsuri erunt.

a) Give the syntax of **traditis**.

III.

Translate into Latin:

1. They say that the mountain on which the gods are found is always covered with golden light.

2. That man's mother told him that the great works of Roman authors had to be read by all who wished to complete their lives with glory.

Translate "who wished . . ." in two ways:

a) with a relative clause

b) with a participle

Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review B

I.

- A.
1. all genders dative or ablative pl. of the perfect passive participle: **ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsus**
 2. all genders nominative sing. or neuter accusative sing. of the present participle: **imperō (1)**
 3. masculine or neuter genitive sing. *or* nominative masculine pl. of the future passive participle: **invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus**
 4. feminine nominative pl., genitive sing., dative sing. of the future active participle: **eō, ire, īi (īvī), itus**
 5. dative or ablative pl.: **rēs, rei, F.**
 6. ablative sing.: **vertex, verticis, M.**
 7. genitive pl.: **manus, manūs, F.**
 8. perfect active infinitive: **removeō, -ēre, remōvī, remōtus**
 9. nominative masculine sing. of the future active participle: **vocō (1)**
 10. present passive infinitive: **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**
- B.
1. **illārum lūcum**
 2. **his fructibus**
 3. **eis temporibus**
 4. **quōrum sēnsuum**
 5. **meās virēs (-is)**

C. Infinitives:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dicere	dici
Perfect	dixisse	dictus, -a, -um esse
Future	dictūrus, -a, -um esse	--

Participles:

Present active	dicēns
Perfect passive	dictus, -a, -um
Future active	dictūrus, -a, -um
Future passive	dicendus, -a, -um

Imperatives:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Active	dic	dicite
Passive	dicere	dicimini

II.

- If the citizens had heard (listened to) the words of the famous authors, great wars would not have to be fought by the unhappy men.
 - dative of agent with passive periphrastic
 - passive periphrastic 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
 - Sī civis verbum auctōris clāri audivisset, virō infēlicī magnum bellum nōn pūgnandum esset.*
- He says that the king, who attacks (is attacking) the towns of the Romans by means of war, is able to overcome the strong soldiers.
 - accusative sing., subject of infinitive **posse** in indirect statement
 - 3rd sing. present active subjunctive in a subordinate relative clause in indirect statement, primary sequence depending on **dicit**
 - complementary infinitive
 - present infinitive in indirect statement
 - Rēx, quī oppida Rōmānōrum bellō oppūgnat, militēs validōs superāre potest.*
 - He said . . . ; was attacking . . . ; was able to overcome . . . ; **oppūgnāret**; but if **dixit** is translated as an English present perfect, i.e., 'he has said', then no change has to be made in the rest of the translation or in the subordinate clause.
- To which (what) men about to destroy (who were about to destroy) the towns of the Romans had the swords been given in order that they might wage war with their enemies?
 - dative pl. future active participle, agreeing with **virīs**
- At that time a (the) woman who was beautiful in form was loved by an (the) author about (who was about) to write a new book.
 - ablative of time when
 - ablative of respect
 - ablative masculine sing., future active participle modifying **auctōre**

5. The master (director) will have to be conquered by the men who have been betrayed if they are (will be) about to drive evil out of the land.
a) dative pl. masculine of the perfect passive participle;
dative of agent with passive periphrastic construction

III.

1. Dicunt montem in quō dī inveniuntur lūce aureā semper tegi.
2. Māter illius ei dixit magna opera auctōrum Rōmānōrum omnibus legenda esse qui vitās (suās) cum glōriā cōficere (perficere) optārent.
or . . . omnibus optantibus vitās cum glōriā cōficere (perficere).

UNIT NINE

A. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives in Latin occur in three *degrees*: positive (e.g., “brave”), comparative (e.g., “braver, rather brave, too brave”), and superlative (e.g., “bravest, most brave, very brave”). Adjectives appear in the vocabularies in the positive degree.

Note the following observations for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives.

1. COMPARATIVE

Find the stem of the adjective by dropping the genitive singular ending from the positive form, and to this stem add **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, **-ius** for the neuter.

validus, -a, -um valid/ī validior, validius
fortis, -e fort/is fortior, fortius

The comparative adjective is declined like third declension adjectives, but with **-um** in the genitive plural instead of **-ium** and with **-a** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural instead of **-ia** (that is, it is not an i-stem). The stem for adjectives in the comparative degree is the full nominative singular masculine-feminine form, with the **-o-** lengthened.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-is)	fortiōra
fortiōre(-i)	fortiōre(-i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

2. SUPERLATIVE

Most adjectives form the superlative by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the positive form.

validissimus, -a, -um

fortissimus, -a, -um

These are declined like first-second declension adjectives.

Adjectives which end in **-er** in the masculine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** directly to the masculine nominative form.

ācer, ācris, ācre ācerrimus, -a, -um

Six adjectives which end in **-lis** in the masculine and feminine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the stem of the positive degree.

similis, -e simillimus, -a, -um

These adjectives are:

facilis, -e	easy
difficilis, -e	difficult
similis, -e	similar
dissimilis, -e	unlike
gracilis, -e	slender
humilis, -e	humble, low

3. **Quam PLUS THE SUPERLATIVE**

Quam followed by an adjective (or adverb) in the superlative degree gives the meaning 'as...as possible'.

Quam fortissimus est. He is *as brave as possible*; he is *as brave as can be*.

B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Five common adjectives have irregular comparisons and must be learned.

bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
good	better	best
malus, -a, -um	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
bad	worse	worst
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
great	greater	greatest
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
small	smaller	smallest
multus, -a, -um	plūs (neuter only in sing.)	plūrimus, -a, -um
much	pl., plūrēs, plūra	most, very many
	more	

NOTE: The masculine plural comparative of **magnus**, **maiōrēs**, is frequently used to mean 'ancestors', (i.e., 'those greater [in respect to age]').

C. Comparison with *quam*; Ablative of Comparison

Comparisons can be made in two ways in Latin:

1. Pater eius est altior **quam** hospes. His father is taller *than the guest*.

The conjunction **quam** is here equivalent to the English 'than'. As in English, **quam**, 'than', has the same case after it as it has before it.

Dixit patrem esse altiorem **quam** hospitem. He said that his father was taller *than the guest*.

Pater est altior **quam** ego. The father is taller *than I*.

2. Pater eius est altior hospite. His father is taller *than the guest*.

Here the ablative, without a preposition, is used with the comparative adjective to denote comparison. The ablative of comparison and the construction with **quam** may be used interchangeably with no distinction in meaning.

D. Ablative of Degree of Difference

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

Pater eius est **pede** altior hospite His father is taller than the guest *by a foot*;
 (quam hospes). his father is *a foot* taller than the guest.

Nunc **multō** fēlicior est. Now he is happier *by much*; he is *much*
 happier now.

Multō optimus ex omnibus He is *by far (much)* the best of all who are
 pūgnantibus est. fighting.

E. Adverbs and Their Comparison

1. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives. Two of the more frequent formations of the positive degree are noted below:

a) From adjectives of the first and second declensions, adverbs are frequently formed by adding the ending **-ē** to the stem of the adjective.

miser, misera, miserum
 poor

miserē
 poorly

- b) Adverbs formed from adjectives of the third declension frequently exhibit the ending **-iter**.

fortis, -e	fortiter
strong	strongly, bravely

There is no way to determine that a given adverb will not be formed according to these rules; adverbs formed differently will be given as vocabulary items.

2. The comparative degree of an adverb is formed by adding the ending **-ius** to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*. It will be noted that the comparative is really the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

fortiter	fortius
bravely	more bravely, rather bravely, too bravely
facile	facilius
easily	more easily, rather easily, too easily
miserē	miserius
poorly	more poorly, rather poorly, too poorly

3. The superlative is formed with the ending **-issimē** (or **-rimē**, **-limē** when the adjective would be thus formed; see section A above) added to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*.

fortissimē	most bravely
facillimē	most easily
miserrimē	most poorly
quam miserrimē	as poorly as possible

F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

bene	melius	optimē
well	better	best
male	peius	pessimē
badly	worse	worst
magnopere	magis	maximē
greatly	more	most, especially
parum	minus	minimē
not enough	less	least
multum	plūs	plūrimum
much	more	most
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
long (in time), for a long time	longer	longest

saepe often	saepius more often	saepissimē very often
--	prius before	primum first
prope near	propius nearer	proximē nearest, next

G. Partitive Genitive

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*. This usage is called the *partitive genitive* or the *genitive of the whole*.

Fortissimus **omnium militum** ad mē vēnit. The bravest *of all the soldiers* came to me.

Multi **hominum** opiniōnēs sapientium laudant. Many *of the men* praise the opinions of the wise.

The ablative, preceded by the prepositions **ē** (**ex**), or **dē** is used as an alternative to the partitive genitive with some words. This is especially frequent when the word denoting the *part* is a cardinal numeral.

Quinque **ex militibus** domum vērunt. Five *of (out of) the soldiers* came home.

Some words used substantively in Latin require a partitive genitive to render an idea which in English would be expressed with a noun and adjective.

Satis **pecūniae** habet. He has enough *(of) money*.

Plūs **pecūniae** habet quam tū. He has more *(of) money* than you.

In the singular, the word **plūs** is used substantively and is generally indeclinable; in the plural, it is used attributively and is declined.

Plūs hominum ad sē vocāvit. He called *more (of) men* to him.

Plūrēs hominēs ad sē vocāvit. He called *more men* to him.

UNIT NINE — VOCABULARY

aiō (defective verb)	say, affirm
[pres.: aiō, ais, ait, --, --, aiunt	
imperf.: aiēbam , etc. (complete)	
pres. subjunctive: --, aiās, aiat,	
--, --, aiant]	
amicitia, -ae, F.	friendship

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus	fall
cāsus, -ūs. M.	fall, accident, occurrence, chance
cōnsilium, -ī, N.	counsel, plan, advice
crūdēlis, -e	cruel
dēmēns, dēmentis	mad, raving
facilis, -e	easy
facile (adv.)	easily
difficilis, -e	difficult
gracilis, -e	slender, unadorned, simple
hospes, -itis. M.	guest, host
humilis, -e	humble, lowly
laudō (1)	praise
laus, laudis, F.	praise
magnopere (adv.)	greatly
maiōrēs, -um. M. pl.	ancestors
male (adv.)	badly
Mārs, Mārtis, M.	Mars (god of war)
multum (adv.)	much, very
mūniō, -īre, -īvī. -ītus	fortify
nam (conj.)	for
odium, -ī, N.	hatred
parum (adv. and indeclinable adj.)	too little, not enough
parvus, -a, -um	little, small
prius (adv.)	before, previously
quam primum	as soon as possible
proximus, -a, -um	nearest, next
quam (conj.)	than (used in comparisons)
saepe (adv.)	often
sapiēns, -ntis	wise
sapientia, -ae, F.	wisdom
satis (adv. and indeclinable adj.)	enough
serēnus, -a, -um	serene, calm
similis, -e	like, similar (to) (+ gen. or dat.)
dissimilis, -e	dissimilar, unlike (+ gen. or dat.)
solvō, -ere, solvī. solūtus	loosen, free, untie
summus, -a, -um	highest, top (of)
supplex, supplicis	suppliant, humble
tam (adv.)	so
tam . . . quam	so . . . as, as . . . as
templum, -ī, N.	temple
tūtus, -a, -um	safe

UNIT NINE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The easiest way to memorize the irregular comparisons of adjectives is to associate the forms with the English derivatives:

bonus, melior (*ameliorate* is to make *better*), **optimus** (an *optimist* is a person who looks at the *best* side of things)

malus, peior (a *pejorative* meaning of a word is a *worse* one), **pessimus** (a *pessimist* is a person who looks at the *worst* side of things)

magnus, maior (a *major* problem is a *rather great* one), **maximus** (the *maximum* penalty is the *largest* one)

parvus, minor (a *minor* problem is a *rather small* one; eight *minus* (*smaller* [by]) two is six), **minimus** (the *minimum* penalty is the *smallest* one)

multus, plūs (six *plus* (*more* [by]) two is eight; *plural* means *more* than one), **plūrimum** does not have an English derivative.

Maiōrēs, maiōrum, M. pl. means 'ancestors' because they are the ones 'greater (in age)' than we are.

Quam with the superlative means 'as...as possible'; with the comparative it means 'than'. **Quam** can mean 'how' in an exclamatory sense: **Quam pulchra est!**, 'How beautiful she is!' And, of course, **quam** can be the feminine accusative singular of the relative pronoun or interrogative adjective.

Aiō is a defective verb with not many forms; the present tense of the indicative is found in four persons, of the subjunctive in three. The imperfect indicative is complete. The verb means 'say' or 'say yes'.

The suffix **-tia**, sometimes with a connecting vowel, or the suffix **-ia** is added to the stem of an adjective to produce an abstract noun; thus, **amicitia** is 'friendship'. **Sapiēns**, 'wise', produces **sapientia**, 'wisdom'.

Cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus, 'fall', has many compounds; it must not be confused with **caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus**, 'fell, cut', which also has many compounds. **Incidō**, 'fall into, happen', is a compound of **in** + **cadō**; **incidō**, 'cut into, engrave', is from **in** + **caedō**; the **-ae-** diphthong becomes **-ī-** in compounds. Once again it is clear that it pays to be attentive to long and short vowels. The last principal part of **cadō** produces the fourth declension noun **cāsus, cāsūs**, M., 'fall, accident, occurrence, chance'.

Dēmēns (**dē** + **mēns**) describes someone who is '(down, away) from his mind', thus, 'mad, raving'.

Note the irregular adverbs **facile**, 'easily'; **male**, 'badly'; **multum**, 'much, very'; and **magnopere** (uncontracted, **magnō opere**), 'with great work', thus, 'greatly'.

Remember that the six adjectives ending in **-lis** — **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, and humilis** — form their superlatives by doubling the **-l-** and adding **-imus**.

The noun **laus**, **laudis**, F., 'praise', is related to the first conjugation verb **laudō**, 'praise'.

Nam is a *conjunction* meaning 'for': **Nam omnis populus rēgem timuit**, 'For all the people feared the king'.

The neuter second declension noun **odium**, 'hatred', is related to the verb **ōdī**, 'hate'. The English word *annoy* comes from **in odiō**.

Sometimes an adjective is more easily translated as an adverb: **Humilēs in tēctum dominī vēnimus**, 'We came humbly into the master's house'; literally, 'We, humble, came into the master's house'; **Prīmī accessērunt**, 'They were the first to approach' or 'They approached first'.

Proximus, -a, -um is often found with the dative: **Proximus turbae fuit**, 'He was nearest the crowd'.

Similis and **dissimilis** may govern either the genitive or the dative without distinction: **Patris similis est** and **Patrī similis est** both mean 'He is like his father'.

Summus, -a, -um means 'top (of)': **Animal in summō monte vīdimus**, 'We saw the animal on the top of the mountain'.

Tam...quam means 'so...as': **Quid est tam dulce quam habēre amicum cārissimum?**, 'What is so sweet as having (*literally*, 'to have') a very dear friend?'

UNIT NINE — DRILL

I.

Give the positive, comparative, and superlative forms of the following adjectives to go with each of the following nouns. Several interpretations of the cases of the nouns may be possible.

miser, misera, miserum, 'wretched, unhappy, poor'

saevus, -a, -um, 'cruel'

humilis, -e, 'humble, low'

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. manui | 3. spērum | 5. hominibus | 7. carmen |
| 2. profugi | 4. civitatēs | 6. amicum | 8. corpora |

II.

Translate:

- Hoc opus difficilium est illō.
- Hoc opus difficilium est quam illud.
- Hoc opus difficilium est parvō quam illud.
- Hoc opus multō difficilium est illō.
- Hae fēminae sāniōrēs sunt illis.
- Hae fēminae multō sāniōrēs sunt quam illae.
- Dicimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse quam illās.

8. Dicimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse illis.
9. Hī hominēs fortiōrēs plūs pecūniae optant.
10. Multa pecūnia hominibus meliōribus optanda est; parum pecūniae hominibus peiōribus optandum est.
11. Plūs pecūniae hominibus optandum est.
12. Plūs pecūniae hominibus meliōribus optandum est quam peiōribus.
13. Studium mihi dulcius est bellō.
14. Studium mihi dulcius est quam bellum.
15. Verba vēra mihi dixērunt.
16. Verba vēriōra mihi dixērunt.
17. Verba vērissima mihi dixērunt.
18. Verba quam vērissima mihi dixērunt.
19. Militēs ācerrimī rēgī ācriōri dixērunt sē sentiētiās ācrēs magistrōrum petitūrōs esse.
20. Scīmus sentiētiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse quam arma ācerrima.
21. Scīmus sentiētiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse armis ācerrimis.
22. Hīc puer multō facilius quam frāter legit.
23. Militēs quam ācerrimē et fortissimē pūgnāvērunt.
24. Rēx novus melius quam pater rēxit.
25. Honestē et fēliciter vītam agere optāmus.

UNIT NINE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

1. Domī quam tūtissimī esse dēbēmus.
2. a) Puer frātrī est simillimus, nam est tam sapiēns quam frāter.
b) Puer est sorōris dissimilis.
3. Multō facilius est laudāre amicum quam inimicum.
4. Sapiētēs aiunt amicitiam esse summum bonum.
5. Maiōribus fuisse odium bellī dicitur.
6. Dōna cāriōra dari filiō sapientissimō iussit.
7. Tēcta domuum altiōrum (altissimārum) fulgēbant lūmine clāriōre (clārissimō).
8. Hic hospes multō serēnior est illō.
9. Supplicēs humillimī miserrimīque timōre mōtī urbem regentēs magnopere laudāvērunt.
10. Multae urbēs antiquae pulcherrimaeque cāsū crūdēlissimō dēlētāe sunt.
11. Auctor clārior erat frātre clārō.
12. Dicimus Mārtem saepe crūdēliōrem esse multis dīs.
13. Hic ager est quinque pedibus longior quam ille.
14. Nam cōnsilium dēmentis est multō crūdēlissimum.

UNIT NINE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Urbs pulcherrima nōn solum umbrā maiōre timōris tegitur, sed etiam rūmōribus crūdēlibus (crūdēliōribus, crūdēlissimis) dē populō dēlētur.
2. Lūx discēdere incipit atque nox venit; maiōrēsq̄ cadunt altis dē montibus umbrae.
3. Plūs studii in cūris animae pōnendum est quam in cūris corporis; nam anima est aeterna, sed corpus dēlēbitur.
4. Nihil est bellō tam simile quam ruīna.
5. Numquam, nisi mē saepius ōrāveris, servitūte amicum miserrimum facile solvēs.
6. Quam ob rem maxima dēbētur militibus fortissimis venia? Bellum diūtissimē et fortiter ab eis gestum est.
7. Bellum grave et crūdēlissimum militibus fortiōribus gerendum est nē nāti incolārum gladiis flammisque superentur.
8. Audiēbāmus multōs supplicēs validiōrēs ad templum magnō cum studiō ventūrōs esse ut deōs ōrārent ut periculum ab oppidō removērētur.
9. Quid infēlici servō dulcius cūris solūtis?
10. Manū supplicī dōna gravia portāns ad rēgēs pessimōs et crūdēliōrēs humilis vēnit ut ab eis veniam prō illis multō infēliciōribus sē quaereret.
11. Summōs virōs dēmentiōrēs esse dicēbās; nunc eōs quam dēmentissimōs dīcis.
12. Sed nīl dulcius est, bene quam mūnīta tenēre opīniōnibus sapientium templa serēna.
13. Hanc villam nātūrā et opere mūnītam incolae humilēs quam primum capient.
14. Bellum est grave Mārtis opus; vitam quam serēnissimam optantibus nihil bellō saepe est peius.
15. Auctor dixit illum hospitem opus magnum in manibus habēre; opus simillimum esse librō ab infēliciōre poētā qui Rōmā pulsus esset scriptō.
16. Incipit rēs melius ire quam spērāveram.
17. Plūrēs tibi dabō, qui nōn amicō, sed amīcitiā caruērunt.
18. Facilius genus vitae hominibus quaerendum est.
19. Eō diē mihi dixit sē audivisse fēminam altiōre vōce clāmāntem satis sibi pecūniae nōn esse ut Rōmam sine morā iret; proximō autem diē sē invenire eam nōn posse.
20. Aiunt plūs dōnōrum pessimis servis nōn optandum esse quam optimis.
21. Cīvēs honestissimi, spectāte meum hunc cāsū tam gravem, tam malum.
22. Illa civitās multō plūris quam nostra cāsūs mortis habet.
23. Oppidum parvum quam optimē mūniēbātur nē hostēs id diūtius oppūgnārent.

24. Maximē maiōrēs laudant quī cum diligentīā sē prō rē pūblicā gessērunt.
25. Aiēbat sē facillimē lēgisse librōs quōs mīssissēs.
26. Supplex intellēxit amōrem esse difficiliōrem sibi multō quam odium.
27. Nihil est mortis tam simile quam vīta sine salūte, sine pecūniā, sine maximō studiō rērum bonārum.
28. Mors animam cārissimam corpore solvit.
29. Cum omnibus tuis laudibus, haec, meā opiniōne, est maxima: sapientia tua civēs metū solvit quō magnopere atque diūtius territi sunt.
30. Bona opiniō hominum tūtior pecūniā est. Nam pecūnia sine cōnsiliō saepe perditur; fāma nōbiscum semper vivit.
31. Quae rēs in sē parum cōnsilii neque multum sapientiae habet, eam cōnsiliō regere nōn potes.
32. Cognōvimus virōs liberōs vītam difficillimam agere quod illis opus est studiō et diligentīā quibus rem pūblicam bene gerant. [quibus = ut his (introducing a clause of purpose)]
33. Amicō bonō nihil tenēri melius potest.
34. Cōnsiliis optimis vītam agere dēbēbimus, si quam fēlicissimē vivere optābimus.
35. Crūdēliōrem imperium tenentem orāvit supplex nē odium profugōrum ei dē poenā cōgitantī esset cūrae.
36. Poēta dixit sē librum sententiis gracilibus atque quam dulcissimis implētūrum esse.
37. Rōmae satis odii, laudis parum erat.
38. Maiōrēs enim vestri bella saepe quaesivērunt ob maximum glōriae amōrem. Male quaesivērunt.
39. Noster amātissimus auctor dixit, “Verbum sapientī sat (*i.e.*, satis) est.”
40. Hostem crūdēlissimum si vīdisset, arma manū cecidissent.
41. Rēgem saeviōrem civēs prius Rōmā, post et ex Italiā pepulērunt.
42. Multum laudātur quod vīta cōnsiliis sapientium mūnītur.

II.

1. The rather humble guest, who had been attacked by the raving inhabitants in the middle of the city, had to fortify the temple as well as possible in order that he might be safe.
2. It is said that gossip is a much more evil thing than cruel war.
3. The king's very healthy brother feels that the constellations are brighter than the fires in the streets of this city.
4. These soldiers are much better in strength than those.
5. At that time he would very easily have overcome the brave soldiers if (his) rather heavy arms had not fallen from (his) very strong hands.

III. Reading

Pliny writes about his sorrow over the death of Fundanus' daughter on the night before her wedding (Pliny 5.16, slightly adapted):

Tristissimus¹ haec tibi scribō dē morte Fundāni² nostri filiae minōris. Quā puellā nihil umquam fēstivius,³ amābilis⁴ nec modo⁵ longiōre vitā, sed prope⁶ immortalitāte⁷ dignius⁸ vīdi. Nōndum⁹ annōs quattuordecim¹⁰ implēverat, et iam¹¹ illi anilis¹² sapientia, fēminae gravitās¹³ erat, et tamen suāvitās¹⁴ puellae cum virginis¹⁵ verēcundiā.¹⁶ Ut¹⁷ illa patris cervicibus¹⁸ inhaerēbat!¹⁹ Ut¹⁷ nōs amicōs patris et amanter²⁰ et modestē²¹ complectēbātur!²² Ut¹⁷ nūtricēs,²³ ut¹⁷ paedagōgōs,²⁴ ut¹⁷ magistrōs prō suō quemque²⁵ officiō²⁶ diligēbat!²⁷ Quam²⁸ studiōsē,²⁹ quam²⁸ intellegenter³⁰ legēbat! Ut¹⁷ parcē³¹ custōditēque³² lūdēbat!³³ Quā illa temperantiā,³⁴ quā patientiā,³⁵ quā cōstantiā³⁶ novissimam³⁷ valētūdinem³⁸ tulit!³⁹ Medicis⁴⁰ pārēbat,⁴¹ sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur⁴² sēque dēstitūtā⁴³ corporis viribus vigōre mentis sustinēbat.⁴⁴ Dūrāvit⁴⁵ hic illi ūsque⁴⁶ ad mortem nec aut⁴⁷ spatiō⁴⁸ valētūdinis³⁸ aut⁴⁷ metū mortis infractus est,⁴⁹ quō plūrēs graviōrēsque nōbīs causās⁵⁰ relinqueret⁵¹ et dēsideriū⁵² et dolōris.⁵³ Ō triste¹ plānē⁵⁴ acerbūque fūnus!⁵⁵ Ō morte ipsā⁵⁶ mortis tempus indignius!⁵⁷

¹ *tristis*, -e, 'sad' ² *Fundānus*, -i, M., a man's name ³ *fēstivus*, -a, -um, 'gay, pleasing' ⁴ *amābilis*, -e, 'lovable' ⁵ *modo* (adv.), 'only' ⁶ *prope* (adv.), 'nearly' ⁷ *immortalitās*, -tātis, F., 'immortality' ⁸ *dignus*, -a, -um, 'worthy' (+ abl.) ⁹ *nōndum* (adv.), 'not yet' ¹⁰ *quattuordecim* (indeclinable adj.), 'fourteen' ¹¹ *iam* (adv.), 'already' ¹² *anilis*, -e, 'of an old woman' ¹³ *gravitās*, -tātis, F., 'seriousness' ¹⁴ *suāvitās*, -tātis, F., 'charm, agreeableness' ¹⁵ *virgō*, -inis, F., 'maiden' ¹⁶ *verēcundia*, -ae, F., 'modesty' ¹⁷ *ut* (adv.), 'how' ¹⁸ *cervix*, -icis, F., 'neck'; here, used in the pl., but with sing. meaning ¹⁹ *inhaereō*, -ēre, *inhaesi*, *inhaesus*, 'cling' ²⁰ *amanter* (adv.), from *amāns* ²¹ *modestus*, -a, -um, 'modest' ²² *complectēbātur*, translate as active: 'she used to embrace' ²³ *nūtrix*, -icis, F., 'nurse' ²⁴ *paedagōgus*, -i, M., a slave in charge of escorting a child to and from school ²⁵ *quemque* (acc. sing., M. & F.), 'each (one)' ²⁶ *officium*, -i, N., 'duty, service' ²⁷ *diligō*, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, 'esteem highly' ²⁸ *quam* (adv.), 'how' ²⁹ *studiōsus*, -a, -um, 'studious, busy' ³⁰ *intellegenter* (adv.), from *intellegēs* ³¹ *parcus*, -a, -um, 'sparing' ³² *custōditē* (adv.), 'cautiously' ³³ *lūdō*, -ere, *lūsī*, *lūsus*, 'play' ³⁴ *temperantia*, -ae, F., 'self-restraint' ³⁵ *patientia*, -ae, F., 'patience' ³⁶ *cōstantia*, -ae, F., 'self-possession' ³⁷ *novus*, -a, -um, 'recent' ³⁸ *valētūdō*, -inis, F., 'bad health' ³⁹ *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, 'endure' ⁴⁰ *medicus*, -i, M., 'doctor' ⁴¹ *pārēō*, -ēre, *pārui*, *pāritus*, 'be obedient to' (+ dat.) ⁴² *adhortābātur*, translate as active: 'she used to encourage' ⁴³ *dēstituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, 'desert'; in perfect participle, 'deprived of' ⁴⁴ *sustineō* (sub + teneō), 'sustain' ⁴⁵ *dūrō* (1), 'last, continue' ⁴⁶ *ūsque* (adv.), 'all the way' ⁴⁷ *aut... aut* (conj.), 'either... or' ⁴⁸ *spatium*, -i, N., 'length of time' ⁴⁹ *infringō*, -ere, -frēgī, -fractus, 'break up, bring down' ⁵⁰ *causa*, -ae, F., 'reason, cause' ⁵¹ *relinquō*, -ere, *reliquī*, *relictus*, 'leave'; *quō... relinqueret* = *ut... relinqueret* ⁵² *dēsiderium*, -i, N., 'regret' (for the loss of anything) ⁵³ *dolor*, -ōris, M., 'pain, sorrow' ⁵⁴ *plānē* (adv.), 'plainly, certainly' ⁵⁵ *fūnus*, -eris, N., 'funeral, death' ⁵⁶ *ipsā* (abl. sing. F.), 'itself' (modifies *morte*) ⁵⁷ *indignus*, -a, -um, 'unworthy' (+ abl.)

UNIT TEN

A. Ablative Absolute

The word “absolute” comes from the fourth principal part of the verb **absolvō**, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, ‘untie, loosen’. Grammatically, it refers to a part of the sentence which has no close syntactical connection with the rest; it is “untied” or “detached” from the main clause.

English has a *nominative absolute*:

This being the case, I shall now help you.

Note that the nominative absolute in English utilizes a subject, “this” and a participle, “being”. The subject of the absolute construction is different from the subject (or object) of the main clause. In the broadest sense, the absolute functions as an adverb giving the circumstances in which the action of the main clause occurs.

The Latin absolute construction requires the ablative, not the nominative, case. All tenses of the participle may occur, according to the observations stated in the unit on participles above, although the future is very rare in classical Latin.

Coniuge veniente, *With her husband coming*, the woman will depart.
fēmina discēdet. *When her husband is coming (comes)*, the woman will depart.
Since her husband is coming, the woman will depart.
If her husband is coming (comes), the woman will depart.
Although her husband is coming, the woman will depart.
...etc.

[NOTE that when the present participle is used in an ablative absolute, the -e ending for the ablative singular occurs rather than -ī.]

OBSERVATIONS:

1. The subject of the ablative absolute, **coniuge**, is different from the subject of the main clause, **fēmina**. Hence, **coniuge veniente** is a true absolute.
2. The present participle refers to an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb.

3. Because of the absence of a perfect *active* participle, it will be impossible to express an active idea in the absolute as having occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb without recasting it in the passive voice. Another construction would have to be used (e.g., **Sī coniūnx vēnit, postquam coniūnx vēnit, quamquam coniūnx vēnit, etc.**).

Coniuge vīsō, *With her husband having been seen,* the woman
fēmina discessit. departed.
 When she had seen her husband, the woman
 departed.
 Since she had seen her husband, the woman
 departed.
 If she had seen her husband, the woman departed.
 Although she had seen her husband, the woman
 departed.
 . . .etc.

OBSERVATIONS:

- Note that in the last four translations above, the subordinate clause has been changed from the passive to the active voice. The subject "she" of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the main clause *in English*. In the Latin, however, the subject of the perfect passive participle is *not* the same as that of the main verb (**coniuge** is the subject of the ablative absolute; **fēmina** is the subject of the main clause; note the first English translation above).
- The perfect participle refers to an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

NOTE: If we wish to render "When she was departing, the woman saw her husband" into Latin, we *cannot* use the ablative absolute because the subject of each clause ("she" and "woman") is the same. A simple participle must be used instead:

Fēmina discēdēns coniugem vidit.

Illā fēminā rēginā, *With that woman (being) queen,* the inhabitants
incolae fēlicēs erant. were happy.
 When that woman was queen, the inhabitants were
 happy.
 . . .etc.

OBSERVATION:

Since there is no present participle for the verb **sum**, two nouns are sometimes used in an ablative absolute construction with an *implied* participle connecting them. The second noun is in effect a predicate ablative.

Custōde amīcum vocante, *With the guardian calling his friend,* the sailors fled.
When the guardian was calling his friend, the sailors fled.
 . . .etc.

OBSERVATION:

The participle, since it is a verbal adjective, retains its verbal functions. Consequently it can control an object, as in the case of **amīcum** above.

B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in -ius

There is a group of adjectives which are like first-second declension adjectives except that they have **-ius** in the genitive singular of all genders and **-ī** in the dative singular. One of these is **tōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'whole, all'.

SINGULAR			PLURAL
M.	F.	N.	
tōtus	tōta	tōtum	
tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	
tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	the plural is identical to that of magnus , -a , -um
tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	
tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	

The other adjectives of this class are:

alius, -a, -ud	other
alter, altera, alterum	the other (of two)
ūllus, -a, -um	any
nūllus, -a, -um	no, none
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither
sōlus, -a, -um	only
ūnus, -a, -um	one, alone

C. Ablative of Cause

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

Clāmāre gaudiō coepit. She began to shout *because of joy*.

Fōrmā laudābantur. They were praised *because of (their) beauty*.

Sometimes cause is expressed by **ob** or **propter**, 'on account of', followed by the accusative case.

Propter metum fēminās interfēcit. He killed the women *on account of fear*.

D. Ablative and Genitive of Description

A noun in the ablative or genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

Vir magnā sapientiā } a man of great wisdom
Vir magnae sapientiae }

E. The Irregular Verb *ferō* and Its Compounds

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, 'bring, carry, bear, endure', exhibits certain peculiarities in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative. The other forms are exactly what we would expect for a third conjugation verb.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
		(ferre)	
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

IMPERATIVE

SING.	PL.
fer!	ferite!

There are several compounds of **ferō** which occur frequently and should be learned. Some are:

- ad + ferō** = **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus**, 'bring to, present'
- ab + ferō** = **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus**, 'carry away'
- com + ferō** = **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus**, 'bring together, collect; compare; reflexive **sē cōnferre** = 'take oneself' (i.e., to a place), 'go'
- dē + ferō** = **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**, 'bring away, bring down, offer; report'
- dis + ferō** = **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus**, 'differ'
- ex + ferō** = **efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, 'carry out; bring forth'
- in + ferō** = **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus**, 'carry into; inflict'
- ob + ferō** = **offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus**, 'bring before; offer; expose'
- re + ferō** = **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, 'bring back, report'
- sub + ferō** = **sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus**, 'undergo, endure'

It will be easy to form other compounds of this verb by the addition of other prefixes.

UNIT TEN — VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud (note that the neuter nom. and acc. end in -ud , not -um)	other, another
alius . . . alius	one . . . another
alii . . . alii	some . . . others
alter, altera, alterum	the other (of two)
apud (prep. + acc.)	at, near, among; at the house of
ars, artis, -ium, F.	skill, art
audācia, -ae, F.	boldness, courage
audāx, audācis	bold, courageous
auxilium, -ī, N.	aid
certus, -a, -um	certain, sure
incertus, -a, -um	uncertain, unsure
coepī, coepisse, coeptus	began (defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system)
custōs, -ōdis, M.	guardian
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus	teach
errō (1)	wander, err
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (for compounds of ferō , see section E of this Unit)	bring, carry, bear, endure
figūra, -ae, F.	figure, form, shape
foedus, foederis, N.	pact, treaty, agreement
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus	flee
fuga, -ae, F.	flight
gaudium, -ī, N.	joy
gēns, gentis, -ium, F.	race, people
iam (adv.)	now, by this time, already, soon
iter, itineris, N.	journey, route
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus	join
coniūnx, coniugis, M. or F.	husband, wife, spouse
mōs, mōris, M.	custom; pl., character
negō (1)	deny, say no
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither
nūllus, -a, -um	no, none
orbis, orbis, -ium, M.	ring, orb, circle
orbis terrārum	circle of lands; the world
pars, partis, -ium, F.	part

propter (prep. + acc.)	on account of, because of
quantus, -a, -um	how much, how great
quot (indeclinable adj.)	how many
signum, -ī, N.	signal, sign
sōl, sōlis, M.	sun
sōlus, -a, -um	alone, only
tantus, -a, -um	so much, so great
tantus . . . quantus } quantus . . . tantus }	as (so) much . . . as; as (so) great . . . as
temptō (1)	try, attempt
tot (indeclinable adj.)	so many
tot . . . quot } quot . . . tot }	as many . . . as
tōtus, -a, -um	all, whole
ūllus, -a, -um	any
ūnus, -a, -um	one, alone
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)
virtūs, -tūtis, F.	manliness, courage, excellence, virtue

UNIT TEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

There are nine adjectives in Latin which end in **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular: **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus** ('any'), **nūllus** ('none'), **uter**, **neuter** ('neither'), **sōlus** ('alone'), **tōtus** ('whole'), and **ūnus** ('one'). **Alius** means 'other, another', **alter**, 'the other (of two)', and **uter**, 'which (of two)'. **Alterius** was used as the genitive singular of **alius** (see Appendix, page 322). **Alius . . . alius** means 'one . . . another': **Alius in tēctō alius in viā erat**, 'One man was in the house, another in the street'. When two forms of the adjective **alius** are found in the same sentence, they are translated twice:

Alii aliud mihi dixērunt. Some men told me one thing; others told me another.

Alia dōna ad aliōs amīcōs misērunt. They sent some gifts to some friends, other gifts to others (other friends).

Apud is like the French **chez**; it means 'at, near, among, at the house of, in the works of'.

The adjective **audāx**, **audācis**, 'bold, courageous', is related to the abstract noun **audācia**, **audāciae**, F., 'boldness, courage'.

Coepī, **coepisse**, **coeptus**, 'began', is a defective verb which has only perfect tenses. **Incipiō** may be used if a present, imperfect, or future tense of 'begin' is needed.

The verb **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus**, 'teach', may govern two accusatives. In other words, one teaches something in the accusative case to someone in the accusative: **Multa nātōs docēre optāmus**, 'We wish to teach many things to our children'.

Errō, a first conjugation verb, means 'wander'. If one wanders from the true path, one errs; thus, **errō** also means 'err'.

Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 'bear, bring, carry, endure', is sometimes used, usually in the third person, to mean 'say, report': **Auctōrem clārissimum in illō tēctō ferunt vixisse**, 'They say that the very famous author lived in that house'. Also, **Auctor clārissimus in illō tēctō vixisse fertur**, 'The very famous author is said to have lived in that house'.

Ferō is one of the four verbs (**dicō, dūcō, and faciō** are the others) which drop the ending in the present active singular imperative: **dic, dūc, fac, fer**.

Connected with **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, 'flee', is the noun **fuga, fugae, F.**, 'flight'.

Iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, 'join', has a compound **coniungō**, 'join together'; the person with whom one is joined, **coniūnx**, is one's 'spouse'; therefore, this word can be either masculine or feminine.

Iam is an adverb which relies on the tense of the verb for its meaning; with the present tense, it means 'now', with a past tense, 'up to now, already, by this time', and with the future, 'soon'.

Mōs, mōris, M., in the singular means 'custom', but in the plural, 'character', since it is our customs or habits which make up our character.

Negō, a first conjugation verb, is the opposite of **aiō**; it means 'say no, deny'.

Orbis, orbis, M., is 'ring, circle'; **orbis terrārum**, 'circle of lands', is the way of saying 'the world'.

There is no difference between **propter** with the accusative and **ob** with the accusative.

Quantus, -a, -um, 'how much, how great', is often used correlatively with **tantus, -a, -um**, 'so much, so great'. There is no difference in meaning between **quantus . . . tantus** and **tantus . . . quantus**: **Quantōs librōs in mēnsā vidimus tantōs in cellā**, 'We saw as many books on the table as (we saw) in the storeroom'; **Tantum gaudium in urbe erat quantum in prōvinciā**, 'There was as much joy in the city as in the province'.

Quot, 'how many', may be correlative with **tot**, 'so many'. There is no difference in meaning between **quot . . . tot** and **tot . . . quot**: **Quot puellae tot pueri in tēctō erant**, 'There were as many girls as boys in the house'; **Tot dominōs quot servōs in templō vidimus**, 'We saw as many masters as slaves in the temple'.

Virtūs, virtūtis, F., is an abstract noun meaning 'the state of being a man. or the quality of a man'; it is what makes a man a man, namely, 'manliness, courage, excellence, virtue'.

UNIT TEN — DRILL

I.

Translate each of the following ablatives absolute literally; then give at least four smoother translations:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. hostibus oppressis | 6. sociis interfectis |
| 2. opere perfectō | 7. periculō remōtō |
| 3. timōre superante | 8. urbe ā hostibus invāsā |
| 4. rēgibus civēs servitūte liberantibus | 9. sociō magistrō |
| 5. imperiō ruente | 10. militibus rū euntibus |

II.

Rewrite the subordinate clauses in Latin as ablatives absolute:

1. Postquam oppidum arsum est, militēs discessērunt.
2. Si Marcus erit magister, superābimus.
3. Si pater sānus esset, mortem nōn timērēmus.
4. Quamquam nox terrās umbris tegit, socii tamen vidēre possunt.
5. Quamquam pericula intellēxit, in villam tamen ardentem ruit.
6. Incolae timēbant quod urbs ā sociis trādita erat.
7. Quamquam opiniōnem dē amicō mūtāverat, crūdēlis esse nōn optāvit.
8. Si discēdētis, poēta nōn canet.
9. Militēs per campōs ire nōn possunt quod saxa ingentia dē viā nōn removēbantur.
10. Postquam supplex domum missus est, populus omnem spem perdidit.

III.

Translate, explaining the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Fēmina **magnae fidei** mihi imperāvit ut Rōmam irem.
2. Mōtibus siderum **intellēctis**, poēta librum dē illis rēbus scripsit.
3. Profugō **poenam timente**, amici rēgem interficient.
4. **Oppidō** trāditō, incolae tamen spērāvērunt amicōs sibi fructuī futūrōs esse.
5. Sententiā dē hospitibus mūtātā, vir magnā **veniā** ad nōs vēnit ut dē insidiis monēret.
6. Ille puer quem magister ad rēgnum vocāvit minimā est **diligentiā**, maximā sapientiā.
7. **Illō dominō**, nōn timēmus.
8. Hostibus **pulsis**, miles **fēlix** erat.
9. **Bellō** cōfectō, diūtius pūgnātis?
10. **Amōre** patriae pūgnāvit.
11. Omnibus hostibus ab urbe **remōtis**, incolae **gaudiō** clāmābant.

IV.

Note the following uses of participles and ablatives absolute:

1. Puerōs scribentēs vidī.
2. Hominēs in bellō superātī discessērunt.
3. Miles erat pūgnātūrus.
4. Poēta, sub caelō legēns, sidera spectāvit.
5. Puella hōs librōs lēctūra est.
6. Opere cōfectō, virī domum missi sunt.
7. Mediā nocte ad socium litterās portantēs vēnērunt.
8. Hīs rēbus gestis, omnēs discessērunt.
9. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmantēs, maximē timēbam.
10. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmāre, maximē timēbam.
11. Servīs liberātis, dominus suōs filiōs labōrāre in agris iussit.
12. Homō miser, villā arsā, nūllam domum habēbat.
13. Clārum multās hōrās sociis vēra dicentem audivī; minimō tempore discessit.
Illō discēdente, militēs gaudiō clāmāvērunt.
14. Multa dōna ūnī virō cibum ad hospitēs ferentī dabimus.
15. Taedamne ad profugōs nocte ambulantēs ferēs?

V.

1. Puer fert librōs.
2. Puer ferēbat librōs.
3. Is est puer quī ferēbat librōs.
4. Puer fertur esse bonus. [**fertur**, '(he) is said...']
5. Puer fertur librōs ferre.
6. Puer fertur librōs tulisse.
7. Librōs nōn feram.
8. Librī ā puerō feruntur.
9. Librī ā mē nōn lāti sunt.
10. Dicō puerum quī librōs ferat bonum esse.
11. Dicēbam puerum quī librōs ferret bonum esse.
12. Dixi puerum quī librōs tulisset bonum esse.
13. Intellegit librōs frūctūi esse hominibus sapientibus.
14. Librī ad nōs ferentur ut sapientiōrēs simus.

UNIT TEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES
(SECTIONS A, B)

1. Fugā temptātā, audācēs per prōvinciam itinere errāre coepērunt.
2. Audācia custōdis sōlius auxilium genti tōtī tulit.

3. Gaudiō positō, aliī vītam tulērunt, aliī negāvērunt.
4. Omnibus fortibus mōrēs supplicis alterius laudantibus, opiniō nostra nōn petita est.
5. Librō aliō scriptō, auctor alium scribere coepit.
6. Sōle auxiliō, viis incertis fūgimus ut nōs sociis quam primum iungerēmus.
7. Quot artēs sunt aliī tot aliī.
8. Omni spē fugae dēlētā, locus nūllus salūtis ā profugis inventus est.
9. Itinere incertō et nūllō signō ā magistrō datō, in neutram viam sine timōre periculī ruere iam possumus.
10. Nūllus homō quī apud nōs vivit tanta gaudia quantōs metūs tulit.

UNIT TEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Militibus foedere iūctis, haec urbs sōla nōn dēlēbitur; multa gravia iam sustulit.
2. Aliō bellō in prōvinciam illātō, hostēs tēctis et templis tōtius urbis ignēs inferre temptāvērunt.
3. Tōtam diem illae gentēs socium magnae audāciae invenire temptābant quem vī abstulerant saeviōrēs servī.
4. Sōle multīs partibus maiōre quam terrā tōtā, ōrō ut mē dē illō plūs doceās.
5. Sorōri meae nōmen est magnā apud omnēs glōriā; eam oculis tuis in litore errantem saepe vīdistī.
6. Pectoribus mōrēs tot sunt quot in orbe figūrae.
7. Negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmāni posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare.
8. Dis nūllam mihi culpam esse scientibus, audāx metū carēbō.
9. Patriā liberā, mē ad mortem nōn offeram.
10. His ā sociō dictīs, rēx primā lūce respondit libertātem civibus ā dis oblātā et datā esse.
11. Quot hominēs tot sententiae.
12. Tot militibus urbem oppūgnantibus, rēginae coniūnx pecūniae quam rēgni melior custōs erat.
13. Quam ob rem per tōtum oppidum rūmor huius generis ībit?
14. Rēx prōvinciae fūgisse cum multā pecūniā dicitur ac sē contulisse Rōmam.
15. a) Rēge crūdēli Rōmam fugiente, aliī civēs gaudiō clāmānt, aliī timōre tacent.
b) Rēge crūdēli Rōmam fugiente, aliī civēs gaudiō clāmābant, aliī timōre tacēbant.
16. Amicitia ex sē et propter sē petenda est.
17. Illō discēdente, rēs agī coepta est.

18. Militibus sē in fugam dantibus, utrum dūcentium laudāre coeperās?
Neutrum!
19. Ūnō signō datō, cum gaudiō invēnimus cīvibus quantum audāciae tantum
satis esse.
20. Suffer! Multō graviōra tulisti.
21. Nūlli servitūtem sī dēfers, honestus habēris.
22. Multi mōre illō atque exemplō vivunt.
23. Quī nihil sciunt timent fortūnam; sapientēs ferunt. [**fortūna**, -ae, F., 'chance,
fortune']
24. Hostēs maximārum virium, cum suis sociis iūcti, oppidum oppūgnāvērunt.
25. Multis prō oppidō pūgnantibus, incolae nōn timēbant.
26. Vir bonus optimisque artibus clārus cīvibus auxiliō fuit.
27. Custōdibus maiōre opus erit et arte et diligentia si malōs ex urbe pellent.
28. Amicus certus in rē incertā vidētur.
29. Mōrēs cōnferte et artēs si filiōs maximae virtūtis esse optābitis. [**cōnferte**,
here, 'apply, bestow']
30. Cōnsiliis certiōribus factis, dōna ā rēge abstulit et ea ad suam patriam attulit.
31. Miles militi iūctus amicitia bellum magnā cum virtūte gessit.
32. Illi custōdī, virō magnā audāciā et mōribus clārō, coniūnx auxiliō vēnit, nē
urbis insidiis hostium dēlētae dāmnārētur. Eum enim monuit cōnsilia
hostium urbī mala esse.
33. Pars gentis domum cum sapientia fūgit; pars propter audāciam bellum
gessit.
34. In tōtō orbe terrārum numquam vidimus tot errantēs quot in hāc urbe
vivunt. Alius bellum gentibus fortiōribus inferre optat, alius sine arte et
auxiliō tōtum orbem terrārum superāre; nūllus homō negat sē omnia
(facere) posse.
35. Hostibus foedere iūctis, ūnus ex pūgnantibus negābat sē bellum gerere
umquam optāvisse; sibi gerendum fuisse viribus atque mōribus malis rēgis.
36. Quam ob rem magister docuit errantem verbis sapientium in lūcem
dūcendum esse?
37. Signō datō, fēminae maximā fōrmā sē in fugam contulērunt.
38. Bellō cōnfectō, multa nōbis superātis relāta sunt.
39. Tantō periculō in urbem illātō, lacrimae incolārum mātrem certiōrem
fēcērunt ruinae. Māter fēmina erat clārā virtūte, sed tanta mala sufferre
nōn poterat.
40. Ferrum ē manibus interfecti cēpit, ēlātumque dēferēbat in pectus alterius
inimici ā dextrā ad sē venientis.
41. Quantā maximē poterat vī superāvit.
42. Hominibus ācriter pūgnantibus, rēx ardentēs oculōrum orbēs in moenia
torsit. [**torqueō**, -ēre, **torsī**, **tortus**, 'turn, turn away, twist']

II.

1. Because the people of this city have been conquered by the Roman soldiers, the woman's husband, bold in character, is going to try to flee in order that he may seek (ask for) aid from the guardians of other towns.
2. On account of the treaty by which they were joined to the Romans, the husband learned that the guardians did not desire to give aid to any people.
3. He alone will not be able to flee to the shore because of fear; the others have already boldly set sail.
4. In the whole world I have never seen with my eyes a man of such (so) great skill.
5. Since he has done these things, his name will be borne by the winds to all lands in order that people may praise him.

III. Readings

- A. THE LOVE OF DAPHNE AND APOLLO (selections slightly adapted from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I, taken from lines 452–3, 495, 502–3, 533–4, 539)

Primus amor Phoebī¹ Daphnē² quem dedit saeva Cupīdinis³ ira. Sic⁴ deus in flammās abiit;⁵ fugit ōcior⁶ aurā⁷ illa levi.⁸ Ut⁹ canis¹⁰ in vacuō¹¹ leporem¹² arvō¹³ cum¹⁴ vidit, et ille praedam¹⁵ pedibus petit, hic salūtem; sic⁴ deus et virgō.¹⁶ Est hic spē celer,¹⁷ illa timōre.

¹ Phoebus, -ī, M., the god Apollo ² Daphnē (nom. sing. F.), 'Daphne', a girl's name
³ Cupīdō, -inis, M., 'Cupid' ⁴ sic (adv.), 'in this way' ⁵ abeō (ab + eō), 'go away'
⁶ ōcior, ōcius, 'swifter' ⁷ aura, -ae, F., 'breeze' ⁸ levis, leve, 'light' ⁹ ut (adv.), 'as'
 (here, correlative with sic below) ¹⁰ canis, canis, M. or F., 'dog' ¹¹ vacuus, -a, -um, 'empty'
¹² lepus, leporis, M., 'rabbit' ¹³ arvum, -ī, N., 'field' ¹⁴ cum (conj.), 'when'
¹⁵ praeda, -ae, F., 'loot' ¹⁶ virgō, virginis, F., 'maiden' ¹⁷ celer, celeris, celere, 'swift'

- B. Dido, after berating Aeneas for intending to abandon her, falls silent and leaves him to think about her plight (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.388–91):

His medium dictis sermōnem¹ abrumpit² et aurās³
 aegra⁴ fugit sēque ex oculis āvertit⁵ et aufert,
 linqūens⁶ multa metū cūctantem⁷ et multa parantem⁸
 dicere.

¹ sermō, -ōnis, M., 'speech' ² abrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'break off' ³ aura, -ae, F., 'air, breeze, outdoors' ⁴ aeger, aegra, aegrum, 'sick, wretched' ⁵ āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, 'turn away' ⁶ linqūō, -ere, liquī, lictus, 'desert' ⁷ cūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 'delay' (this is a verb of the first conjugation; the finite forms are all passive, but with active meanings; see Unit Eleven, section A, "Deponent Verbs") ⁸ parō (1), 'prepare'

C. Catullus 87:

Nūlla potest mulier¹ tantum² sē dicere amātam
 Vērē, quantum² ā mē Lesbia³ amāta mea es:
 Nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit unquam in foedere tanta
 Quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperta meā est.⁴

¹ mulier, mulieris, F., 'woman' ² tantum . . . quantum (adv.), 'so much . . . as' ³ Lesbia, -ae, F., 'Lesbia', the literary name of Catullus's mistress ⁴ reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, 'find, discover'

D. Seneca speaks about the advantages of clemency and about the difference between the king and the tyrant (Seneca, *Dē Clēmētiā* i.xi.4–xii.2, slightly adapted):

Clēmētiā¹ ergō² hominēs nōn tantum³ honestiōrēs sed tūtiōrēs sunt. Clēmētia¹ ōrnāmentum⁴ imperiōrum est simul⁵ et certissima salūs. Metū hostium sublātō,⁶ hominēs maximae clēmētia¹ sine cūrā possunt vivere. Cūr⁷ enim rēgēs cōnsenēscunt⁸ filiisque trādunt rēgna, tyrannōrum⁹ exsecrābilis¹⁰ ac brevis¹¹ potestās¹² est? Quid interest¹³ inter¹⁴ tyrannum⁹ ac rēgem? — Tyranni⁹ voluptāte¹⁵ saeviunt,¹⁶ rēgēs nōn nisi ex causā¹⁷ ac necessitāte.¹⁸

“Quid ergō?² Nōn rēgēs quoque¹⁹ interficere solent?”²⁰ Sed ubi²¹ id fieri²² pūblica ūtilitās²³ persuadet;²⁴ tyrannis⁹ saevitia²⁵ cordi²⁶ est. Tyrannus⁹ autem ā rēge factis distat,²⁷ nōn nōmine; nam et Dionysius²⁸ maior iūre²⁹ meritōque³⁰ praeferrī³¹ multis rēgibus potest. Et L. Sullam³² tyrannum⁹ appellārī³³ quid prohibet,³⁴ cui factorum malōrum finem fēcit inopia³⁵ hostium? Qui umquam tyrannus⁹ avidius³⁶ hūmānum³⁷

¹ clēmētia, -ae, F., 'clemency' ² ergō (adv.), 'therefore' ³ tantum (adv.), 'only'
⁴ ōrnāmentum, -ī, N., 'decoration, ornament' ⁵ simul (adv.), 'at the same time' ⁶ tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, 'remove' ⁷ cūr (adv.), 'why' ⁸ cōnsenēscō, -ere, cōsensui, --, 'grow old' ⁹ tyrannus, -ī, M., 'absolute ruler, tyrant'; tyrannōrum exsecrābilis . . . est: the clause is antithetical to the previous one; assume the ellipsis of sed, 'but' ¹⁰ exsecrābilis, -e, 'deserving punishment, deadly' ¹¹ brevis, -e, 'brief' ¹² potestās, -tātis, F., 'power' ¹³ interest (impersonal verb), '(it) is different'; quid interest?, 'what is the difference?' ¹⁴ inter (prep. + acc.), 'between' ¹⁵ voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure' ¹⁶ saeviō, -īre, -īī, -ītus, 'rage, be fierce' ¹⁷ causa, -ae, F., 'cause, reason' ¹⁸ necessitās, -tātis, F., 'necessity' ¹⁹ quoque (adv.), 'also' ²⁰ soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, 'be accustomed' ²¹ ubi (adv.), 'when' ²² fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'happen, be done' ²³ ūtilitās, -tātis, F., 'advantage' ²⁴ persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, 'persuade' ²⁵ saevitia, -ae, F., 'cruelty' ²⁶ cor, cordis, N., 'heart'; cordi, 'for the purpose of the heart,' i.e., 'dear' ²⁷ distō (1), 'differ, be distinct' ²⁸ Dionysius, -ī, M., a man's name; Dionysius was the famous tyrant of Sicily ²⁹ iūs, iūris, N., 'right, law' ³⁰ meritum, -ī, N., 'merit, desert' ³¹ praeferrō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, 'prefer (to)' (+ dat.) ³² L. Sulla, -ae, M., 'Lucius Sulla', the name of a Roman dictator whose policy it was to have all his enemies killed ³³ appellō (1), 'call, name'; appellārī, the infinitive is used here with prohibet to express prevention: 'What prohibits L. Sulla to be called . . .'; 'What keeps L. Sulla from being called . . .' ³⁴ prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, 'prohibit' ³⁵ inopia, -ae, F., 'lack' ³⁶ avidē (adv.), 'eagerly' ³⁷ hūmānus, -a, -um, 'human'

sanguinem³⁸ bibit³⁹ quam ille, quī septem⁴⁰ milia⁴¹ civium Rōmānōrum interficī iussit et, ubi²¹ in vicinō⁴² sedēns⁴³ audivit conclāmātiōnem⁴⁴ tot milium⁴¹ sub gladiō gementium,⁴⁵ exterritō⁴⁶ senātū,⁴⁷ “Nē haec conclāmātiō,”⁴⁴ ait, “vobis sit cūrae, patrēs cōscriptī;⁴⁸ sēditiōsi⁴⁹ pauculi⁵⁰ meō iussū⁵¹ interficiuntur”? Hoc vērū erat; pauci⁵² Sullae³² vidēbantur.

³⁸ sanguis, -inis, M., ‘blood’ ³⁹ bibō, -ere, bibī, --, ‘drink’ ⁴⁰ septem (indeclinable adj.), ‘seven’ ⁴¹ milia, -ium, N., ‘thousands’ ⁴² vicinum, -i, N., ‘vicinity’ ⁴³ sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, ‘sit’ ⁴⁴ conclāmātiō, -ōnis, F., ‘loud shouting’ ⁴⁵ gemō. -ere, -uī, -itus, ‘groan, lament’ ⁴⁶ exterreō (ex + terreō), ‘frighten thoroughly’ ⁴⁷ senātus, -ūs, M., ‘senate’ ⁴⁸ cōscribō (com- + scribō), ‘enroll’; patrēs cōscriptī, ‘senators’ ⁴⁹ sēditiōsus, -a, -um, ‘seditious, turbulent’ ⁵⁰ pauculi, -ae, -a, ‘a very few’ ⁵¹ iussū (abl. sing.), ‘by order’ ⁵² paucī, -ae, -a, ‘few’

UNIT ELEVEN

A. Deponent Verbs

Many verbs in Latin have only passive forms, but active meanings. These verbs are called *deponents* (**dē** + **pōnō**, 'put aside'; i.e., they *put aside* their active forms).

precor, -āri, precātus sum	beg, request
vereor, -ēri, veritus sum	fear
ingredior, -i, ingressus sum	enter, proceed
experior, -iri, expertus sum	try, experience

PRESENT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precor	precer
I entreat	
precāris (-re)	precēris (-re)
you entreat	
precātur	precētur
he entreats	
precāmur	precēmur
we entreat	
precāmini	precēmini
you entreat	
precantur	precentur
they entreat	

IMPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābar	precārer
I used to entreat	
precābāris (-re)	precārēris (-re)
you used to entreat	
...etc.	...etc.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is built onto what would have been the entire

present *active* infinitive. This is especially important for third conjugation verbs where the present passive infinitive looks so different from the active one. Thus:

ingrederer
ingrederēris (-re)
...etc.

FUTURE TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābor	
I shall entreat	<i>None</i>
precāberis (-re)	
you will entreat	
...etc.	

PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus sum	precātus sim
I have entreated	
precātus es	precātus sis
you have entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus eram	precātus essem
I had entreated	
precātus erās	precātus essēs
you had entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus erō	<i>None</i>
I shall have entreated	
...etc.	

INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precārī to entreat	--
Perfect	precātus esse to have entreated	--
Future	precātūrus esse to be going to entreat	--

NOTE that, while the present and perfect infinitives have *passive forms* but *active meanings*, the future infinitive is *active in form and meaning*.

PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precāns entreating	--
Perfect	precātus, -a, -um having entreated	--
Future	precātūrus, -a, -um going to entreat	precandus, -a, -um having to be entreated

NOTE that the following irregularities occur in the participial system:

1. Deponents *do have* a present participle which is active in *form* and *meaning*.
2. Deponent verbs have a perfect *active* participle; other verbs have only a perfect *passive* participle.
3. Deponent verbs have *both* a future *active* and a future *passive* participle in *form* and *meaning*.

The present and future participles and the future infinitive, then, pose the only problem in the deponent system. In all other instances, remember: **DEPONENTS HAVE PASSIVE FORMS, BUT ACTIVE MEANINGS.**

B. Semi-Deponent Verbs

Several verbs have active forms and meanings in the present system, but passive forms with active meanings in the perfect system. These are called *semi-deponents*.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, 'dare'

audeō	I dare
audēbam	I used to dare
audēbō	I shall dare
ausus sum	I have dared
ausus eram	I had dared
ausus erō	I shall have dared

C. Subjective and Objective Genitive

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the object of this verbal idea is called the *objective genitive*, and the noun that is its subject is called the *subjective genitive*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

amor patriae	love of the native land (i.e., what is loved is the native land; patriae is the object of the verbal idea understood in amor)
metus belli	fear of war (i.e., what is feared is war)
cupidus (-a, -um) pecūniae	desirous of money (i.e., what the subject desires is money)

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

fēminae amor patriae	the woman's love of her native land (i.e., the woman is doing the loving and therefore fēminae is the <i>subjective genitive</i> ; the woman [subject] loves her native land [object])
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

Hominis sapientis est librōs legere.	It is (<i>the mark</i>) of a wise man to read books. Reading books is <i>the mark of a wise man</i> .
Bonī est deōs laudāre.	It is (<i>the mark</i>) of a good [man] to praise the gods.

E. Infinitive As Subject

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun. In the sentences given as examples under section D above, **legere** and **laudāre** are the subjects of the verb **est**.

Vidēre est crēdere. *To see* is to believe; *seeing* is believing.

Infinitives used in this way may be modified by adjectives which will appear in the neuter.

Librōs legere bonum est.	To read books is (<i>a good thing</i>); reading books is <i>good</i> ; it is <i>a good thing</i> to read books.
Scimus bonum esse librōs legere.	We know that to read books is (<i>a good thing</i>); we know that reading books is (<i>a good thing</i>).

In the last example, the infinitive **legere** is the subject accusative of the infinitive **esse**.

F. The Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō*

volō, velle, voluī --	wish, want, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --	be unwilling (contracted from nōn volō)
mālō, mālle, mālui, --	prefer (contracted from magis volō)

All three verbs actually belong to the third conjugation. The only irregularities which occur are in the present tense, as illustrated below. The imperfect subjunctive is formed on the irregular infinitives **velle**, **nōlle**, **mālle**. The imperfect and future indicatives as well as the present participle (except for **mālō**, which lacks one) are formed on the stems **vole-**, **nōle-**, and **māle-**, as if the verbs had regular infinitives (**★volere**, **★nōlere**, **★mālere**).

PRESENT TENSE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
volō	volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	velim velis velit velimus velitis velint	volēns
nōlō	nōlō (= nōn volō) nōn vīs nōn vult nōlumus (= nōn volumus) nōn vultis nōlunt (= nōn volunt)	nōlim (= nōn velim) nōlis (= nōn velis) nōlit (= nōn velit) nōlimus (= nōn velimus) nōlitis (= nōn velitis) nōlint (= nōn velint)	nōlēns
	IMPERATIVE: nōli (sing.); nōlite (pl.)		
mālō	mālō (= magis volō) māvis (= magis vīs) māvult (= magis vult) mālumus (= magis volumus) māvultis (= magis vultis) mālunt (= magis volunt)	mālim (= magis velim) mālis (= magis velis) mālit (= magis velit) mālimus (= magis velimus) mālitis (= magis velitis) mālint (= magis velint)	--

UNIT ELEVEN — VOCABULARY

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	think, believe, judge
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum	dare
cēna, -ae, F.	dinner
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try, attempt
cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.	consul
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust (+ dat.)
cupidus, -a, -um	desirous, eager, fond of (+ gen.)

divitiae, -ārum, F. pl.	riches, wealth
dux, ducis, M. or F.	leader, guide
experior, experiri, expertus sum	try, put to the test, experience
familia, -ae, F.	household, family
fateor, fatēri, fassus sum	confess
cōfiteor, cōfitēri, cōfessus sum	confess
flūmen, -inis, N.	river, running water
forum, -i, N.	open space, market place, public square
gradior, gradi, gressus sum	step, walk
aggredior, -i, -gressus sum	go to, approach
ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum	go out, go away
ingredior, -i, -gressus sum	go into, enter, advance, begin
prōgredior, -i, -gressus sum	go forth, advance, proceed
hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum	urge, encourage (+ <i>ut or nē</i> and subjunctive)
imperātor, -ōris, M.	commander, general
iuvenis, -is, M. or F.	youth, young person
loquor, loqui, locūtus sum	speak, talk
mālō, malle, māluī, --	prefer, choose rather
minor, mināri, minātus sum	jut forth, threaten
moriōr, mori, mortuus sum	die
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum	be born, descend from
nāvis, -is, -ium, F.	ship
neglegō, -ere, neglēxi, neglēctus	disregard, neglect
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --	be unwilling, wish . . . not
ōrātor, -ōris, M.	speaker
parēns, parentis, M. or F.	parent
patior, pati, passus sum	suffer, endure, allow
pauper, pauperis	poor
praemium, -i, N.	reward
precor, precāri, precātus sum	beg, request
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum	set forth, set out, start
scelus, sceleris, N.	wicked deed, crime
sequor, sequi, secūtus sum	follow
servō (1)	save, preserve, rescue, keep
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum	be accustomed, be customary
statua, -ae, F.	statue
ut (conj. + indicative)	as, when
ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum	use, enjoy, experience (+ <i>abl.</i>)
vereor, verēri, veritus sum	reverence, fear, dread
volō, velle, voluī, --	wish, want, be willing

UNIT ELEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 'dare', and **soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, 'be accustomed', are semi-deponents. In other words, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, the forms are active with active meanings, but in the perfect tenses, the forms are passive with active meanings: **audēbis**, 'you will dare'; **ausus erat**, 'he had dared'.

Crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus is really an intransitive verb which means 'be trusting' and governs the dative case; however, we often translate it as 'believe, trust': **Cui crēdis?** 'To whom are you trusting?; Whom do you trust?'

The adjective **cupidus, -a, -um**, 'desirous, eager, fond of', governs an objective genitive: **Cupidus imperii erat**, 'He was desirous of power'.

Dīvitiae, dīvitiārum is a feminine plural noun meaning 'riches, wealth'.

Dux, ducis, 'leader, guide', may be either masculine or feminine; it is related to the verb **dūcō**, 'lead'.

Fateor, fatērī, fassus sum and its compound **cōnfiteor, cōnfitērī, cōnfessus sum** both mean 'confess' and may be used interchangeably.

There is a third conjugation verb **fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus**, 'flow'; when the abstract noun ending **-men, -minis** is added to the stem, the noun **flūmen, flūminis**, N., 'the result of flowing', that is, 'river', results.

Gradior, gradī, gressus sum, 'step, walk', when compounded gives the stem **-gredior**. Thus, **aggredior (ad + gradior)**, 'go to, approach'; **ēgredior**, 'go out'; **ingredior**, 'go into, enter, advance, begin'; **prōgredior**, 'go forth, proceed, advance'.

The verb **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, 'urge, encourage', can introduce an indirect command: **Amicōs hortātī sumus nē huic hominī crēderent**, 'We urged our friends not to believe this man'.

Imperātor, imperātōris, M., is 'the one who does the ordering', namely, 'commander, general'; **ōrātor, ōrātōris**, M., is 'one who does the begging or pleading', and then, 'speaker'.

Iuvenis, iuvenis, M. or F., 'youth, young man', is not an i-stem; neither is **parēns, parentis**, M. or F., 'parent', although according to the rules for i-stems, one would expect them to be.

Loquor, loquī, locūtus sum is 'speak, talk'; **dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus** is 'say, tell'.

Volō, velle, voluī, --, 'wish, want, be willing', is an irregular verb of the third conjugation. It has two compounds: (**nōn + volō**) **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --**, 'be unwilling, wish...not', and (**magis + volō**) **mālō, mälle, mālūī, --**, 'prefer, choose rather'. Literally **mālō** means 'want more'; it may govern an accusative and an ablative of comparison: **Virtūtemne fōrmā māvis?**, 'Do you want courage more than beauty?; Do you prefer courage to beauty?'

Minor, minārī, minātus sum means 'jut forth'. Since something that juts forth may be threatening, this verb also means 'threaten' and when it does it may govern the dative case. One can either threaten something in the accusative case to the person or thing in the dative or threaten the person or thing in the dative with something in the ablative case:

Dux mortem impiis minātus est. The leader threatened the impious men
or with death.

Dux impiis morte minātus est.

Morior, morī, mortuus sum, 'die', has as its future participle **moritūrus, -a, -um**.

Nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 'be born, descend from', has as its past participle **nātus**. Thus, **nātus, nātī, M.**, is 'the one born *or* descended', thus, 'son'.

Neglegō is a compound of **legō (nec + legō, 'not choose')**; it means 'disregard, neglect'. Like **intellegō**, **neglegō** has an **-x-** in the perfect active stem, **neglēxī**.

Patior, patī, passus sum has the meanings 'suffer, endure, allow'. The English word "patient" is a good reminder of the meanings of this verb: a patient in a hospital may be suffering and a person who is patient endures the things that happen to him; when one speaks of Christ's passion, he means His suffering. The words "patient" and "passion" are also good reminders of the stems of this verb.

Servō, a first conjugation verb, does *not* mean 'serve' (**serviō, servīre** does); it means 'save, preserve, rescue, keep'.

Notice that **ut** may be used with the indicative; when it is so used, it means 'as' or 'when'.

Ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 'use, enjoy, experience', is one of several deponents which govern the ablative case: **Ferrō ūsus es?**, 'Did you use your sword?' The most common of the other deponents which govern the ablative are: **fruor, fruī, fructus sum**, 'enjoy'; **fungor, fungī, fūctus sum**, 'perform'; **potior, potirī, potitus sum**, 'gain possession of'; and **vēscor, vēscī, --**, 'eat'.

NOUN SUFFIXES

The suffixes **-tor (M.)**, **-trix (F.)** added to the stem of a verb produce a noun. Each means 'one who'. Thus:

inceptor, -ōris, M., 'one who begins, beginner'

auditor, -ōris, M., 'one who hears, hearer'

scriptor, -ōris, M., 'one who writes, writer'

spectātor, -ōris, M., and **spectātrix, -trix, F.**, 'one who looks on, spectator'

āctor, -ōris, M., 'one who does, doer, performer'

liberātor, -ōris, M., 'one who frees, liberator'
amātor, -ōris, M., and **amātrix**, **amātrīcis**, F., 'one who loves, lover'
inventor, -ōris, M., and **inventrix**, **inventricis**, F., 'one who finds, discoverer'
cantor, -ōris, M., and **cantrix**, **cantrīcis**, F., 'one who sings, singer'
victor, -ōris, M., and **victrix**, **victrīcis**, F., 'one who conquers, conqueror'
petitor, -ōris, M., 'one who seeks, seeker', also, 'a candidate for office'

By analogy, there are **viātor**, -ōris, M., and **viātrix**, **viātrīcis**, F., 'traveler' (from **via**, 'way' + **-tor** or **-trix**).

The endings **-ulus**, **-a**, **-um**; **-olus**, **-a**, **-um** (after a vowel); **-culus** **-a**, **-um**; **-ellus**, **-a**, **-um**; **-illus**, **-a**, **-um** are diminutive endings which may also be used to show affection, pity, or contempt.

puellula, **-ae**, F., 'a little girl'
filiolus, **-i**, M., 'a little son'
homunculus, **-i**, M., 'a little man; a poor, weak man'
libellus, **-i**, M., 'a little book'
ocellus, **-i**, M., 'a little eye'
Graeculus, **-i**, M. (**Graecus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'Greek'), 'a no-good Greek'
sigilla, **-orum**, N. pl. (**signum**, **-i**, N., 'sign'), 'little figures, little images'

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes **-eus**, **-ius**, **-ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**, **-ēius**, **-cus**, **-ticus** added to the stem of a noun (or, sometimes, an adjective) mean 'made of' or 'belonging to':

fēmineus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to a woman, feminine'
aureus, **-a**, **-um**, 'made of gold, golden'
patrius, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to a father, paternal'
rēgius, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to a king, royal'
montānus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to a mountain, mountain-'
urbānus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to the city, city-'
terrēnus, **-a**, **-um**, 'made of earth, earthen'
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to another, strange'
dīvīnus, **-a**, **-um**, (**dīvus**, **-i**, M., 'god'), 'belonging to a deity, divine'
marīnus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to the sea, marine'
plēbēius, **-a**, **-um** (**plēbs**, **plēbis**, F., 'common people'), 'belonging to the common people, plebeian'
cīvicus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to or of a citizen, civic'
bellicus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to or of war, war-'
domesticus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to the house, domestic'
viāticus, **-a**, **-um**, 'belonging to a road, belonging to a journey'

The suffixes **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ilis** added to the stem of a noun mean ‘pertaining to’:

- aquālis**, -e, ‘pertaining to water’
- corporālis**, -e, ‘pertaining to the body, corporeal’
- populāris**, -e, ‘pertaining to the people’
- cōsulāris**, -e, ‘pertaining to a consul, consular’
- hostīlis**, -e, ‘pertaining to an enemy, hostile’
- cīvilis**, -e, ‘pertaining to citizens, civil, civic’

The suffixes **-ter (-tris)**, **-ester (-estris)**, **-timus**, **-nus**, **-urnus**, **-ternus** mean ‘belonging to’ (especially of times and places):

- equester**, **equestris**, **equestre** (eques, ‘horseman, knight’), ‘belonging to a horseman, equestrian’
- campester**, **campestris**, **campestre**, ‘of *or* pertaining to a level field’
- terrestris**, -e, ‘of *or* belonging to the earth’
- maritimus**, -a, -um, ‘of *or* belonging to the sea’
- fīnitimus**, -a, -um, ‘bordering upon, neighboring’
- meridiānus**, -a, -um (meridiēs, ‘noon’), ‘of *or* belonging to mid-day’
- nocturnus**, -a, -um, ‘of *or* belonging to the night’
- diūturnus**, -a, -um, ‘of long duration, lasting’
- hesternus**, -a, -um (heri, ‘yesterday’), ‘of *or* pertaining to yesterday’

UNIT ELEVEN — DRILL

I. Deponent Verbs

Translate indicatives, participles, infinitives, and imperatives; fully identify subjunctives.

- cōnor**, -ārī, **cōnātus sum** try, attempt
- fateor**, -ērī, **fassus sum** confess
- sequor**, **sequī**, **secūtus sum** follow
- experior**, -irī, **expertus sum** try, experience

1. **cōnātur**; **fatētur**; **sequitur**; **experitur**
2. **cōnābātur**; **fatēbātur**; **sequēbātur**; **experiebātur**
3. **cōnābitur**; **fatēbitur**; **sequētur**; **experietur**
4. **cōnāta est**; **fassa est**; **secūta est**; **experta est**
5. **cōnāta erat**; **fassa erat**; **secūta erat**; **experta erat**
6. **cōnāta erit**; **fassa erit**; **secūta erit**; **experta erit**
7. **cōnētur**; **fateātur**; **sequātur**; **experiatur**
8. **cōnārētur**; **fatērētur**; **sequerētur**; **experirētur**
9. **cōnāta sit**; **fassa sit**; **secūta sit**; **experta sit**

10. cōnāta esset; fassa esset; secūta esset; experta esset
11. cōnāre; fatēre; sequere; experire
12. cōnāminī; fatēminī; sequiminī; experiminī
13. cōnārī; fatērī; sequī; experiri
14. cōnātus esse; fassus esse; secūtus esse; expertus esse
15. cōnātūrus esse; fassūrus esse; secūtūrus esse; expertūrus esse
16. cōnāns; fatēns; sequēns; experiēns
17. cōnātus; fassus; secūtus; expertus
18. cōnātūrus; fassūrus; secūtūrus; expertūrus
19. cōnandus; fatendus; sequendus; experiendus
20. capit
21. sequitur
22. cēpērunt
23. secūtī sunt
24. iubētis
25. fatēminī
26. iubēminī
27. fassī estis
28. iussī estis
29. iussus, -a, -um
30. fassus, -a, -um
31. laudāns
32. cōnāns
33. laudās
34. laudāris
35. cōnāris

II.

Translate the following sentences and give the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Fuga **servōrum** eō tempore relāta est.
2. Timōrem **supplicis** intellegere temptāvimus.
3. Laus **maiōrum** nostrōrum maxima erat.
4. Nātōs amōrem **virtūtis** docēbant.
5. **Gentis** crūdēlis est bellum gentī amicae **inferre**.
6. **Virī** pessimī semper fuit patriam **trādere**.
7. Amōrem **coniugis** amōre fēminae alterius māluērunt.
8. Factumne crūdēle negāre vis?
9. Viri infēlicis est **velle** plūs quam satis.
10. Custōs **templī** fugere nōlet.

UNIT ELEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Arbitror cōsulem mori; Arbitror cōsulem mortuum esse; Arbitror cōsulem moritūrum esse.
2. Scelusne cōfītēri ausus es?
3. Ōrātōremne loqui patiēmīni?
4. Imperātor militēs hortābātur ut prōgrederentur.
5. Si iuvenēs nōbis noxam minentur, eōs magnopere vereāmur.
6. Auxilium precāns, supplex ad āram ruit.
7. Flūmen secūtī, ad oppidum maximum vēnimus.
8. Crēdidistīne parentēs quam primum profectūrōs esse?
9. Ducēs nāvibus nōn ūsī erant.
10. Pauperēs hortātī sumus nē ē prōvinciā ēgredi cōnārentur.

UNIT ELEVEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Si ūtāmur nāvibus sociōrum, quam primum fugere possīmus.
2. Nōlī arbitrārī nostra scelera esse peiōra tuīs.
3. Imperātor sequentēs hortātus est nē odium iuvenum verērentur.
4. Fatēbāmur nōs proficīscī cōnātōs esse ut iungerēmus manum hostium.
5. Patientēs multās poenās quam primum Rōmam prōgredi voluimus.
6. Ēgrediēns primā lūce, familia ad flūmen quod erat altissimum prōgressa sē ulterius gradī nōlle dixit. [**ulterius**, comparative adv., 'farther']
7. Dux fassus est sibi esse metum cōsulum.
8. Domīni servīs ut sibi labōrārent maximā cum diligentiā minārī solītī sunt.
9. Est fortis virī neglegere perīcula quae minantur.
10. Est cōsulis velle morī prō patriā.
11. Bonum est velle prō amātis pati.
12. Si cōnāns servāre vītam cōsulis moriāris, tui civēs fortissimum factum laudent et ut statua pōnātur in forō hortentur.
13. Sapientēs crēdere ausī sunt hominem cupidum divitiārum saepe errāre.
14. Datūrus cēnam iuvenibus sequentibus sē, imperātor deōs precārī coepit ut familiam servārent. Dixit sē quam primum domum prōgressūrum esse.
15. Fassus est sē nātum esse pauperibus parentibus quibus amor suī esset maximus.
16. Aenēās ē deā nātus est, ut aiant, et multa proficīscēns Troiā ad Italiā expertus est. [**Aenēās**. -ae, M., proper name of a Roman hero]
17. Amor patriae est boni civis.

18. Dulce est scire amicōs mala nōn pati, ut scīs.
19. Cupidus magnōrum praemiōrum orātor dē sceleribus cum duce proficiscentium nōn loquētur.
20. Imperātor sequentibus nē vereantur hostēs minantēs igni et ferrō imperāre solet.
21. Nōn est pati meum.
22. Audē gradī cum virtūte et audāciā, omnibus cūrīs neglētīs.
23. Iuvenēs pauperēs in vīllam nocte ingredi māluērunt nē ā familiā eam incolentī vidērentur.
24. Servāre pecūniam nōn est facile ūllō tempore.
25. Alii divitiīs bene ūti volunt, alii ob mōrēs nōlunt.
26. Saxa ingentia ē flūmine minantia periculō fuērunt nāvibus.
27. Servi nōs aggredientēs viam ad villam mōnstrāvērunt.
28. Sī in hāc cūrā vita mihi pōnenda sit, pōnam spem salūtis in amōre fidēque tuī.
29. Quid tibi pecūniā opus est, sī ūti nōn potes? [**quid**, *here*, 'why']
30. Quod vult habet qui velle quod satis est potest.
31. Antīquus populus sōlem esse deum maximum arbitrāns eum precātus est auxilium. Cōfessus est sibi auxilium multum opus esse.
32. Satis est superāre inimicum, pessimum est perdere.
33. Ūnus deus poenam affert, ut multī cōgitant.
34. Viri boni est nōlle facere noxam.
35. Qui superāri sē patitur prō tempore superat.
36. Sine morā ex urbe ēgredimini! Nōlite vōs ūnā hōrā in urbe inveniri pati!
37. Quam ob rem scelera illius generis ferre solēbās? Nōs in hāc familiā neque tanta mala ferre soliti sumus neque ferēmus.
38. Imperātore multa locūtō, militēs fassi sunt sē parum mortem verēri sed bene scire sē omnēs mori nōn posse; sibi opus esse mala atque pericula pati ut omnis orbis terrārum sē cum gaudiō laudāret dicēs malum propter audāciam hōrum virōrum ē terrā pulsum esse.
39. Crēdidistis iuvenēs quōs ad vōs vocāvissētis maximā esse diligentīā et omnibus rēbus ūsūrōs esse ut Rōmam sē cōferrent. Nihil eis autem fidei erat; male crēdidistis.
40. Cupidī divitiārum et primā luce Rōmam proficiscentēs, pauperēs deōs precābantur nē salūte, pecūniāque et omnibus bonis in urbe caritūri essent. Spēs hominibus est saepe caecissima!
41. Parentum malōrum est iuvenēs neglegere; sapientēs semper illum parentem hortātī sunt ut filiī ei cūrae sint.
42. Tot mala sum passus quot in caelō sīdera sunt.
43. Fatēmur scelera maxīmae audāciae in nostrā rē pūblicā hōc annō facta esse Quōrum quod simile in tōtō orbe terrārum factum?

II.

1. Having dared to enter the neglected house, the children fled as soon as possible when the guardian approached.
2. Desirous of money, the young men attempted crimes, nor did they fear the punishment which threatened.
3. Famous consuls, don't use all your wealth in order that you may fill the forum with statues of impious men.
4. The soldiers confessed that the commander's hope of safety had saved lives in a time of great danger.
5. Loving both (one's) enemies and (one's) friends is the mark of a distinguished man.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.5.10, 6.15, 8.20, 11.27

In Marcus Tullius Cicero's consulship, Lucius Catiline planned a conspiracy. Cicero found out about it and, after exposing Catiline's plans to the senate, drove him into exile.

Quae cum¹ ita² sint, Catilina,³ perge⁴ quō⁵ coepisti, ēgredere aliquandō⁶ ex urbe; patent⁷ portae: proficiscere. Nōbiscum versārī⁸ iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam.⁹ Quotiēns¹⁰ tū mē dēsīgnātum,¹¹ quotiēns¹⁰ vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! Nihil agis, nihil adsequeris¹² neque tamen cōnārī ac velle dēsistis.¹³ Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilina,³ liberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium¹⁴ sī hanc vōcem exspectās.¹⁵ proficiscere. Etenim¹⁶ sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārīor, sī cūncta¹⁷ Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica sic¹⁸ loquitur: "Marce Tulli, quid agis? Tūne eum quem esse hostem comperisti,¹⁹ quem ducem belli futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī¹⁵ imperātōrem in castris²⁰ hostium sentis, auctōrem sceleris, principem²¹ coniūratiōnis,²² ēvocātōrem²³ servōrum et civium perditōrum, exire²⁴ patiēre, ut abs²⁵ tē nōn ēmissus²⁶ ex urbe sed immissus²⁷ in urbem esse videātur?"

¹ cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'since' ² ita (adv.), 'so' ³ Catilina, -ae, M., a man's name ⁴ pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctus, 'continue' ⁵ quō (adv.), '(to) where' ⁶ aliquandō (adv.), 'now at last' ⁷ pateō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'stand open' ⁸ versor (1), 'live' ⁹ sinō, -ere, sivi, situs, 'allow' ¹⁰ quotiēns (adv.), 'how many times' ¹¹ dēsīgnātus, -a, -um, 'elect' (understand cōnsulem) ¹² adsequor (ad + sequor), 'gain' ¹³ dēsistō, -ere, dēstiti, dēstitus, 'stop (from)' (+ infinitive) ¹⁴ exsilium, -ī, N., 'exile' ¹⁵ exspectō (1), 'wait for' ¹⁶ etenim (conj.), 'and indeed' ¹⁷ cūnctus, -a, -um, 'all' ¹⁸ sic (adv.), 'in this way' ¹⁹ comperiō, -īre, comperi, compertus, 'learn' ²⁰ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ²¹ princeps, principis, M., 'the leading man' ²² coniūratiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy' ²³ ēvocātor, -ōris, M., 'a summoner, one who calls out (to arms)' ²⁴ exeō, -īre, -ivi, -itus, 'go out' ²⁵ abs = ab ²⁶ ēmittō (ē + mittō), 'send out' ²⁷ immittō (in + mittō), 'send against' (+ in and the accusative)

B. Martial 2.21:

Bāsia¹ dās aliīs, aliīs dās, Postume,² dextram.
Dīcis, ‘Utrum māvīs? Ēlige.’³ Mālo manum.

¹ *bāsiūm*, -ī, N., ‘kiss’ ² *Postumus*, -ī, M., a man’s name ³ *ēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, ‘choose’

C. Martial 10.8:

Nūbere¹ Paula² cupit³ nōbīs, ego dūcere⁴ Paulam²
nōlō: anus⁵ est. Vellem, sī magis esset anus.⁵

¹ *nūbō*, -ere, *nūpsī*, *nuptus*, ‘marry’ (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying ² *Paula*, -ae, F., a woman’s name ³ *cupiō*, -ere, -ivī, -itus, ‘wish’ ⁴ *dūcō*, *here*, ‘marry’; used for a *man* marrying (understand in *mātrimōnium*) ⁵ *anus*, -ūs, F., ‘an old woman’; *here*, used as an adjective, ‘old’; *magis* is used with it to give a comparative force

D. Martial 9.10:

Nūbere¹ vis Priscō:² nōn mīror,³ Paula;⁴ sapistī.⁵
Dūcere⁶ tē nōn vult Priscus:² et ille sapit.⁵

¹ *nūbō*, -ere, *nūpsī*, *nuptus*, ‘marry’ (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying ² *Priscus*, -ī, M., a man’s name ³ *mīror* (1), ‘wonder’ ⁴ *Paula*, -ae, F., a woman’s name ⁵ *sapiō*, -ere, -ivī, --, ‘be sensible’; *sapistī* is a contraction for *sapivistī* (see Unit Eighteen, Section D) ⁶ *dūcō*, *here*, ‘marry’ (understand in *mātrimōnium*); used for a *man* marrying.

E. Martial 8.27:

Mūnera¹ quī tibi dat locuplētī,² Gaure,³ senīque,⁴
sī sapis⁵ et sentis, hoc tibi ait ‘Morere’.

¹ *mūnus*, *mūneris*, N., ‘gift’ ² *locuplēs*, *locuplētis*, ‘wealthy’ ³ *Gaurus*, -ī, M., a man’s name ⁴ *senex*, *senis*, ‘old’ ⁵ *sapiō*, -ere, *sapivī*, --, ‘be sensible’

F. Martial 2.87:

Dīcis amōre tuī bellās¹ ardēre puellās,
quī faciem² sub aquā, Sexte,³ natantis⁴ habēs.

¹ *bellus*, -a, -um, ‘beautiful’ ² *faciēs*, -ēī, F., ‘face’ ³ *Sextus*, -ī, M., a man’s name ⁴ *natō* (1), ‘swim’

G. Martial 12.78:

Nil in¹ tē scripsī, Bithŷnice.² Crēdere nōn vis
et iūrāre³ iubēs? Mālo satisfacere.⁴

¹ *in*, *here*, ‘against’ ² *Bithŷnicus*, -ī, M., a man’s name ³ *iūrō* (1), ‘swear’ ⁴ *satisfaciō* (*satis* + *faciō*), ‘make amends’

H. Martial 5.83:

Insequeris,¹ fugiō; fugis, insequor; ¹ haec mihi mēns est:
velle tuum nōlō, Dindyme,² nōlle, volō.

¹ *insequor* (in + *sequor*), 'pursue' ² *Dindymus*, -ī, M., a man's name

I. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 2.10 (adapted):

Amicō mortuō, graviter angī¹ nōn amici est, sed sē ipsum² amantis est.

¹ *angī* (present passive infinitive), 'to suffer torment' ² *ipsum* (acc. sing. M.), intensifies sē, translate sē ipsum 'his very self'

J. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.24.83:

In tranquillō¹ tempestātem² adversam³ optāre dēmentis est.

¹ *tranquillum*, -ī, N., 'calm' ² *tempestās*, -tātis, F., 'weather' ³ *adversus*, -a, -um, 'unfavorable'

K. Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.198–9 and 202–3:

Ō socii (neque enim ignāri¹ sumus ante malōrum),
Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque² finem.

. . .

. . . revocāte³ animōs⁴ maestumque⁵ timōrem
mittite; forsan⁶ et haec ōlim⁷ meminisse⁸ iuvābit.⁹

¹ *ignārus*, -a, -um, 'unaware (of)' (+ gen.) ² *quoque* (adv.), 'also' ³ *revocō* (re- + *vocō*), 'call back, recover' ⁴ *animus*, -ī, M., 'spirit' ⁵ *maestus*, -a, -um, 'gloomy'
⁶ *forsan* (adv.), 'perhaps' ⁷ *ōlim* (adv.), 'at some time' ⁸ *memini*, *meminisse* (defective verb), 'remember' ⁹ *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvi*, *iūtus*, 'please, help, delight'

L. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.6.18:

Omnēs enim trahimur¹ et dūcimur ad cognitiōnis² et scientiae³
cupiditātem,⁴ in quā excellere⁵ pulchrum putāmus,⁶ lābi⁷ autem, errāre,
nescire,⁸ dēcipi⁹ et malum et turpe¹⁰ dūcimus.

¹ *trahō*, -ere, *trāxi*, *tractus*, 'attract' ² *cognitiō*, -ōnis, F., 'knowledge' ³ *scientia*, -ae, F., 'knowing' ⁴ *cupiditās*, -tātis, F., 'desire' ⁵ *excellō*, -ere, *excellui*, *excelsus*, 'excel'
⁶ *putō* (1), 'think' ⁷ *lābor*, *lābi*, *lāpsus sum*, 'slip' ⁸ *nesciō* (ne + *sciō*), 'not know'
⁹ *dēcipiō* (*dē* + *capiō*), 'deceive' ¹⁰ *turpis*, -e, 'disgraceful'

REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN

Review of Syntax

1. Custōdis ācerrimī est hospitēs monēre dē illis oppidō ignem minantibus ut sē in fugam quam primum cōnferant.
(predicate genitive; infinitive as subject; **quam** with superlative)
2. Imperium illius ducis nunc minus est quam prius; nec habet apud hās gentēs satis auctōritātis. [**auctōritās**, **-tātis**, F., 'influence']
(comparison with **quam**; partitive genitive)
3. Timentī auxilium ferre solēmus nē metū male ūtātur. Hominēs enim clārissimae fāmae metū saepe scelera crūdēliōra faciunt.
(instrumental ablative with **ūtor**; genitive of description; ablative of cause)
4. Multī virī suā sententiā sunt fēlicēs; illi autem multōrum saepe domini sunt, sed plūrium servī.
(objective genitive)
5. Multis ante diēbus, lūce erant clāriōra nōbis tua cōnsilia; nunc ea intellegere nōn possumus.
(ablative of degree of difference; ablative of comparison)
6. Oppidō captō, ōrātōrem. virum clārissimō patre maiōribusque, superantēs interficere ausi sunt (audēbunt).
(ablative absolute; ablative of description; semi-deponent verb)
7. His dictis, hoc genus verbōrum patī nōlēbant, sed magnus eis metus erat eōrum loquentium.
(ablative absolute; objective genitive)
8. Dis inimicis, multō maxima pars civium bellum tamen gessit.
(ablative absolute; ablative of degree of difference; partitive genitive)
9. Sī in hāc cūrā auxilium opus erit, pōnam spem salūtis tōtius in amōre fidēque vestrī.
(objective genitives)
10. Omnibus bonis optimum est plūs glōriae quam divitiārum habēre.
(partitive genitive; comparison with **quam**; infinitive as subject)
11. Servi ē villis ēgrediuntur, noctemque tōtam itinere factō, in alterum oppidum primā lūce venient.
(ablative absolute)

12. Nam arbitrāti sunt sē dis superis cūrae esse.
13. Cognitīs imperātōris rēbus, Rōmae gaudium magnum erat.
(ablative absolute)
14. Nostrā ūtere amicitīā ut volēs.
(instrumental ablative with ūtor)
15. Tū hortāris ut fidē sim magnā et spem habeam salūtis.
(ablative of description; objective genitive)
16. Amōre Iovis multae fēminae iram Iunōnis passae sunt.
(ablative of cause; subjective genitives)
17. Aliī huic sōli crēdidērunt, alii ūlli crēdere nōluērunt.
18. Quīnque ē supplicibus erant simillimī viris quōs sciō.
19. Virī magnae virtūtis saepe laudābuntur ā populō honestis mōribus.
(genitive of description; ablative of description)
20. Mihi nihil est tam cārum quam amicus amātus.
21. Quam primum nāvēs ācerrimōs militēs facillimē auferent.
(quam with superlative)
22. Quid cōsulī est cārius quam patria? Cōsulī nihil est cārius patriā.
(comparison with quam; ablative of comparison)
23. Tibi ūni, nōn ei, loquī mālō.
24. Quid cōsiliī cēpistī?
(partitive genitive)
25. Multō melius quam frāter legit.
(ablative of degree of difference)

UNITS 9–11: Self-Review A

I.

Change to the plural, giving all possibilities:

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. difficiliori | 3. nullius | 5. loqueris |
| 2. maius | 4. offert | |

II.

Translate indicative forms; identify subjunctives. Then change each form to the simple future tense, retaining person, number, and voice.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. passi sunt | 3. neglexeris | 5. solitus es | 7. malim |
| 2. hortantur | 4. proficiscebar | 6. volumus | |

III.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

1. Sentio illum virum omnibus temporibus fortiter vivere cui timor mortis gravissimus non sit.
 - a) What is the syntax of **mortis**?

2. Ullusne nostrum dicere potest se suam vitam quam sapientissimē egisse?
 - a) Syntax of **nostrum**?
3. Illi cives qui sunt multo fortiores quam nos corpore credunt se hostes e sua civitate expellere vi posse.
 - a) Give an alternative construction in Latin for **quam nos**.
4. Imperator militi dicit bellum quo urbem servaverint longius multis diebus fuisse quam illud in monte.
 - a) Syntax of **diebus**?
5. Dicit maiores multo maiora et meliora fecisse quam ea quae iuvenes facturi sint.
6. Fassi sunt hunc consulem multo melius se civitati gessisse quam illum.
 - a) Change **fassi sunt** to the future tense.
7. Dis volentibus, consilia iuvenum crudeliorum nostrae saluti minari conantium delebuntur.
 - a) Syntax of **volentibus**?
8. Cupidi divitiarum est bonos mores invidiā et audaciā negligere et in scelera se conferre.
 - a) Syntax of **cupidi**?
 - b) Syntax of **divitiarum**?
 - c) Syntax of **negligere**?
9. Bello illato, hospes magni studii et minimi timoris ad moenia venit et homines portas servantes hortatus est ut quam primum proficiscerentur. "Nisi," ait, "profecti eritis, magna scelera patiemini."
 - a) Syntax of **studii**?
 - b) Change **venit** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s) in the sentence.
 - c) Rewrite the conditional sentence in Latin as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
10. Matris odio belli, filius, iuvenis bonis moribus, pugnare neque vult neque audet.
 - a) Syntax of **matris**?
 - b) Syntax of **odio**?
 - c) Syntax of **moribus**?
 - d) Change **vult** and **audet** to the future perfect tense.

IV.

Translate:

Noli arbitrari me alii longiores litteras scribere, nisi unus ex amicis ad me multa scripsit ad quem arbitror me respondere debere; nihil enim habeo quod scribere possum, et hōc tempore nihil difficilius facio. Ad te et ad nostram filiam non

possum sine plurimis lacrimis et magnā curā scribere; vos video miserrimas esse, quae mihi cariores vitā sitis.

(part of a letter written by Cicero to his wife; adapted)

Answer Key — UNITS 9–11: Self-Review A

I.

1. difficiliōribus
2. maiōra
3. nūllōrum, nūllārum
4. offerunt
5. loquimini (present tense); loquēmini (future tense, if the original -e- was long)

II.

1. they have suffered, they suffered, they did suffer; **patientur**
2. they encourage, they are encouraging, they do encourage; **hortābuntur**
3. you will have neglected; perfect subjunctive second person singular active; **neglegēs**
4. I was setting forth, I used to set forth, I kept on setting forth; **proficīscar**
5. you were accustomed, you have been accustomed; **solēbis**
6. we wish, we are wishing, we do wish; **volēmus**
7. present subjunctive, first person singular active; **mālam**

III.

1. I feel that that man to whom the fear of death is not very severe lives bravely at all times.
 - a) objective genitive
2. Is anyone of us able to say that he has conducted his own life as wisely as possible?
 - a) partitive genitive
3. Those citizens who are far (much) stronger (stronger by far/much) than we in body believe that they are able to (can) drive the enemies out of their state by force.
 - a) nōbis (ablative of comparison)
4. The general says to the soldier that the war by means of which they saved the city has been (was) many days longer than that (war) on the mountain.
 - a) ablative of degree of difference (longer by many days)
5. He says that his ancestors did (have done) (much) greater and better things (by far) than those which the young men are about to do.

6. They confessed that this consul had conducted himself for the state (much) better (by far) than that (consul).
 - a) *fatēbuntur*
7. With the gods willing, the plans of the rather cruel young men (youths) trying (who are trying) to threaten our safety will be destroyed.
 - a) ablative absolute (with present participle)
8. It is the mark of a man (characteristic of one) desirous of wealth (riches) to neglect (his) good character because of envy and boldness and to take himself into (resort to) crimes.
 - a) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)
 - b) objective genitive
 - c) infinitive, subject of *est* ('neglecting good character is [the mark] of one desiring riches')
9. When the war had been brought on (inflicted), the host of great eagerness and very little fear came to the walls and urged the men saving (who were saving) the gates that they set out as soon as possible. "If you do not set out," he says. "you will suffer (endure) great crimes."
 - a) genitive of description
 - b) *Bellō . . . moenia veniet et . . . hortābitur ut . . . proficiscantur.*
 - c) "Nisī," ait, "proficiscerēmini, magna scelera paterēmini." (imperfect subjunctives)
10. Because of the hatred of his mother (his mother's hatred) for war, the son, a young man of good character, neither wishes nor dares to fight.
 - a) subjective genitive
 - b) ablative of cause
 - c) ablative of description
 - d) *voluerit*; *ausus erit* (Since this is a semi-deponent verb, the perfect system has passive forms but active meanings.)

IV.

Do not think that I write a longer letter (a rather long letter) to another unless one of my friends, (to) whom I think that I ought to answer, has written many things to me; indeed, I have nothing which I am able to write, and at this time I do nothing more difficult (with more difficulty). I am not able to write to you and to our daughter without very many tears and great anxiety; I see that you are very wretched, you who are dearer to me than life.

UNITS 9–11: Self-Review B

I.

- A. Give the comparative and superlative forms of each of the following adjectives and adverbs:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. crudelis | 3. validus | 5. magnopere | 7. diu | 9. bene |
| 2. bonus | 4. malus | 6. magnus | 8. parvus | 10. multum |

B. Change the following from the singular to the plural, retaining person, mood, and voice:

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. ferris | 3. contuli | 5. volebat |
| 2. offers | 4. malit | |

II.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

- Magister plus boni in vita quam mali esse nos credere voluit.
 - Give the syntax of **boni**.
- Milites multo fortius in hoc bello quam in illo pugnaverunt quod quam optimis consiliis usi sunt.
 - Syntax of **multo**?
 - Syntax of **consiliis**?
- Spem gloriae esse consulis bonis moribus nostri maiores crediderunt.
 - Syntax of **gloriae**?
 - Syntax of **consulis**?
 - Syntax of **moribus**?
- Cupidior divitiarum pio, impius malae familiae scelera quam facta honesta maluit.
 - Syntax of **pio**?
 - Give an alternate way of phrasing the first three words of the sentence.
 - Syntax of **familiae**?
- Melius est laudare quam laudari.
 - Syntax of **laudare**?
- Litteris quam primum scriptis, unus ex amicis nos curā laudari detulit.
 - Syntax of **scriptis**?
 - Syntax of **curā**?
 - Give an alternate way of expressing **curā**.
- Unius invidiā tota gens magnopere passa est.
 - Syntax of **unius**?
- Postquam dulciores hospites parum laudatos esse sensimus, nos eis maximas gratias acturos esse arbitrati sumus. [**gratias agere**, 'to thank']

III. Translate:

- How many days after me do you want to set out to Rome?
- When the general died, the young people, raving and very unlike (their) cruel enemies, fell because of their boldness and because no aid was offered.

Answer Key — UNITS 9–11: Self-Review B

I.

- A.
1. crūdēlior, crūdēlius; crūdēlissimus, -a, -um
 2. melior, melius; optimus, -a, -um
 3. validior, validius; validissimus, -a, -um
 4. peior, peius; pessimus, -a, -um
 5. magis; maximē
 6. maior, maius; maximus, -a, -um
 7. diūtius; diūtissimē
 8. minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um
 9. melius; optimē
 10. plūs; plūrimum
- B.
1. feriminī
 2. offertis
 3. contulimus
 4. mālint
 5. volēbant

II.

1. The teacher wished us to believe that there was more good in life than bad.
 - a) partitive genitive
2. The soldiers fought more bravely by far (much more bravely) in this war than in that one because they used the best possible plans (as good plans as possible).
 - a) ablative of degree of difference
 - b) ablative of instrument after the verb **ūtor**
3. Our ancestors believed that hope of glory was the mark of a consul of good character.
 - a) objective genitive
 - b) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)
 - c) ablative of description
4. More desirous of riches than a pious man, the impious man of bad family preferred crimes rather than honorable deeds.
 - a) ablative of comparison
 - b) cupidior divitiārum quam pius
 - c) genitive of description
5. To praise is better than to be praised (praising is better than being praised; it is better to praise than to be praised).
 - a) infinitive as subject
6. When (since, after) the letter had been written as soon as possible, one of

our friends reported that we were (being) praised because of (our) concern.

a) ablative absolute; the participle modifies the subject **litteris**

b) ablative of cause

c) *propter cūram or ob cūram*

7. Because of the envy of one man, the entire race suffered greatly.

a) subjective genitive

8. After we perceived that the rather sweet (pleasant) guests had not been praised enough, we thought that we would give very great thanks to them.

III.

1. *Quantis diēbus post mē Rōmam proficīsci vīs?*

2. *Imperātōre mortuō iuvenēs, dēmentēs et crūdēlium hostium (crūdēlibus hostibus) dissimillimī audāciā (ob audāciam/propter audāciam) cecidērunt et quod nūllum auxilium oblātum est (offerēbātur).*

UNIT TWELVE

A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive occurs most frequently in Latin in subordinate clauses, but some independent uses are found. All of these express notions connected with the basic definition of the subjunctive given in Unit One.

1. JUSSIVE (*iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus*, 'command') AND HORTATORY (*hortor* (1), 'urge') SUBJUNCTIVES

The present subjunctive is used to express a command or an exhortation.

veniat! let him come! command (JUSSIVE)
veniāmus! let's come! exhortation (HORTATORY)

The jussive sense occurs mainly in the third person; the hortatory in the first. The negative is introduced by *nē*.

Nē hoc faciat! Let him not do this!

2. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur.

Haec crēdās. You would (could, might) believe these things.

For present or future potentiality, the present (sometimes the perfect) subjunctive is used. This type of subjunctive is allied to future less vivid conditions (see Unit Two); in fact, one might conceive of it as the apodosis (concluding clause) of such a condition, the protasis (if-clause) of which has been suppressed:

Frātre[m] meī miserēri nōlim I would not wish (my) brother to pity me
(sī mē videat). (if he should see me).

OBSERVATION:

The verb *miserēor* takes the genitive case to express its object; hence the objective genitive *meī*.

Dīcās eum hominem bonum esse. You would say (i.e., if you could) that he is a good man; you might say that he is a good man.

Past potentiality is expressed with the imperfect subjunctive.

Crēderēs eum hominem bonum esse. You would have believed that he was a good man; you might have believed that he was a good man.

The negative of the potential subjunctive is introduced by **nōn**.

3. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The present and imperfect subjunctives may be used to *deliberate* about a course of action. This is frequently used in a rhetorical question (i.e., a question which is asked for effect, but which does not demand an answer).

Quid faciam? What am I to do? What should I do?

Quid facerem? What was I to do? What should I have done?

The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

4. OPTATIVE (**optō** (1), 'desire, wish') SUBJUNCTIVE

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut** (negative **utinam nē** or **nē**).

Utinam veniat! Would that he may come; I wish he would come; if only he would come!

Utinam nē veniat! Would that he may not come; I wish he would not come; if only he would not come!

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time (cf. present contrary-to-fact conditions) and the pluperfect for past time (cf. past contrary-to-fact conditions).

Utinam veniret! Would that he were coming; I wish he were coming; if only he were coming! (but he is not; the wish is incapable of fulfillment, or contrafactual)

Utinam vēnisset! Would that he had come; I wish he had come; if only he had come! (but he did not; the wish is incapable of fulfillment, or contrafactual)

B. Direct Questions

Questions are sometimes introduced by interrogative words: **quis?**, 'who?'; **quid?**, 'what?'; **quandō?**, 'when?'; **quō?**, **quō modō?**, 'how?'; **cūr?**, **quam ob rem?**, 'why?'; **unde?**, 'from where?'; etc. If no interrogative word is used, the

enclitic **-ne** is frequently attached to the introductory word in order to indicate that a question is approaching.

Venīsne mēcum? Are you coming with me?

When the answer “yes” is expected, the question is introduced by the word **nōnne**.

Nōnne venīs mēcum? You are coming with me, aren't you? (answer “yes” expected)

When the answer “no” is expected, the question is introduced by the word **num**.

Num venīs mēcum? You aren't coming with me, are you? (answer “no” expected)

Double questions are introduced by the particles **utrum** (or **-ne** or no introductory particle at all) . . . **an**, ‘whether . . . or’.

Utrum mēcum venīs an cum (Whether) are you coming with me or stay-
eō manēs? ing with him?

Servusne es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

Servus es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

C. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

I know *who you are*. Direct Question: Who are you?

The noun clause “who you are” serves as the object of the word (“know”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word (“who”) and, in Latin, its verb (“you are”) would be in the subjunctive.

We wondered *what gifts you brought*. Direct Question: What gifts did you bring?

The noun clause “what gifts you brought” serves as the object of the word (“wondered”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word (“what”) and, in Latin, its verb (“you brought”) would be in the subjunctive.

What you are doing bothers me. Direct Question: What are you doing?

The noun clause “what you are doing” serves as the subject of the word (“bothers”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative

word (“what”) and, in Latin, its verb (“you are doing”) would be in the subjunctive.

In direct speech, these clauses would have been direct questions with their verbs in the indicative or the deliberative subjunctive.

DIRECT QUESTIONS:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Quid agēs?	What will you do?
Unde vēnistī?	Where have you come from?
Quam ob rem mē spectās?	Why are you looking at me?
Spectāsne mē?	Are you looking at me?
Venīsne mēcum an cum eō manēs?	Are you coming with me or staying with him?
Servusne es an nōn?	Are you a slave or not?
Quid faciam?	What am I to do? What should I do?

In order to turn these direct questions into the indirect form, we must review the rules for sequence of tenses (Unit Three, section G). The primary tenses in the indicative are the present, future, future perfect, and perfect (when translated using the English auxiliary verbs “has, have”). The secondary tenses in the indicative are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. The subjunctive tenses in each sequence are illustrated in the examples below.

NOTE: While indirect questions follow the rules for sequence of tenses, a periphrastic form is frequently used to denote future time.

	MAIN CLAUSE		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	
	PRIMARY SEQUENCE:	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME	PAST TIME
Dicō, Rogō		quid faciam	quid factūrus sim	quid fēcērim
I say, I ask		what I am doing	what I shall do	what I did
	SECONDARY SEQUENCE:			
Dixī, Rogāvī		quid facerem	quid factūrus essem	quid fēcissem
I said, I asked		what I was doing	what I would do	what I had done

Now, we shall turn the direct questions above into the indirect form:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Rogō quid sentiam.	I ask what I feel.
Rogāvī quid sentirem.	I asked what I felt (was feeling).
Expōnam quid sentiam.	I shall explain what I feel.
Sciō quid sentiam.	I know what I feel.
... etc.	

D. The Adjective *īdem, eadem, idem*, 'same'

The forms are essentially those of *is*, *ea*, *id*, with **-dem** added as a suffix. The differences are as follows:

1. In the nominative masculine singular, the **s** of *is* drops out and the **i** becomes long.
2. In the nominative and accusative neuter singular, the **d** of *id* disappears.
3. A final **-m** is changed to **-n** before **-dem**.

Thus, the paradigm:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N. —	M.	F.	N.
<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eīdem (īdem)</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>
<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (īsdem)</i>

As with the demonstrative adjectives you have learned, the forms may also be used as pronouns.

E. The Pronoun and the Adjective *quīdam*, 'certain'

The pronoun **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, and the adjective **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** are essentially the same in declension as the relative pronoun, with **-dam** added as a suffix. The only exceptions are:

1. The pronoun has **quid-** for the neuter singular, nominative and accusative.
2. **-m** before **-dam** becomes **-n**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam</i> (<i>quoddam</i>)	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam</i> (<i>quoddam</i>)	<i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

F. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, 'self, very'

This adjective, which may also be used as a pronoun, declines like *ille*, except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular which have **-um** instead of **-ud**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Ipse is used to *intensify* the word it modifies or stands for.

Ipse veniam.	I <i>myself</i> shall come.
Virum ipsum vidit.	He saw the man <i>himself</i> ; he saw the <i>very</i> man.
Expōnam quid ipse sentiam.	I shall explain what I <i>myself</i> feel.
Ipse sēcum loquitur.	He <i>himself</i> speaks with (to) himself.

G. The Demonstrative Adjective *iste, ista, istud*, 'that (of yours)'

This adjective (also used as a pronoun) declines like **ille**. It frequently carries a pejorative or derogatory tone.

Iste amicus venire nōn potest. *That* friend (of yours) can't come; *that damned* friend can't come.

UNIT TWELVE — VOCABULARY

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	receive, accept; hear
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	take back, regain, recover
sē recipere	withdraw, take oneself
an (conj.)	or (introducing the second part of a double question); whether (introducing a single indirect question)
aura, -ae, F.	breeze, wind, air
comes, comitis, M. or F.	companion
cōpia, -ae, F.	abundance, supply; pl., troops
cūr (adv.)	why, for what reason
dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus	select, choose, gather
exorior, -irī, exortus sum	rise, arise, appear, start
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	set forth, expose, explain
horridus, -a, -um	horrible, rough
hostīlis, -e	of an enemy, hostile
ibi (adv.)	there, then
idem, eadem, idem	same
immortālis, -e	immortal, everlasting

ipse, -a, -um	self, very
iste, ista, istud	that (of yours), that (with pejorative sense)
iussum, -ī, N.	command, order (the abl. sing. is iussū , 'by order')
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus or remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus	remain
misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum	pity (+ gen.)
modus, -ī, M.	way, manner, limit; kind
quō modō	in what way, how
necne (conj.)	or not (generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing an nōn in the direct question)
nesciō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus	not know, be ignorant
nōnne (adv.)	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes")
num (adv.)	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "no"); whether (in an indirect question)
occultē (adv.)	secretly
ops, opis, F.	power, strength; pl., resources, wealth
paucī, -ae, -a	few
poscō, -ere, poposci, --	beg, demand
quamdīū (adv.)	how long
quandō (conj. and adv.)	when; since
quārē (adv.)	by what means, why; and therefore
quia (conj.)	because
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)	a certain one, a certain thing
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)	certain
rogō (1)	ask (for)
sors, sortis, -ium, F.	lot, destiny
tamquam (adv.)	as if, as, as it were
tandem (adv.)	at last, at length
ubi (adv.)	where, when
unde (adv.)	from where
utinam (adv.)	I wish!, would that!, if only!
utrum (conj.)	whether
utrum . . . an	} whether . . . or
-ne . . . an	
-- . . . an	
utrum . . . an nōn	} whether . . . or not (in direct double questions)
-ne . . . an nōn	
-- . . . an nōn	

utrum . . . necne	} whether . . . or not (in indirect double questions)
-ne . . . necne	
-- . . . necne	

UNIT TWELVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Accipiō (**ad** + **capiō**) in addition to meaning ‘receive, accept’ means ‘hear’, that is, to receive information through the ears.

Sē recipere means ‘to take oneself, withdraw’ to a place: **Servī sē ad deōrum ārās recēpērunt**, ‘The slaves took themselves to the altars of the gods’.

Comes, comitis, M. or F., is formed as though from **comeō** (**com-** + **eō**), ‘go with’; **comes** is the person who goes with someone, ‘companion’.

Cōpia, cōpiae, F., means ‘abundance, supply’ in the singular, but in the plural, it means ‘troops’.

Dēligō, ‘select, choose, gather’, is a compound of **legō**; it has **dēlēgī** for the third principal part.

Exorior is a compound of **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, ‘rise’. **Exorior** in addition to meaning ‘rise, arise’ means ‘appear, start’. The East is called the Orient because that is where the sun rises.

Expōnō is a compound of **pōnō**; it means ‘set forth, expose, explain’.

Horridus, -a, -um is derived from a verb meaning ‘to bristle’; therefore, it means ‘rough, shaggy’, and thus, ‘horrible’.

Idem, eadem, idem is simply a compound of **is, ea, id** plus **-dem**, ‘exactly’; it means ‘same’. The abbreviation *ibid.* stands for **ibīdem**, ‘exactly there’.

Immortālis, -e means literally ‘not’ (**im-**) ‘pertaining to’ (**-ālis**) ‘death’ (**-mort-**), thus, ‘immortal, everlasting’.

Ipse, -a, -um, declined like **ille, -a, -ud** (except for the neuter singular nominative and accusative) intensifies the word it modifies and means ‘self, very’. As in Irish literature one is accustomed to read “Oh, ’tis himself” or “Himself is coming”, so in Latin one may find **Ipse venit**, ‘He himself is coming’, or **Ipsum volui!**, ‘The very man I wanted!’

Iste, -a, -ud (declined like **ille, -a, -ud**) frequently (but not always) has a pejorative sense and means ‘that (of yours)’ or ‘that rotten no-good’.

Iussum is simply the fourth principal part of the verb used as a noun, ‘the ordered thing’ or ‘order, command’. Note that the ablative singular is **iussū**.

Maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus and **remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsus**, may be used interchangeably; the **-a-** lengthens in the perfect stem before **-ns-**. Both verbs mean ‘remain’. Do not confuse the singular present active imperative **manē**, ‘remain’, with **māne** (adverb), ‘early in the morning’.

The deponent verb **misereor**, **miserēri**, **miseritus sum**, ‘pity’, governs the genitive case: **Meī miserēris?**, ‘Do you pity me?’

Nesciō is simply **ne** + **sciō**, ‘not know, be ignorant’.

Nōnne and **num** introduce a question. **Nōnne** is used when the answer “yes” is expected, **num** when the answer expected is “no”. **Num** may also introduce an indirect question and then it means ‘whether’.

Ops, **opis**, F., in the singular means ‘power, strength, help’, but in the plural it means ‘resources, wealth’.

Pauci, **paucae**, **pauca** is an adjective found in the plural; it means ‘few’.

Quia and **quod**, ‘because’, may be used interchangeably.

Quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** is the pronoun, ‘a certain’; **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is the adjective, ‘certain’: **Sī quiddam mihi dicās, dē eō taceam**, ‘If you should tell me a certain thing, I would be silent about it’; **Quoddam dōnum quod placēbit tibi habēō**, ‘I have a certain gift which will please you’.

Rogō, ‘ask’, a first conjugation verb, means not only to ask a question, but also to make a demand on someone: **Tē rogāvī nē id facerēs**, ‘I asked you that you not do that’. Note that this verb can take two objects: **Tē pecūniam rogō**, ‘I ask you for money’.

Tamquam means ‘as if, as, as it were’, and **tandem** means ‘at last, at length’. In order not to confuse these two words, it might be helpful to remember that a bicycle built for two is called a tandem (humorously, from the idea of length: the second person sits behind, not next to, the other.)

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF VERBS

The suffixes **-āx**, **-idus**, **-ulus**, or **-ivus** added to the stem of a verb express the action of the verb as a quality or tendency.

audāx, **-ācis**, ‘bold, courageous’

efficāx, **-ācis** (**efficiō**, ‘effect, bring about’), ‘effectual, efficient’

fugāx, **-ācis**, ‘apt to flee, swift’

loquāx, **-ācis**, ‘talkative’

pūgnāx, **-ācis**, ‘fond of fighting, combative, warlike’

timidus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘fearful, afraid’

vīvidus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘containing life, living’

bibulus, **-a**, **-um** (**bibō**, **-ere**, ‘drink’), ‘drinking readily’

crēdulus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘easy of belief, credulous’

garrulus, **-a**, **-um** (**garrīō**, **-īre**, ‘chatter’), ‘chattering, talkative’

querulus, **-a**, **-um** (**queror**, **querī**, ‘complain’), ‘full of complaints, complaining’

tremulus, **-a**, **-um** (**tremō**, **-ere**, ‘tremble’), ‘shaking, trembling’

āctīvus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘active, practical’

captīvus, -a, -um, 'taken prisoner, captive'
fugitīvus, -a, -um, 'fleeing away, fugitive'
nātīvus, -a, -um, 'imparted by birth, innate'

The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** added to the stem of a verb express passive qualities, and occasionally active ones.

agilis, -e, 'easily moveable, nimble'
docilis, -e, 'easily taught'
amābilis, -e, 'worthy of love, lovely'
crēdibilis, -e, 'worthy of belief, credible'
mīrābilis, -e (mīror, -ārī, 'wonder at, admire'), 'wonderful, admirable'
mūtābilis, -e, 'changeable'
spectābilis, -e, 'visible, worth seeing'

The suffixes **-bundus** and **-cundus** added to the stem of a verb denote a continuance of the act or quality expressed by the verb.

errābundus, -a, -um, 'wandering about'
furibundus, -a, -um (furō, -ere, 'be mad'), 'raging, mad'
moribundus, -a, -um, 'dying'
irācundus, -a, -um (irāscor, irāscī, 'be angry'), 'irritable, angry'
fācundus, -a, -um (for, fārī, fātus sum, 'speak'), 'speaking with ease, eloquent'

This verb **for** contains the stem **fā-** which is found in such words as **fāma**, 'talk, report, reputation'; **fābula, -ae, F.**, 'narration, story, play'; **fātum, -ī, N.**, 'prediction, destiny, fate'; **fās**, indeclinable, 'right, proper, allowable (according to divine dictate)'; **nefās**, indeclinable, 'unlawful, abominable', in other words, so bad it cannot be talked about. The Romans divided their calendar between **fāstī** and **nefāstī** — days (lucky and unlucky) on which business was allowed or not allowed to be conducted. An infant, literally, is a child who does not (**in-**) speak; once he begins speaking he is no longer technically an infant.

UNIT TWELVE — DRILL

1. Respondeāmus!
2. Utinam domini respondeant (respondissent)!
3. Ad quem locum accēdāmus?
4. Intellegēbat quam ob rem nōn respondissēmus.
5. Utrum iubēbis eum fortem esse an ego iubēbō?
6. Opprimarne ab hostibus an in fugam mē cōnferam?
7. Nōnne tibi hoc opus placet? Num illud opus clārissimum tibi placet?
8. Sine morā ille auctor librum cōficiat!

9. Nē ōderimus malum nōs opprimentem. Nōn sentiō eum scire quid agat.
10. Pater scit quantā pecūniā nōbis opus sit.
11. Frāter ā nōbis quaesivit quanta sīdera in caelō essent.
12. Omnia superat amor: et nōs cēdāmus amōri.
13. Omnēs intellegere voluērunt quid hominēs illius temporis tanta mala passi essent. [**quid**, 'in respect to what thing, why']
14. Sciunt hunc ōrātōrem cupidissimum dīvitiārum esse.
15. Sciunt quam ob rem hic ōrātor cupidissimus sit (fuerit) dīvitiārum.
16. Cognōscēbātis ducem mortem minātūrum esse illis patriam neglegentibus.
17. Cognōscēbātis quam ob rem dux mortem minātūrus esset illis patriam neglegentibus.
18. Cognōscēbāmus quō tempore dux mortem illis patriam neglegentibus minātus esset; numquam intellegēmus quam ob rem patriam neglēxerint.
19. Utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnāberis an nōn?
20. Quaerimus utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnātūra sis necne.
21. Quidam homō habēbat ferrum quoddam. Dedit cuidam. Is post dedit alii. Is erat idem qui primus habēbat.
22. Nē iuveni cupidō dīvitiārum crēdant.
23. Utinam scelus nē cōnfītērēris.
24. Periculum eō tempore neglegāmus.
25. Nāvēs eius generis nōn vidērēs.
26. Domum hōc tempore ingrediantur?
27. Iste amicus mē ōdit.
28. Idem amicus mē ōdit.
29. Amicus ipse mē ōdit.
30. Istum frātrem vīdi.
31. Eundem frātrem vīdi.
32. Frātrem ipsum vīdi.
33. Frātrem ipse vīdi.

UNIT TWELVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Comitēs nostri iussa tandem expōnant.
2. Utinam cōpiae hostilēs sē ex patriā recipiant.
3. Parentum iuvenis occultē miserear?
4. Nē domi maneāmus.
5. Pauca eius modi acciperēs.
6. Num negās tē haec nescivisse?
7. Utrum melius est haec dēligere an illa?

8. Nōnne comitēs vestri opēs recipient?
9. Tē sequi velimus an hortēmur ut dux sine nōbis proficiscātur?
10. Utinam nē hoc audeās; magnopere patiāris.

UNIT TWELVE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Omnēs eidem militēs qui prō rē publicā pūgnāvērunt magna pecūniae praemia ā civibus accipiant.
2. Rogāvimus quaedamne cibum an pecūniam an auxilium posceret.
3. Dī immortalēs salūtem, opēs et imperium civibus comitibusque dent!
4. Iuppiter! Mihi vitam longam sine gravī mortis timōre dēs!
5. Crēdāsne oppidum, ā cōpiis fortibus per tōtam diem nōn captum, nocte ā parvā infēlicium civium manū occultē dēlētum esse?
6. Quārē iste tandem mei misereātur?
7. Nōn vellem istōs hominēs, omnēs agrōs dēlentēs, nōbiscum remanēre.
8. Quid faciam, civēs? Quid dicam istīs qui civitātem dēlēre volunt? Quō modō rem publicam servāre possim? Quandō exoriēmini? Ubi civitās oppūgnābitur? Exoriāmini! Rem publicam et civēs servāte!
9. Scisne Marcum? Num cum eō venis? Nōnne cibum fers?
10. Utinam militēs hostilēs nē veniant ut oppidum dēleant!
11. Utinam eī, quōrum cōpiae fortiōrēs quam illae hostium oppūgnantium sunt, patriam nostram servent!
12. Utinam dux ipse paucis hōris veniat ut hostēs moenia ā civibus mūnita oppūgnantēs et capientēs dēleat.
13. Iste comes civēs rogāvit unde vēnissent, et quam ob rem ad ārās deōrum irent.
14. Nescivērunt utrum manus mīlitum superāvisset an superāta esset.
15. Expōne quid urnās pulchrās manibus servōrum factās dēlēveris. [**quid**, 'in respect to what thing, why']
16. Semper intellegēbam quam ob rem omnēs hominēs liberi servōrum miserērentur.
17. Expōnere nōn potuerim quam ob rem rēx dōna ā turbā supplicī nōn accēperit.
18. Quidam nōbis dicere possunt quamdiū cōsulēs ipsi in urbe remānsūri sint.
19. Hīs tantīs in rēbus est tuum vidēre quid agātur.
20. Ā vōbīs quaerō utrum pecūniam accēperitis necne.
21. Quid dicam dē servitūte quae opprimit hōs quōs vidēmus?
22. Multōrum cognōsce exemplō quae facta sequāris, quae fugiās: vīta est nōbīs magister.

23. Paucōrum est intellegere quid dōnet deus.
24. Ducēs dēlēctī nesciunt cūr magnus mortis timor inter civēs exoriātur. Utinam incolae fortiōrēs essent! [*inter*, prep. + acc., ‘among’]
25. Pauci tandem imperātōris iussū exposuērunt cūr horrida bella hominibus saepe pūgnanda essent: hominum est semper velle plūs imperiī quam habent.
26. Nē misereāmur ipsōrum comitum quī nōbis noxae fuērunt et quōs nostri amici ōdērunt.
27. Sapiēns scit quid sorte sibi datum sit, quid nōn. Utinam omnēs sapientēs essēmus!
28. Scire volēbātis quamdiū in illā urbe vixissem. Quinque annōs ibi mānsi, sed mihi nunc tempus nōn est vōbis expōnere quārē mē rūs recēperim.
29. Nōnne intellegis quantō in periculō sis (fueris; futūrus sis)?
30. Vestri comitēs verba militum accipientēs nesciēbant quam ob rem expōnere nōllent quid ducēs dē salūte cōgitārent.
31. Omnēs sē in tēcta recēpērunt, nescientēs quandō socii ventūri essent, ut sē timōre et periculō liberārent.
32. Nesciō quō modō iste ā civibus dux dēlēctus sit; vir pessimus est.
33. Rogātis ut opibus bene ūtāmur; rogāmus num ipsi opibus bene ūtāmini.
34. Quaedam mē rogāvit unde vēnissem; dixi mē Rōmā occultē profectum esse; sortem esse ad hanc urbem mē cōferre ut multa huic populō tamquam magister dicerem.
35. PLINY TRIES TO HANDLE THE CHRISTIANS (selected and adapted from Pliny, *Letters* x.96):
Interim in eis qui ad mē tamquam Christiāni dēferēbantur hoc ēgi. Rogāvi ipsōs an essent Christiāni. Dixērunt sē Christiānōs esse. Si negāvissent, imperāvissē ut ei ipsi liberārentur; perseverantēs autem dūci ad poenam iussi. Fuērunt aliī similis āmentiae quōs, quia civēs Rōmāni erant, dixi in urbem mittendōs. Quid aliud in rēbus huius modi facerem? Magnum periculum civitāti atque populō Rōmānō erat.
[āmentia, -ae, F., ‘madness, folly’; Christiānus, -a, -um, ‘Christian’; in (prep. + abl.), here, ‘in the case of’; interim (adv.), ‘meanwhile’; perseverō (1), ‘persevere’]
36. Amicus optimus mortuus est. Cōgitō quō amicō, quō virō caream.
37. Quaerō utrum Brūtī similem mālis an Antōnii. [Brūtus, -ī, M., proper name; Antōnius, -ī, M., proper name]
38. Hoc quaerāmus, immortalis sit ille hospes necne: Esne immortalis an nōn?
39. Unde quoddam dōnum dē quō diū audivimus recipiēmus? Scisne an nōn?
40. Ubi estis? Quandō veniam ut vōs videam? Nisi domi eritis, quō modō sciam quid mihi faciendum sit?
41. Eidem parentēs iuvenēs ipsōs audentēs loquī cum audāciā ōderint.
42. “Moriēmur sine culpā, sed moriāmur,” ait.

43. Sed ubi diēs coepit, et incolae nihil hostile veritī sunt, multī oppidō sunt ēgressī, aliī ibi mānsērunt et imperātor copiās portās oppugnāre iussit.
44. Nōs ipsi mori velimus an mortem vereāmur (timeāmus)? Quae sit nostra sententia rogāre vis.
45. Dāmnātus cuiusdam sceleris, mē quae esset poena nōn accēpisse fassus sum.
46. Quārē discēdant impiī!
47. Vidē nunc quid agās, quid ferre possis, neque quamdiū vixerit Caesar sed quam nōn diū rēxerit cōgitā! [Note how **nōn** splits **quamdiū** for effect. **Caesar, Caesaris, M.**, proper name]
48. Utinam minus vitāe cupidī fuissēmus! Certē nihil aut nōn multum in vitā mali vidissēmus. [**aut** (conj.), 'or']
49. Ad tē quid scribam nesciō.
50. Utinam nē tōtam opiniōnem parva nōn numquam mūtāvisset aura rūmōris.
51. Rogābās quam ob rem somnus ad mē illā nocte nōn vēnisset; magnopere timēbam; omnēs mē terrēbant aerae. [**somnus, -i, M.**, 'sleep']
52. Omnibus modis miser sum.

II.

1. Let all citizens in a free state be dutiful and willing to fight for their country.
2. If only we could always be free from care!
3. All men know why the enemy must be overcome.
4. What are we to do in order that we may remain free men?
5. He might believe that you are all good and honorable men.
6. He explained how the enemy would attack and destroy the fortified walls at Rome.

III. Readings

- A. Cicero speaks of the disadvantages of knowing one's future (*Dē Divinātiōne* II.9.22, slightly adapted):

Atque ego nē ūtilem¹ quidem² arbitror esse nōbis futūrārum rērum scientiam.³ Quae enim vitā fuisset Priamō,⁴ si ab adulēscentiā⁵ scivisset, quōs ēventūs⁶ senectūtis⁷ esset habitūrus? Abeāmus⁸ ā fābulis,⁹ propiōra¹⁰ videāmus. Clārissimōrum hominum nostrae civitātis dē gravissimis mortibus in aliō librō scripsi. Quid igitur?¹¹ ut omittāmus¹² superiōrēs,¹³ Marcōne

¹ ūtilis, -e, 'advantageous' ² nē...quidem, 'not...even' (enclosing the word or words they qualify) ³ scientia, -ae, F., 'knowledge' ⁴ Priamus, -i, M., 'Priam', the aged king of Troy ⁵ adulēscētia, -ae, F., 'youth' ⁶ ēventus, -ūs, M., 'issue, end, catastrophe' ⁷ senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age' ⁸ abeō (ab + eō), 'depart' ⁹ fābula, -ae, F., 'story, myth' ¹⁰ propior, -ius, 'nearer, more closely affecting' ¹¹ igitur (post-positive conj.), 'therefore' ¹² omittō (ob + mittō), 'leave out, omit'; translate ut 'granted that, although' (see Appendix, p. 392, Concessive Clauses #5) ¹³ superior, -ius, comparative of superus, -a, -um, here, 'prior, former, earlier'

Crassō¹⁴ putās ūtile¹ fuisse tum,¹⁵ cum¹⁶ maximīs opibus florēbat,¹⁷ scire sibi interfectō Pūbliō¹⁸ filiō exercitūque¹⁹ dēlētō trāns²⁰ Euphrātem²¹ cum ignōminiā²² esse moriendum?²³

¹⁴ Marcus Crassus, -ī, M., a man's name ¹⁵ tum (adv.), 'then, at that time' ¹⁶ cum (conj. + indicative), 'when' ¹⁷ florēō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'prosper' ¹⁸ Pūblius, -ī, M., a man's name ¹⁹ exercitus, -ūs, M., 'army' ²⁰ trāns (prep. + acc.), 'across, beyond' ²¹ Euphrātes, -is, M., 'the Euphrates', a river in western Asia ²² ignōminia, -ae, F., 'disgrace' ²³ esse moriendum: The neuter indicates that the verb is used impersonally: '... that it had to be died by him', i.e., 'that he had to die' (see Unit Thirteen, section C).

B. Martial 2.7:

Dēclāmās¹ bellē,² causās³ agis, Attice,⁴ bellē,²
 historiās⁵ bellās,² carmina bella² facis,
 compōnis⁶ bellē² mimōs,⁷ epigrammata⁸ bellē,²
 bellus² grammaticus,⁹ bellus² es astrologus,¹⁰
 et bellē² cantās¹¹ et saltās,¹² Attice,⁴ bellē,²
 bellus² es arte lyrae,¹³ bellus² es arte pilae.¹⁴
 Nīl bene cum¹⁵ faciās, faciās tamen omnia bellē,²
 vīs dicam¹⁶ quid sis? Magnus es ardeliō.¹⁷

¹ dēclāmō (1), 'declaim' ² bellē (adv.), 'beautifully'; bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful' ³ causa, -ae, F., here, 'lawsuit'; causās agere, 'to plead cases' ⁴ Atticus, -ī, M., a man's name ⁵ historia, -ae, F., 'history' ⁶ compōnō (com- + pōnō), 'compose, arrange' ⁷ mimus, -ī, M., 'a mime' (a type of stage entertainment) ⁸ epigramma, -atis, M., 'an epigram' ⁹ grammaticus, -ī, M., 'grammarians' ¹⁰ astrologus, -ī, M., 'astronomer' ¹¹ cantō (1), 'sing' ¹² saltō (1), 'dance' ¹³ lyra, -ae, F., 'lyre' (a stringed instrument) ¹⁴ pila, -ae, F., 'ball, a game of ball' ¹⁵ cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'although' ¹⁶ vīs dicam = vīs ut dicam ¹⁷ ardeliō, -ōnis, M., 'busybody'

C. Martial 8.12:

Uxōrem¹ quārē locuplētē² dūcere³ nōlim
 quaeritis? Uxōri¹ nūbere⁴ nōlo meae.
 Inferior⁵ matrōna⁶ suō sit, Prisce,⁷ maritō:⁸
 nōn aliter⁹ fiunt¹⁰ fēmina virque parēs.¹¹

¹ uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife' ² locuplēs, -plētis, 'wealthy' ³ dūcere (in mātirimōnium understood), 'marry' (of a man to a woman) ⁴ nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nuptus, 'marry' (+ dat.) (of a woman to a man) ⁵ inferior, -ius, comparative of inferus, -a, -um, 'low' ⁶ matrōna, -ae, F., 'a married woman' ⁷ Priscus, -ī, M., a man's name ⁸ maritus, -ī, M., 'husband' ⁹ aliter (adv.), 'otherwise' ¹⁰ fiunt, '(they) become' (3rd person pl. pres. indic. of fiō, fierī, factus sum) ¹¹ pār, paris, 'equal'

D. Martial 12.20:

Quārē nōn habeat, Fabulle,¹ quaeris
 uxōrem² Themisōn?³ Habet sorōrem.

¹ Fabullus, -ī, M., a man's name ² uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife' ³ Themisōn, -ōnis, M., a man's name

E. Martial 12.92:

Saepe rogāre solēs quālis¹ sim, Prisce,² futūrus,
 si fiam³ locuplēs⁴ simque repente⁵ potēns.⁶
 Quemquam⁷ posse putās mōrēs nārrāre⁸ futūrōs?
 Dic mihi, si fiās⁹ tū leo,¹⁰ quālis¹ eris?

¹ quālis, -e, 'what kind (of)' ² Priscus, -i, M., a man's name ³ fiam, 1st person sing., pres. subj. of fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'become' ⁴ locuplēs, -plētis, 'wealthy' ⁵ repente (adv.), 'suddenly' ⁶ potēns, potentis, 'powerful' ⁷ quemquam (acc. sing. M.), 'anyone' ⁸ nārrō (1), 'tell, relate' ⁹ fiās, 2nd person sing., pres. subj. of fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'become' ¹⁰ leō, leōnis, M., 'lion'

F. Horace, *Odes* 1.11:

Tū nē quaesieris¹ — scire nefās² — quem mihi, quem tibi
 Finem dī dederint, Leuconoē,³ nec Babylōniōs⁴
 Temptāris⁵ numerōs.⁶ Ut⁷ melius. quicquid⁸ erit, patī!
 Seu⁹ plūrēs hiemēs,¹⁰ seu⁹ tribuit¹¹ Iuppiter ultimam,
 Quae nunc oppositis¹² dēbilitat¹³ pūmicibus¹⁴ mare
 Tyrrhēnum.¹⁵ Sapiās,¹⁶ vīna¹⁷ liquēs,¹⁸ et spatiō¹⁹ brevī²⁰
 Spem longam resecēs.²¹ Dum²² loquimur, fūgerit invida²³
 Aetās:²⁴ carpe²⁵ diem. quam minimum crēdula²⁶ posterō.²⁷

¹ quaesieris = quaesiveris ² nefās, N. (indeclinable), 'unlawful, wrong' ³ Leuconoē (vocative), a woman's name ⁴ Babylōnius, -a, -um, 'Babylonian' (The Babylonians were noted for their astrological calculations.) ⁵ temptō (1), here, 'consult'; temptāris is a syncopated or contracted form of temptāveris (see Unit Eighteen, Section D) ⁶ numerus, -i, N., here, 'calculation' ⁷ ut (adv.), 'how' ⁸ quicquid (nom. sing. N., indefinite pron.), 'whatever' ⁹ seu...seu (conj.), 'whether...or' ¹⁰ hiems, hiemis, F., 'winter' ¹¹ tribuō, -ere, tribuī, -ūtus, 'assign' ¹² oppōnō (ob, 'against' + pōnō), 'oppose' ¹³ dēbilitō (1), 'weaken, break' ¹⁴ pūmex, -icis, M., '(porous) rock' ¹⁵ Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um, 'Tyrrhenian' ¹⁶ sapiō, -ere, -iī, --, 'be sensible' ¹⁷ vinum, -i, N., 'wine' ¹⁸ liquō (1), 'strain' ¹⁹ spatium, -i, N., 'time' ²⁰ brevis, -e, 'brief' ²¹ resecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectus, 'remove' ²² dum (conj.), 'while' ²³ invidus, -a, -um, 'envious' ²⁴ aetās, -tātis, F., 'life' ²⁵ carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, 'pluck, take advantage of' ²⁶ crēdulus, -a, -um, 'trusting (in)' (+ dat.) ²⁷ posterus, -a, -um, 'future'; here, used as a neuter noun

UNIT THIRTEEN

A. The Indefinite Pronouns *aliquis, quis, quisquam, quisque*

Indefinite pronouns represent *some* person or thing without designating exactly *which* one. **Quīdam**, ‘a certain’, met in the previous unit, is also an *indefinite* pronoun.

1. **aliquis**

The pronoun **aliquis**, **aliquid** is declined like the interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** with **ali-** added as a prefix; the forms for the adjective, **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, are identical to those of the relative pronoun **quī**, **quae**, **quod** with the prefix **ali-**, with the exception of the feminine nominative singular (as noted in the three parts given), and the neuter nominative and accusative plural, which are **aliqua**.

The pronoun means ‘someone, something, anyone, anything’; the adjective means ‘some, any’.

Aliquis ad mē heri vēnit. *Someone* came to me yesterday.

Nōn sine **aliquō** metū cum We fought with the inhabitants not without
incolis pūgnāvimus. *some* fear.

Vidistīne **aliquem**? Did you see *anyone (someone)*?

2. **quis**

Quis, **quid** (adjective **quī**, **qua**, **quod**) is essentially identical to **aliquis**, **aliquid** (adjective, **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**), although it perhaps has a greater degree of indefiniteness about it. It is most frequently used instead of **aliquis** after the words **sī**, **nisī**, **num**, and **nē**.

REMEMBER: After **sī**, **nisī**, **num**, and **nē**, all the **ali-**’s drop away.

Sī **quis** ad mē veniat, fēlix sim. If *anyone (someone)* should come to
me, I would be happy.

Nisī **quem** videās, fēlix nōn sis. If you should not see *anyone (some-
one)*, you would not be happy.

Num **quem** vidēs? You don’t see *anyone (someone)*, do
you?

Hoc fēcit nē **quis** irātus esset. He did this in order that *someone*
might not be angry.

3. **quisquam**

Quisquam, quidquam (sometimes written **quicquam**) is declined like **quis, quid** with the suffix **-quam**. It means ‘someone (something), anyone (anything)’ and is used mainly in sentences which are negative or imply negation. The adjective for **quisquam** is supplied by the word **ūllus, -a, -um**, ‘any’.

Vix **quisquam** hoc negāre potest. Hardly *anyone* can deny this.

Fortior fuit lēgātus **quam quisquam** militum. The envoy was braver than *any(one)* of the soldiers. (The implied negation here is that no one of the soldiers was braver than the envoy.)

Sōlis lūx clārior est **quam lūx ūllius** ignis. The light of the sun is brighter than the light of *any* fire.

4. **quisque**

The pronoun **quisque, quidque** (sometimes written **quicque**) (adjective, **quīque, quaeque, quodque**) is declined like **quis, quid** (adjective like **quī, quae, quod**) with the suffix **-que** and means ‘each one (each), everyone (every)’.

Haec optimus **quisque** sentit. *Each (every)* very good man perceives these things.

Quīque vir hanc puellam amat. *Each (every)* man loves this girl.

Cuique hominī multa pecūnia est. There is much money to *each (every)* man; *each (every)* man has much money.

B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs

There are certain intransitive verbs in Latin which govern the dative case. For example, while in English the verb “persuade” is transitive and governs an object, in Latin **persuādeō** is intransitive (it means ‘I am persuasive’) and takes a dative of reference.

Tibi persuādeō. I am persuasive (*with reference*) to you; I persuade you.

Some of the more common verbs of this variety are:

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus	be favorable, favor
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon
imperō (1)	give orders, command
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus	be harmful, harm
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus	be sparing, spare
pāreō, -ēre, pārūī, pāritus	be obedient, obey
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus	be pleasing, please
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsus	be persuasive, persuade
studeō, -ēre, -uī, --	be zealous, study

C. Impersonal Passives

Like all intransitive verbs, the verbs introduced in B above cannot logically be used in the passive. When a passive idea is desired, an *impersonal* construction must be used. An *impersonal* verb form appears in the third person singular and has no personal subject. The pronoun "it" may be used in English to give a literal translation.

Tibi parcō.	I spare (am sparing to) you.
Tibi ā mē parcitur .	<i>It is spared (there is sparing) to you by me; you are spared by me.</i>
Mihi ā tē parcitur .	<i>It is spared (there is sparing) to me by you; I am spared by you.</i>
Mihi ā tē parsum est .	<i>It was (has been) spared (there was has been sparing) to me by you; I was (have been) spared by you.</i>

When such verbs are used in the passive periphrastic construction, the ablative of agent generally occurs instead of the more usual dative of agent in order to avoid confusion with the dative that is governed by the intransitive verb.

Tibi ā nōbis parcendum est.	It must be spared to you <i>by us</i> ; <i>we</i> must spare you.
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

The impersonal passive construction sometimes occurs with other verbs which do not take the dative when particular attention is called to the verbal action itself rather than to the ones performing the action.

Domī pūgnātur .	<i>It is (being) fought at home; there is fighting at home; fighting is going on at home; a battle is being fought at home.</i>
------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Ācriter pūgnātum est. *It was fought fiercely; there was fierce fighting; the battle was fiercely fought.*

Ad villam curritur. *It is (being) run to the country house: there is (a) running to the country house; people are running to the country house.*

D. Dative with Compound Verbs

Many verbs compounded with prefixes such as the following govern the dative case.

ad-	con-	ob-	prō-
ante-	in-	post-	sub-
circum-	inter-	prae-	super-

It will be noted that such verbs cannot stand alone or, if transitive, simply with an accusative object; they require another word to complete the sense. For example,

praesum I am at the head of . . . (Another word is required to complete the sense; it will be in the dative.)

Nautis praesum. I am at the head of *the sailors*; I command *the sailors*.

praeficiō I make at the head of, I place in command of . . . (Two additional words are required to complete the sense. Since the basic verb in this compound (-**ficiō** from **faciō**) is transitive, the root -**ficiō** will govern the accusative, and the prefix **prae-** will govern the dative.)

Tē nautis I place you in command of *the sailors*.
praeficiō.

These datives, like all datives, are basically referential.

Nautis praesum. I am at the head with reference to the sailors; I am at the head of the sailors.

Tē nautis I make you in command with reference to the sailors; I
praeficiō. place you in command of the sailors.

E. The Verb *fīō*, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

Fīō, fierī, factus sum is used as the passive for the verb **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus**. The perfect system poses no problem, for it is identical to that formed from **faciō** (the last principal part of both verbs is the same). The present system functions like an i-stem verb of the third conjugation, except that it has active forms with passive meanings, and the quantity of the -i- is long in the present (except for the third person singular), the imperfect, and future indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is formed on the hypothetical active infinitive for this verb:

fiere/m
fierē/s
...etc.

F. The Numerical Adjective *duo, duae, duo*, 'two'

The plural adjective **duo**, 'two', has its own set of endings (shared also by **ambo**, **ambae**, **ambo**, 'both').

M.	F.	N.
duo	duae	duo
duōrum	duārum	duōrum
duōbus	duābus	duōbus
duōs (-o)	duās	duo
duōbus	duābus	duōbus

UNIT THIRTEEN — VOCABULARY

admīrātiō, -ōnis, F.	admiration
adulēscēns, -entis	young, youthful
aliquis, aliquid (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (adj.)	some, any
celer, celeris, celere	swift
cōstituō, -ere, -stitūi, -stitūtus	set, establish, decide
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus	run
duo, duae, duo	two
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus	be favorable, favor (+ dat.)
fiō, fierī, factus sum	be made. be done, happen, become (serves as the passive for faciō)
heri (adv.)	yesterday
hīc (adv.)	here
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
illic (adv.)	there
īrātus, -a, -um	angry
iūs, iūris, N.	right, law
lēgātus, -ī, M.	legate, envoy
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum	wonder (at). be amazed (at), admire
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum	delay, stay, hinder

nēmō, nēminis , M. or F.	no one
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	be harmful, harm (+ dat.)
ōrātiō, -ōnis , F.	oration, speech
paene (adv.)	almost
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus	be sparing, spare (+ dat.)
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	be obedient, obey (+ dat.)
persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus	be persuasive, persuade (+ dat.)
plēbs, plēbis , F.	common people
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus	bring (place) before, prefer
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	make before (at the head of), put in command of
praesum, praesesse, -fuī, --	be before (at the head of), be in command of
quis, quid (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
quī, qua, quod (adj.)	some, any
quisquam, quidquam or quicquam (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything (used with a negative or a virtual negative)
quisque, quidque or quicque (pron.)	each one, each thing, every one, every thing
quīque, quaeque, quodque (adj.)	each, every
quō (adv.)	(to) where
sollers, sollertis	skilled, expert
studeō, -ēre, -uī, --	be zealous, study (+ dat.)
ūsus, -ūs , M.	use, advantage, enjoyment
vix (adv.)	hardly, scarcely

UNIT THIRTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aliquis, aliquid is the pronoun, ‘someone, anyone, something, anything’; it is declined like **quis, quid** with the prefix **ali-**. **Aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** is the adjective ‘some, any’, declined like the relative pronoun (except that the **quae** forms become **-qua**) with the prefix **ali-**. But the feminine plural remains **-quae**.

Note that the verb **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus**, ‘set, establish, decide’, has the same stem in the present and perfect active. Therefore, **cōstituit** may be either present or perfect, for example.

Currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, ‘run’, duplicates the **cu** in the perfect active stem in the same way that **pellō**, for instance, duplicates the **pe** in its perfect active stem **pepul-**.

Duo, duae, duo, ‘two’, and **ambo, ambae, ambo**, ‘both’, are declined in the same way. They are the only remains of the *dual* number in Latin; the dual was used

for two objects only, as the singular is used for one object, and the plural for several objects.

The verb **fiō, fieri, factus sum**, 'be made, be done, happen, become', is used as the passive of **faciō**. In a way, it is the opposite of a deponent verb since its forms are active in appearance, but passive in meaning: **Hoc fiēbat**, 'This was done'.

Hic, 'here', is an adverb and should not be confused with the adjective **hic**; **illic** is the adverb 'there'.

Ignōscō is a compound of **nōscō**; it means 'be forgiving, forgive, pardon' and governs the dative case.

There is a deponent verb **irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum**, 'become angry', which is derived from **ira**, 'anger'. Its participle **irātus** is used as an adjective, 'angry'.

Iūs, iūris, N., is 'right, law', as in our Bill of Rights. There is another word **iūs, iūris**, N., which means 'soup, sauce'.

Lēgātus, lēgātī, M., is an 'envoy, legate'; the legate was an official assistant of a general or governor of a province.

Mīror is a first conjugation deponent meaning 'wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire'; it has a compound, **admīror**, with the same meanings. Related to this compound is the noun **admīrātiō. admīrātiōnis**, F., 'admiration'.

The first conjugation deponent **moror**, 'delay, stay, hinder', is related to the noun **mora, -ae**, F., 'delay'.

Four Latin verbs are frequently confused with one another; a careful memorization of the principal parts of each of them would eliminate such confusion:

- parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, 'be sparing, spare' (+ dative)
- pāreō, pārere, pārui, pārītus**, 'be obedient, obey' (+ dative)
- parō** (1), 'prepare, make ready, provide, get'
- pariō, parere, peperī, partus**, 'bear, give birth to, produce'

Persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsus is a compound of **suādeō**, 'urge, persuade'. This verb and **suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētus**, 'be accustomed', have many compounds and derivatives; in these words, **su** is pronounced as **sw** (compare the English word "suave"). **Persuādeō**, therefore, has four syllables.

Plēbs, plēbis, F., 'common people', is a collective noun and so it takes a singular verb: **Plēbs duci crēdit**, 'The common people trust the leader'.

Praeferō, 'bring before, place before, prefer', and **praeficiō**, 'make before, make at the head of, put in command of', govern both an object in the accusative case and a dative with compounds: **Dux lēgātum cōpiīs praefēcit**, 'The leader put the legate in command of the troops'.

After **sī, nisi, num**, and **nē**, **quis** means 'someone, anyone', and **quid** means 'something, anything'. The adjective **quī, qua, quod**, 'some, any', has **qua** forms instead of **quae**.

The spelling **quicquam**, ‘something, anything’, may be used instead of **quidquam**, as **quicque**, ‘each thing, everything’, may be used instead of **quidque**.

Quō is an adverb meaning ‘(to) where’. A chart of these “place” adverbs might be helpful at this point:

ubi , ‘where’	quō ‘(to) where’	unde , ‘from where’
hīc , ‘here’	hūc , ‘(to) here’	hinc , ‘from here’
illīc , ‘there’	illūc ‘(to) there’	illinc , ‘from there’
ibi , ‘there’	eō , ‘(to) there’	inde , ‘from there’

Obviously, **studium**, **studii**, N., ‘zeal’, and **studeō**, **studēre**, **studūi**, --, ‘be zealous, study’ (+ dative), are related.

Ūsus is a fourth declension noun from **ūtor**; it means ‘use, advantage, enjoyment’.

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes **-ōsus** and **-lentus** added to the stem of a noun mean ‘full of’.

animōsus , -a, -um	full of courage, bold, spirited
annōsus , -a, -um	of many years, aged
aquōsus , -a, -um	abounding in water, moist
bellicōsus , -a, -um	warlike, martial
fāmōsus , -a, -um	much talked of, famous
glōriōsus , -a, -um	full of glory, famous, renowned
sententiōsus , -a, -um	full of meaning, pithy
corpulentus , -a, -um	corpulent, fleshy, fat
opulentus , -a, -um	rich, wealthy
turbulentus , -a, -um	full of commotion, confused, disturbed

The suffixes **-fer** and **-ger** (the roots of **ferō** and **gerō**) added to the stem of a noun mean ‘bearing’.

armifer , -a, -um	} bearing weapons, armed, warlike
armiger , -a, -um	
aurifer , -a, -um	bearing, producing <i>or</i> containing gold
belliger , -a, -um	waging war, warlike, martial
flammifer , -a, -um	} flame-bearing, flaming, fiery
flammiger , -a, -um	
lūcifer , -a, -um	light-bringing
mortifer , -a, -um	death-bringing

ABSTRACT NOUN SUFFIXES

The suffixes **-ia** (-iēs), **-tia** (-tiēs), **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō** added to the stems of adjectives (usually) produce feminine abstract nouns.

dēmentia , -ae, F.	insanity, madness
memoria , -ae, F.	memory, recollection
pauperiēs , -ēī, F.	poverty
saevitia , -ae, F.	a raging, rage, fierceness
laetitia , -ae, F.	joy, gladness, pleasure
cānitiēs , -ēī, F. (cānus , -a, -um, 'white')	a grayish-white color
crūdēlitās , -tātis, F.	harshness, severity, cruelty
gravitās , -tātis, F.	weight, heaviness
iuventūs , -tūtis, F.	the age of youth, youth
senectūs , -tūtis, F. (senex , senis , 'old')	old age
magnitūdō , -inis, F.	greatness, size
multitūdō , -inis, F.	a great number, multitude

The suffixes **-ium** and **-tium** added to noun stems (usually) produce neuter abstract nouns.

augurium , -ī, N. (augur , -uris, M. or F., 'soothsayer')	the observation and interpretation of omens, augury
magisterium , -ī, N.	the office of a president, chief, director, superintendent, etc.
hospitium , -ī, N.	hospitality
servitium , -ī, N.	the condition of a slave, slavery

UNIT THIRTEEN — DRILL

I.

Give the following forms:

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. gen. sing. quaeque aura | 4. dat. sing. quisque |
| 2. nom. pl. aliquod iussum | 5. abl. pl. quīque modus |
| 3. acc. sing. quisquam, aliquis | |

II.

Translate:

1. Amōremne iussis praepōnis?
2. In forō clāmātur.
3. Vōbis imperāvimus nē iussa amōrī postpōnātis.
4. Ducī placet moenia oppidō circumpōnere.
5. Īra fit ruīnā nostrōrum bonōrum.
6. Crēdāmus imperātōrī ā regentibus honestīs dēlēctō.
7. Quisque pessimus poenās det!

8. Utinam quisque patriam amet!
9. Nōlī crēdere alicui maiōri quam tibi.
10. Duōbus imperāvit nē cui maiōri quam eis crēdant.
11. a) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectōs esse.
b) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs esse.
c) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs.
12. Dux ipse hortātus est ut hostilēs cōpiae flammās oppidō circumdarent.
13. Per viās oppidi errātum est.
14. Tibi ab omnibus audientibus crēditum est.
15. Sī quis domī maneat, quid fiat in orbe terrārum nesciat.
16. Aliquisne tē timet? Num quis timēret tē rogāvimus.
17. Aliquī amicus mihi dōnum aliquod mīsit.
18. Illud flūmen erat longius quam ūllum in Graeciā.
19. Marcus sē esse sapientiōrem quam quemquam amicōrum arbitrātus est.
20. In bellō magnopere timētur.
21. Hoc difficilius est quam quidquam.

UNIT THIRTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cūr aliquī adulēscēns per forum heri currere cōstituit?
2. Cūr aliquis per forum heri currere cōstituit?
3. Nescivī num quis per forum currere cōstitueret.
4. Sī quī adulēscēns per forum currere cōstituat, irātissimus sim.
5. Vix quisquam virtūtem illic mōnstrāre voluit.
6. Ōrātiōnem lēgātī mirāti sumus plūs quam ūllam ōrātiōnem quam audivimus.
7. Cuique persuāsērunt ut quam honestissimus esset.
8. Plēbī quodque iūs nōn datum est.
9. Rogāvimus quārē aliqua admirātiō adulēscēntibus offerrētur rei pūblicae nocēre cōnantibus.
10. a) Nēmō intellēxit cūr dux aliqua scelera eō tempore fassus esset.
b) Cīvēs duci malō nōn fāvērunt.

UNIT THIRTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet facilius. [quō . . . hōc, 'by the degree in which . . . by this degree; the more . . . the more . . .']
2. Quō maius quodque animal, eō magis timendum est. [quō . . . eō = quō . . . hōc]

3. Si quisquam est irātus, is ego sum.
4. Vix ūlli crēdit, nec quisquam ex omnibus gentibus ad eum accēdere audet.
5. Hārū sententiārum quae vēra sit, deus aliqui videat.
6. Aliquid ā nōbis invenitur; nescimus quid sit. Quīdam crēdunt id malum esse. Illis nōn crēdimus.
7. Nisi cui imperābis ut illi servō ignōscat, mox moriētur.
8. Ignōscite mihi, adulēcentēs, si vōbis quid dicam: cūrae vōbis sit ut mōribus multārum gentium maximā cum cūrā studeātis.
9. Imperātōri quodque sit bellum laudī.
10. Lēgātī illius virtūs omnibus civibus admirātiōnī fuit.
11. Cui bonō fuit? Nēmini bonō fuit.
12. Hoc vōbis sit exemplō!
13. Hic mihi magnō ūsuī erit lēgātus, iste parvō.
14. Quem ūnī ē nōbis saepe praetulit?
15. Pecūnia amicitiae nōn praefenda est.
16. Imperātōri qui oppidō praerat pārendum erat.
17. Dixi imperātōri quī oppidō praesset pārendum esse.
18. Hic vivitur; illic nēmini vīta placet.
19. Mihi ā quāque fēminā in urbe favētur.
20. Quaeque fēmina respondit hanc esse partem ōrātiōnis quae rem cōstitueret paene ante oculōs cuiusque audientis.
21. Rogāmus quid fiat (quid factum sit, quid factūrus sit).
22. Omnia nātūrae nūminī, caelum, ignēs, terrae, maria pārent.
23. Aliquis hominī cuidam heri dixit omnibus vīventibus animum datum esse ex illis aeternis ignibus, quae sīdera et stellās vocārētis. [**animus**, -ī, M., 'mind, soul'; **stella**, -ae, F., 'star']
24. Homō quīdam rogāvit quō modō haec fieri possint; alius respondit fieri nōn posse.
25. Quisque suam opiniōnem habet.
26. Signō datō, celeriter Rōmam curritur.
27. Lūx fiat.
28. Rogat num cui magnopere placuerit.
29. Quī amābant hunc, illi favēbunt.
30. Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur ē Graeciā omnī cessūrōs (esse) Rōmānōs.
31. Si qua mihi virtūs esset, in bellum sine metū ruerem.
32. Dī in caelō, parcite nōbis! Nātūram optimam ducem tamquam deum sequimur eīque pārēmus.
33. Crēdō ego vōs mirārī quō ferat nātūra sua quemque.
34. Si quisque suā manū captum ex hoste domum rettulisset, multi servi nōbis nunc domi essent.

35. a) Gladium ēdūcere cōnanti dextram morātur manum. [ēdūcere = ē + dūcere]
 b) Mē interficere cōnanti dextram morātus sum manum.
36. Si nēmō nēmini similis est, nōbis opus est mōrēs cuiusque hominis intellegere et in quōque quaerere aliquid virtūtis.
37. Eō vitae tempore, dux sēnsit scelera quam pessima in orbe terrārum fieri.
38. Quid fiet si quis cōstituet nōs rogāre unde vēnerimus? Cōfitēri nōn possumus nōs Rōmā heri profectōs esse, urbe his gentibus inimicissimā.
39. Mōrēs istius aliquam mihi admirātiōnem movērent nisi opibus semper male ūterētur (nisi opēs amicōrum dēlēre occultē cōnārētur).
40. Hic saxō, liquidis ille colōribus
 sollers nunc hominem pōnere, nunc deum. (Horace, *Odes* iv.8.7–8)
 Quisque artem suam habet.

[liquidus, -a, -um, 'liquid'; color, -ōris, M., 'color'; pōnō, here, 'portray, fashion']

41. Imperātūrus es hominibus, qui nec tōtam servitūtem pati possunt nec tōtam libertātem. Aliquid tibi cōsiliū atque mentis opus est.
42. Amīci fiāmus et sine bellō atque odiō vivāmus. Huicne cōsiliō favētis an nōn?
43. Mē heri rogāvisti num quem vidissem. Dixi mē aliquem vidisse, sed nescire quis esset. Nihil novī nunc tibi afferre possum.
44. Intellegi potest nōn solum hominēs solere dubitare, bonumne aliquod cōsiliū an malum sit, sed etiam ē duōbus cōsiliis bonis utrum melius sit.
45. Quō plūs custōdum fortissimōrum imperātōri est, hōc tūtior; nam plēbs, alterius ducis cupida, nihil audāciae agere audēbit.
46. Dixitne aliquid? Nōn dixit quicquam.
47. Homini pepercērunt quem dux manū fortium praefēcerat.
48. Mihi nōn ab istis nocēri potest.
49. Mōtus celer flūminis intellegendus erit nē cui trānseunti noceātur. [trānseō from trāns, 'across' + eō]
50. Parva magnis cōnferantur.
51. THE COMMON PEOPLE AND THE DRUIDS IN GAUL (adapted from Caesar, *The Gallic Wars* vi.13):

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, ad nūllum cōsiliū [here, 'council'] ire potest. Multi, pecūniā carentēs aut viribus aliōrum fortiōrum pressi, sē in servitūtem trādunt nōbilibus; quibus in [here, 'over'] hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in ['over']

servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, quibus ūnus fortissimus praeest, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus divinis intersunt; sacrificia pūblica et privāta faciunt. Ad eōs magnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplinae causā currit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam paene dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt, et, si quod est scelus factum, si quis interfectus est, si dē finibus contrōversia est, idem cōstituunt quid faciendum sit. Hī dicunt quae poenae, quae praemia quibus danda sint. Si quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum iussis nōn pāret, sacrificiis prohibent. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est prohibitum, hī numerō impiōrum habentur, his omnēs discēdunt nē quid ex eis malī accipiant, neque iis petentibus iūs datur neque honor ūllus.

[aut (conj.), 'or'; causā (used prepositionally + gen. — placed after the genitive which it governs), 'for the sake of'; contrōversia, -ae, F., 'controversy'; disciplina, -ae, F., 'training'; divīnus, -a, -um, 'divine'; druidēs, -um, M., 'the druids' (the priests and wise men of Gaul); eques, equitis, M., 'horseman, knight'; Gallia, -ae, F., 'Gaul', a country in the ancient world corresponding roughly to modern France; honor, honōris, M., 'honor, respect'; intersum, -esse, -fuī, —, 'be between, be concerned'; ita (adv.), 'in this way'; nōbilis, -e, 'noble'; numerus, -ī, M., 'number'; privātus, -a, -um, 'private'; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'prohibit, keep from'; sacrificium, -ī, N., 'sacrifice']

II.

1. Will anyone pardon him? He will not be pardoned by anyone.
2. I don't prefer anyone to her. She is a great aid to me.
3. What was happening yesterday on land and sea?
4. He said that he would please each man whom he had praised.
5. If anyone should shout that there is danger here, there would be a great running in the streets; the consul would put the legate in command of the people in order that the ruler may be obeyed.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 5.17:

Ego vōs hortāri tantum¹ possum, ut amicitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānis² antepōnātis;³ nihil est enim tam nātūrae aptum,⁴ tam conveniēns⁵ ad rēs vel⁶ secundās⁷ vel⁶ adversās.⁸

¹ tantum (adv.), 'only' ² hūmānus, -a, -um, 'human' ³ antepōnō (ante + pōnō), 'put (place) before, prefer' ⁴ aptus, -a, -um, 'suited to' ⁵ conveniēns, -entis, 'appropriate'
⁶ vel . . . vel (adv.), 'either . . . or' ⁷ secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable' ⁸ adversus, -a, -um, 'adverse'

B. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 6.20:

Amicitiae divitiās alii praepōnunt,¹ bonam alii valētūdinem,² alii potentiam,³ alii honōrēs,⁴ multī etiam⁵ voluptātēs.⁶

¹ praepōnō (prae + pōnō), 'place before, prefer' ² valētūdō, -inis, F., 'health' ³ potentia, -ae, F., 'power' ⁴ honor, -ōris, M., 'honor, distinction' ⁵ etiam (adv.), 'even' ⁶ voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'

C. Cicero *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.25.52:

Est apud¹ Platōnem² Sōcratēs,³ cum⁴ esset in custōdiā⁵ pūblicā, dīcēs Critōnī,⁶ suō familiārī,⁷ sibi post tertium⁸ diem esse moriendum;⁹ vīdisse enim sē in somnis¹⁰ pulchritūdine¹¹ eximiā¹² fēminam, quae sē nōmine appellāns,¹³ diceret Homēricum¹⁴ quendam eius modi versum:¹⁵

tertia⁸ tē Phthiae¹⁶ tempestās¹⁷ laeta¹⁸ locābit.¹⁹

Quod, ut est dictum, sic²⁰ scribitur contigisse.²¹

¹ apud (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of' ² Platō, -ōnis, M., 'Plato', the Greek philosopher ³ Sōcratēs, -is, M., 'Socrates', the Greek philosopher ⁴ cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'when' ⁵ custōdia, -ae, F., 'custody' ⁶ Critōn, -ōnis, M., 'Crito', a friend of Socrates ⁷ familiāris, -is, M., 'friend' ⁸ tertius, -a, -um, 'third' ⁹ The neuter participial form indicates that the verb is used impersonally; see section C of this Unit. ¹⁰ somnus, -ī, M., 'dream' ¹¹ pulchritūdō, -inis, F., 'beauty' ¹² eximius, -a, -um, 'exceptional' ¹³ appellō (1), 'call' ¹⁴ Homēricus, -a, -um, 'of Homer, Homeric' ¹⁵ versus, -ūs, M., 'a line of poetry, verse' ¹⁶ Phthia, -ae, F., 'Phthia', a town in Thessaly. [The line echoes Homer, *Iliad* ix.363. Phthia, the homeland of Achilles, is used here to suggest that Socrates is going home.] ¹⁷ tempestās, -tātis, F., 'period of time, season, day' ¹⁸ laetus, -a, -um, *here*, 'felicitous' ¹⁹ locō (1), 'locate, place' ²⁰ sic (adv.), 'in this way' ²¹ contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, 'happen'

D. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.4.8:

Videō enim esse hīc in senātū¹ quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā² fuērunt.

¹ senātus, -ūs, M., 'senate' ² ūnā (adv.), 'together'

E. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.9.23:

Sin¹ autem servire² meae laudī et glōriae māvīs, ēgredere cum importūnā³ scelerātōrum⁴ manū, cōnfer tē ad Manlium,⁵ concitā⁶ perditōs⁷ civēs, sēcerne⁸ tē ā bonīs, infer patriae bellum, exsultā⁹ impiō latrōciniō,¹⁰ ut ā mē nōn ēiectus¹¹ ad aliēnōs,¹² sed invitātus¹³ ad tuōs isse videāris.

¹ sīn (conj.), 'but if' ² serviō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, 'serve, be a slave to' (+ dat.) ³ importūnus, -a, -um, 'rude, savage' ⁴ scelerātus, -a, -um, 'polluted, profaned by guilt' ⁵ Manlius, -ī, M., a man's name ⁶ concitō (1), 'arouse' ⁷ perditus, -a, -um, *here*, 'desperate, corrupt, infamous, degenerate' ⁸ sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'separate' ⁹ exsultō (1), 'rejoice, triumph' ¹⁰ latrōcinium, -ī, N., 'criminality' ¹¹ ēiciō (ē + iaciō), 'throw out' ¹² aliēnus, -a, -um, 'strange, foreign' ¹³ invitō (1), 'invite'

F. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.5.11:

Cum lūxuriā¹ nōbis, cum āmentiā,² cum scelere certandum est.³

¹ lūxuria, -ae, F., 'luxury, excess' ² āmentia, -ae, F., 'madness' ³ certō (1), 'fight'

G. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Quod¹ reliquum² est, iam nōn possum oblivisci³ meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōsulem, mihi aut⁴ cum his vivendum aut⁴ prō his esse moriendum.

¹ quod, *here*, '(with respect to) what . . . ; as far as what . . . ' ² reliquus, -a, -um, 'remaining' ³ oblivīscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, 'forget' ⁴ aut . . . aut, 'either . . . or'

UNIT FOURTEEN

A. Clauses of Result

Clauses which express the result of an action or a quality are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

The approach of a result clause is often indicated by the presence of an adjective or adverb of degree in the main clause.

ADJECTIVES: { **tantus**, -a, -um, 'so great'
tālis, -e, 'such, of such a sort'
tot (indeclinable), 'so many'

ADVERBS: { **ita**, 'so'
tam, 'so'
sic, 'in this way'
adeō, 'so'

Tanta est tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēleantur. *is the storm that all the ships are being destroyed.*

Tam celeriter currit **ut** nēmō eum vincere possit. *He runs so fast that no one can beat him.*

The rules for sequence of tenses are generally observed. However, the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found in secondary sequence instead of the imperfect in order to lay stress on the fact that the action is completed.

Tam irātus erat **ut** hoc diceret. *He was so angry that he said this.*

Tam irātus erat **ut** hoc dixerit. *He was so angry that he (actually) said this. (emphasis on completion of the action)*

Tanta erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēlērentur. *was the storm that all the ships were (being) destroyed.*

Tanta erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēlētae sint. *was the storm that all the ships were (actually) destroyed. (emphasis on completion of the action)*

Note the following similarities and distinctions between purpose and result clauses:

PURPOSE

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **nē**.

Vēnit ut turbam vinceret.

He came *in order that* he might overcome the crowd.

Nōn vēnit nē turbam vinceret.

He didn't come *in order that* he might *not* overcome the crowd.

RESULT

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **ut . . . nōn**.

An adverb or adjective of degree in the main clause frequently signals the approach of a clause of result.

Tam fortis erat **ut** turbam vinceret (vicerit).

He was *so* brave *that* he overcame the crowd.

Tam fortis erat **ut ā** turbā **nōn** vincerētur (victus sit).

He was *so* brave *that* he was *not* overcome by the crowd.

B. Substantive Clauses of Result

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject. Of these, the most important are:

efficere ut , 'to bring it about that'	} + object clause
facere ut , 'to see to it that'	
accidit ut , 'it happens that'	} + subject clause
fit ut , 'it comes about that, it happens that'	
feri potest ut , 'it is able to happen that, it is possible that'	

Effēcit ut nautae inter sē pūgnārent. *He brought it about that* the sailors fought among themselves; *he brought it about that* the sailors fought one another.

Accidit ut ego ipse illic manērem. *It happened that* I myself remained there.

Fit ut nēmō sit laetior quam ego. *It happens that* no one is happier than I.

The verbs **efficere** and **facere** are frequently followed by **nē** instead of **ut . . . nōn** to introduce a negative clause, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence.

Fac nē cui noceās. See to it *that* you do *not* harm anyone.

C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic [*genus, generis*, N., 'sort'] Relative Clauses)

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe its antecedent in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs.

Is est quī celeriter ambulet. *He is the (kind of) man who walks fast; he is a man who walks fast.*

(The relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive characterizes its antecedent in terms of the general qualities of the larger group to which the antecedent belongs.)

COMPARE:

Is est quī celeriter ambulat. He is the (actual) man who walks fast.

(The relative clause with its verb in the indicative describes a particular antecedent.)

Sunt quī eī crēdant. *They are the (kind of) men who trust him; there are men (of the kind) who trust him; there are those who trust him.*

COMPARE:

Hī sunt quī eī crēdunt. These are the (actual) ones who trust him.

Quis erat quī hoc crēderet? *Who was there (of the kind) who believed this?*

In many instances, these clauses have general or indefinite antecedents, of which the following are common:

sunt qui	there are those who
est quī	he is one who
nēmō est quī	there is no one who
nihil est quod	there is nothing that
quis est quī?	who is there who?
quid est quod?	what is there that?

But these generic clauses are also found with less vague and even with precise antecedents when they are felt to characterize or generalize rather than denote a specific attribute of the antecedent:

sōlus est quī	he is the only (kind of) man who
is est quī	he is the (kind of) man who
Cicerō est quī	Cicero is the (kind of) man who
dignus est quī	he is the (kind of) man worthy who (to)

Relative clauses of characteristic are best translated into English using the indicative; the generic idea is carried over into English by the formulae which introduce such clauses — i.e., 'there is *no one* who', 'he is the *sort of* man who'. Sometimes, however, the context requires that the subjunctive be rendered with potential force:

Sōlus est quī hoc nesciat.	He is the only one who does not know this. OR He is the only one who would not know this. (potential force)
Quid erat quod agerēmus?	What was there that we could do? (potential force)
Quis est quī hoc faciat?	Who is the (kind of) one who does this?; Who is there who does this? OR Who is there who would do this? (potential force)
Nēmō erat quī eum ridēret.	There was no one (the kind) who laughed at him. OR There was no one who would laugh at him. (potential force)
Dignus est quī nautis praesit.	He is the kind of worthy man (i.e., he belongs to the class of worthy men) who is (would be) in command of the sailors; he is worthy to be in command of the sailors.

Frequently, negative relative clauses of characteristic are introduced by **quīn** (= **quī** [**quae**, **quod**] **nōn**):

Nēmō est quīn haec intellegat.	There is no one <i>who</i> does <i>not</i> understand these things. OR There is no one <i>who</i> <i>would not</i> understand these things.
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

D. Relative Clauses of Result

Very closely allied to the relative clause of characteristic is the relative clause of result.

Nihil est tam malum quod mūtārī nōn possit .	There is nothing so bad <i>with the result that it cannot</i> be changed; there is nothing so bad <i>that it cannot</i> be changed.
Nēmō est tam caecus quī haec nōn videat .	There is no one so blind <i>who</i> does not <i>see</i> these things; there is no one so blind <i>that he does not see</i> these things.

Here there is a fusion of both a relative clause of characteristic and a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs

Purpose clauses were presented in Unit Three as having their verbs in the subjunctive and as being introduced by **ut** for the positive and **nē** for the negative. However, there are other ways of expressing purpose with the subjunctive in Latin:

1. **Quō** (ablative, 'by which') introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

Properātis **quō** celerius **adveniātis.** You hasten *by which you may arrive* more quickly; you hasten in order that you may arrive more quickly.

(= Properātis ut eō celerius adveniātis.)

2. Purpose clauses may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause. They may also be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, 'where'; **unde**, 'from where'; **quō**, '(to) where').

Nūntium mittit **quī** dē mōribus **incolārum roget.** He sends a messenger *who may ask* about the customs of the inhabitants; he sends a messenger *in order that he* (i.e., *the messenger*) *may ask* about the customs of the inhabitants.

(= Nūntium mittit ut is dē mōribus incolārum roget.)

Domum cucurri **ubi** mē **cēlārem.** I ran home *where I might hide*; I ran home in order that I might *hide there*.

(= Domum cucurri ut ibi mē cēlārem. I ran home in order that I might hide there.)

Scribēbat librōs **quōs** alii **legerent.** He wrote books *which others might read*; he wrote books *in order that others might read* them.

(= Scribēbat librōs ut eōs alii legerent.)

F. Indirect Reflexives

It has been pointed out in Unit Seven, section B4, that reflexives refer to the subject of the verb of their own clause. A reflexive so used is called a *direct reflexive*.

Senex multam pecūniam **sibi** parāvit. The old man got much money *for himself*.

However, in subordinate subjunctive clauses and in indirect statement, the reflexive usually refers to the subject of the *main* clause and not to that of the clause in which it appears. This use is called the *indirect reflexive*.

Dux lēgātum mittit quī **sibi** multam pecūniam paret. The leader sends a legate in order that he may get much money *for him(self)* (i.e., the leader).

Plēbs ōrat ut **sibi** parcāmus. The common people beg that we spare *them*.

Dicit illōs irātōs sē interficere velle. He says that those angry men want to kill *him*.

Vir rogāvit quam ob rem iste adu- The man asked why that young man
lēscēns ad sē vēnisset. of yours had come to *him* (i.e., to the man).

If, in the third example above, the author had wished to take the less frequent course and have his reflexive refer to the subject of the verb in its own clause (here, the infinitive *velle*), clarity could have been achieved by inserting the appropriate form of the intensive pronoun, **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**:

Dicit illōs irātōs sē **ipsōs** interficere velle. He says that those angry men want to kill *themselves* (i.e., their *very* selves).

UNIT FOURTEEN — VOCABULARY

accidō, -ere, -cidī, --	fall upon; happen, occur
adeō (adv.)	so, so much, so far
adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	come to, arrive
animus, -ī, M.	mind, rational spirit, soul
auctōritās, -tātis, F.	authority
aut (conj.)	or
aut . . . aut	either . . . or
Carthāgō, -inis, F.	Carthage, a city on the coast of North Africa
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum	speak, talk, converse with
dignus, -a, -um	worthy, deserving, suitable (+ abl.)
indignus, -a, -um	unworthy, unsuitable (+ abl.)

dolor, -ōris, M.	pain, grief, sorrow
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	effect, bring about
etiam (adv.)	even
hūc (adv.)	to this place
illūc (adv.)	to that place, up to that time
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus	stretch out, extend, aim, exert
inter (prep. + acc.)	between, among
ita (adv.)	so, in this way
modo (adv.)	only; just, just now
nōtus, -a, -um	known, well-known, customary
nūntiō (1)	report, announce
nūntius, -ī, M.	messenger, message
nūper (adv.)	recently
ōs, ōris, N.	mouth, expression
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus	show, expose, make plain
parō (1)	prepare, make ready, provide, get
paulus, -a, -um	little, small (compares irregularly: minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um)
pāx, pācis, F.	peace
polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum	promise
properō (1)	hasten
quālis, -e	of what kind, what kind of
rideō, -ēre, risī, risus	laugh (at)
senex, senis	old
sic (adv.)	so, in this way
tālis, -e	such, of such a sort
tālis . . . quālis	such . . . as
tempestās, -tātis, F.	weather, storm, season
trāns (prep. + acc.)	across, on the other side of
tum or tunc (adv.)	then, at that time
ubique (adv.)	everywhere, anywhere, wherever
vēritās, -tātis, F.	truth
vincō, -ere, vicī, victus	conquer, beat, overcome

UNIT FOURTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Accidō, accidere, accidi, ‘fall upon, happen, occur’, is a compound of **ad** and **cadō**; it lacks a fourth principal part and the perfect active stem loses the reduplication of the uncompounded form.

Adveniō is obviously a compound of **ad** and **veniō** and so it means ‘come to, arrive’. From the fourth principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun, **adventus, adventūs, M.**, ‘arrival’.

Anima (Unit Two) was defined as ‘soul, spirit, life-force’; **animus, animī, M.**, is ‘mind, rational spirit, soul’.

Auctōritās, auctōritātis, F., is the abstract noun from **auctor**; it means ‘authority’.

Colloquor, a compound of **com-** and **loquor**, means ‘speak, talk, converse with’.

Dignus, -a, -um, ‘worthy’, and its opposite **indignus, -a, -um**, ‘unworthy’, both govern the ablative case: **Multis dōnis est digna**, ‘She is worthy of many gifts’.

Intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus and **ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus**, both have the same stem in the present and in the perfect active: **intendimus**, ‘we stretch out’, ‘we have stretched out’; **ostendit**, ‘he shows’, ‘he has shown’.

Nōtus, -a, -um is simply the perfect passive participle of **nōscō** used as an adjective meaning ‘known, well-known, customary’. The original root of **nōscō** began with the letter **g-** (**gnōscō**). The Latin **g** is represented by the **k** in the German “kennen” and the English “know”.

Nūntiō and **nūntius** are obviously related; **nūntiō**, a first conjugation verb, is ‘report, announce’, and **nūntius, nūntiū, M.**, is the one bringing the report, ‘messenger’, or the report itself, ‘message’. There is also an adjective **nūntius, -a, -um**, ‘announcing’.

Ōs, ōris, N., is ‘mouth, expression’. The diminutive **ōsculum, ōsculī, N.**, is both ‘little mouth’ and ‘kiss’.

Parō, a first conjugation verb already mentioned (vocabulary notes in Unit Thirteen) means ‘prepare, make ready, provide, get’. From the last principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun **parātus, parātūs, M.**, ‘preparation’.

The root of **senex, senis**, ‘old’, is found in the words **senātor, senātōris, M.**, ‘senator’, and **senātus, senātūs, M.**, ‘senate’. The senators originally were the older men who through their wisdom and experience were thought capable of guiding the state.

Quālis, -e, ‘what kind of, of what kind’, and **tālis, -e**, ‘such, of such a sort’, are correlatives: **Tālis dux erat quālis pater fuerat**, ‘He was such a leader as his father had been; as a leader, he was of the same character as his father’.

Tempestās, tempestātis, F., is ‘weather’, good or bad, as well as ‘storm, season’.

Vēritās, vēritātis, F., ‘truth’, is the abstract noun from **vērus, -a, -um**, ‘true’.

Vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus is ‘conquer, beat, overcome’. Remember Caesar’s expression, **Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**, ‘I came, I saw, I conquered’, for the third principal part of this verb. Do not confuse the last principal part **victus** with the last principal part of **vīvō**, ‘live’, which is **vīctus**.

SUFFIXES ADDED TO PRODUCE NOUNS

The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tūra**, and **-tus** added to the root or stem of a verb produce abstract nouns and names of actions.

opīniō, **-ōnis**, F. (**opinor**, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, 'suppose, imagine'), 'opinion, supposition'

āctiō, **-ōnis**, F., 'doing, performing, action, act'

mūnitiō, **-ōnis**, F., 'defending, fortifying, protecting'

iactūra, **-ae**, F., 'a throwing, a throwing away'

iūctūra, **-ae**, F., 'a joining, uniting, juncture'

arbitrātus, **-ūs**, M., 'judgment, free-will, decision'

vīctus, **-ūs**, M., 'way of life'

The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōnium**, and **-mōnia** added to the root or stem of a verb produce nouns denoting acts, or means and results of acts.

agmen, **agminis**, N., 'a collected multitude in motion or moving forward, a line of battle, march'

cōnāmen, **-inis**, N., 'effort, exertion, struggle'

hortāmen, **-inis**, N., 'incitement, encouragement, exhortation'

experīmentum, **-ī**, N., 'proof, test, trial'

mōmentum, **-ī**, N., 'movement, motion'

mūnimentum, **-ī**, N., 'defense, fortification, protection'

alimōnium, **-ī**, N., (**alō**, **alere**, **alui**, **altus**, 'nourish, support'), 'nourishment, support'

parsimōnia, **-ae**, F. (**parcō**), 'sparingness, frugality, thrift'

The suffix **-tōrium** added to the stem or root of a verb produces a noun meaning the place of the action.

audītōrium, **-ī**, N., 'the place where something is heard, lecture room, hall of justice'

dormītōrium, **-ī**, N., (**dormiō**, **-īre**, **-īvī** (**-īī**), **-ītus**, 'sleep'), 'sleeping room, dormitory'

The suffix **-ārius** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning 'the person belonging to *or* the person engaged in *or* the person concerned with'.

argentārius, **-ī**, M., (**argentum**, **-ī**, N., 'silver'), 'a money changer, banker'

apiārius, **-ī**, M., (**apis**, **apis**, F., 'bee'), 'beekeeper'

The suffix **-ārium** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning 'place for'.

apiārium, **-ī**, N., (**apis**, **apis**, F., 'bee'), 'beehive'

aviārium, **-ī**, N., (**avis**, **avis**, F., 'bird'), 'a place where birds are kept, aviary'

librārium, **-ī**, N., 'a place in which to keep books, bookcase'

UNIT FOURTEEN — DRILL

I. Relative Clauses of Characteristic, Indefinite Pronouns, Questions, etc.

1. a) Ea est quae pecūniam mirātur.
 b) Ea est quae pecūniam mirētur.
 c) Quis est quī pecūniam nōn mirētur?
 d) Nēmō est quī pecūniam nōn mirētur.
 e) Nēmō est quīn pecūniam mirētur.
 f) Homō quīdam nōn vult mirārī pecūniam.
 g) Nōn tam stultus ('foolish') est ut pecūniam mirētur.
 h) Mirātur eam quae pecūniam mirētur.
2. a) Illi sunt quī Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō arbitrantur.
 b) Sunt quī Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō dicant.
 c) Quīdam dicunt Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō.
 d) Horātius dicitur ā quibusdam maior esse Vergiliō.
 e) Alii rogant num Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; alii rogant cūr Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; quisque opiniōnem suam habet. Quot hominēs, tot sententiae.
3. a) Quis est quī tantum malum facere possit?
 b) Is est quī tantum malum facere possit.
 c) Quis crēdat eum tantum malum facere posse?
 d) Quis scit cūr tantum malum fēcerit?
 e) Dīcitur hoc fēcisse prō fēminā quādam.
 f) Nēmō scit quis sit fēmina.
4. a) Aliquis dīxit quendam vīcisse Caesarem. [vincō. -ere. vīcī, victus. 'conquer']
 b) Aliquis dixit Caesarem ā quōdam victum esse.
 c) Quīdam dixit aliquem vīcisse Caesarem.
 d) Quīdam dixērunt aliquōs vīcisse Caesarem.
 e) Quis est quī dixit Caesarem victum esse?
 f) Quis est quī dixerit Caesarem victum esse?
 g) Quis est quīn dixerit Caesarem victum esse?
 h) Sunt quī dicant eum bonum esse.
 i) Nēmō est quī dicat eum bonum esse.
 j) Nēmō est quīn huic faveat.
5. a) Hominēs quīdam mirantur verenturque Caesarem.
 b) Rogant quālis vir sit.
 c) Negant quidquam maius ab ūllō factum esse.
 d) Caesar tālis est quālem omnēs verentur.
 e) Caesar est quem omnēs vereantur.
 f) Dīcunt Caesarem tālem esse quālem omnēs vereantur.
 g) Quisque dicit idem.

- h) Dicunt Caesarem esse verendum.
 i) Dicunt tālem virum quālem Caesarem esse verendum.
 j) Caesar dīgnus est quī timeātur. [**dīgnus, -a, -um**, 'worthy']
6. a) Nōne sum idem quī fui?
 b) Num sum idem quī fui?
 c) Possum iterum fieri idem quī fui? [**iterum**, adv., 'again']
 d) Quis est qui possit fieri idem quī fuit?
 e) Negō quemquam posse fieri eundem quī fuerit.
 f) Iuvenis fui, senior fiēbam, mox nihil fiam.
 g) Utinam iuvenis nunc fierem.
 h) Quī senēs fiunt, iuvenēs esse volunt.
 i) Quis est quīn sē senem fieri neget?
7. a) Rogat quis sibi dōnum dederit.
 b) Rogant num quis sibi dōnum dederit.
 c) Rogant num quis sibi ipsi dōnum dederit.
 d) Dicit nēminem sibi dōnum dedisse.
 e) Negat quemquam sibi dōnum dedisse.
 f) Dicit quendam sibi dōnum dedisse.
 g) Dicit dōnum sibi ā nullō datum esse.
 h) Crēdet vix cuiquam.
 i) Crēdit nēminem in hāc urbe memorem esse suī.
 j) Crēdit custōdem sē neglētūrum esse.

II. Purpose and Result Clauses

1. a) Parvā vōce loquor, ut audīs.
 b) Parvā vōce loquor ut audiās.
 c) Tālī vōce loquor ut nōn audiar.
 d) Tālī vōce loquor ut nōn audiās.
 e) Tālis vōx mihi est quae audiātur.
 f) Parvā vōce loquor nē audiar.
 g) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audirēs.
 h) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audirer.
 i) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut audirer.
 j) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut nōn audirer.
 k) Quae vōx nōn erat tanta quae audiri nōn posset?
2. a) Mittunt militēs quī hostēs superant.
 b) Mittunt militēs quī hostēs superent.
 c) Mittent militēs quī hostēs superent.
 d) Mīsērunt militēs quī hostēs superārent.
 e) Pūgnāvērunt militēs ut hostēs superārent.
 f) Pūgnāvērunt militēs tantā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.

- g) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.
 h) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs tantā virtūte ut nōn superārentur.
 i) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs magnā virtūte nē superārentur.
 j) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārentur.
3. a) Morātus sum ut hominī placērem.
 b) Tam diū morātus es ut hominī placērēs.
 c) Morātus est nē hominī placēret.
 d) Morāti sumus ut hominī placērēmus.
 e) Tam diū morāti sumus ut hominī placērēmus.
 f) Tam diū morāti estis ut hominī nōn placērētur.
 g) Morāti sunt nē hominī placērent.
4. a) Hortor ut veniat.
 b) Hortātus sum ut venīret.
 c) Verbīs multis hortātus sum nē venīret.
 d) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut nōn venīret.
 e) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut venīret.
 f) Sic hortābor ut nōn veniat.
 g) Cum audāciā hortābor nē veniat.
 h) Efficiāmus ut hortēmur nē veniat.
5. a) Curris quō celerius praemia accipiās.
 b) Cucurristis quō celerius praemia acciperētis.
 c) Tam cucurristis ut celerius praemia acciperētis.
 d) Nōn cucurristis quō tardius praemia acciperētis. [**tardē**, adv., ‘late, tardily’]
 e) Cucurristis quō praemia acciperētis.
 f) Domum currō ubi praemia accipiam.
 g) Adulēscēns effēcit ut praemia sibi acciperēmus.
 h) Adulēscēns malus effēcit nē praemia acciperēmus.
 i) Facite nē tam caeci fiātis ut haec nōn intellegātis.
 j) Quis erat tam caecus quīn haec intellegeret?

UNIT FOURTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Tam celeriter cucurrit ut quisque eum admirārētur (admirātus sit).
2. Senī nūper erat tantus dolor ut ridēre nōn posset.
3. Tālis pāx est ut bellum ubique parētur.
4. Accidit ut tempestās sic mala esset ut nōs omnēs magnopere timērēmus.
5. Ita dignus laude erat ut omnēs eī ignōscerent.
6. Fit ut nēmō plūs umquam pollicitus sit quam ille.
7. Efficiāmus ut ōra nostra vērītatem ostendant.

- hominum moveantur, videntēs eōrum, quibuscum ūsū iūcti esse possunt, virtūtem et vēritātem? [**mīrus**, -a, -um, 'wonderful, strange'; **ūsus**, *here*, 'familiarity']
22. Neque enim quisquam est tam inimicus Mūsīs quī nōn trādī versibus aeternam suōrum factōrum fāmam facile patiātur. [**Mūsa**, -ae, F., 'Muse'; *here*, a goddess who inspires poets; **versus**, -ūs, M., 'a line of poetry']
 23. Hic sunt nūntiī nōn parvae auctōritātis. Hic sunt nūntiī tantae auctōritātis ut multī in urbe diūtius mānsūrī sint quō cum eis plūs colloquantur.
 24. Cīvēs civitātum quae habuissent rēgēs sic ridēbātis ut irātissimi fierent.
 25. Quis nostrum tam animō dūrō fuit ut poētae morte nūper nōn movērētur?
 26. Tanta illius bellī fāma ad nostram civitātem dēlāta est ut duo virī maximae virtūtis mitterentur lēgātī ut vēritātem dē eius nātūrā cognōscerent.
 27. Modo fac nē quid aliud hōc tempore agās nisi ut hunc dolōrem ex animō quam celerrimē pellās.
 28. Neque is sum quī mortis periculum timeam. Sunt autem quī dē hōc timōre cōgitāre nōlint.
 29. Sapientia est ūna quae tālem timōrem pellat ex animīs.
 30. Sī sapientia esset ūna quae timōrem pelleret ex animīs, tam cupidī sapientiae essēmus ut multōs librōs legerēmus.
 31. Fieri nōn potest ut eum tū nōn cognōveris.
 32. Tam dēmēns erat ut nihil nisi dē ruīnā populī Rōmānī cōgitāret.
 33. Omnibus parātis, tantis viribus ubique pūgnātum est ut nēmō urbem ingredi atque vincere posset; nisi quī sapiēns dē pāce loquī voluisset. multō diūtius pūgnātum esset.
 34. Litterās tuās lēgimus simillimās eārum quās heri lēgimus, minimē dignās quae ā tē ad nōs mitterentur. Numquam tibi nocuimus; quam ob rem tālēs litterās mittis?
 35. Ita efficitur ut omnis rēs pūblica in magnō periculō sit.
 36. Accidit ut omnēs in nāve sē aut mortis aut servitūtis periculō trāderent.
 37. Imperātor adeō irātus erat ut comitēs mentēs studiīs et rēbus honestīs intenderent quō melius sibi placērent.
 38. Inventī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent et sē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō lectō interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur. [**eques**, **equitis**, M., 'knight'; **lectus**, -ī, M., 'bed']
 39. Quid est enim quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit? in quā nēmō est extrā istam turbam impiōrum hominum quī tē nōn timeat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit. [**extrā**, prep. + acc., 'outside']
 40. Tunc tālis vir quālis dux iste indignus laude habēbātur; quam ob rem neque praemia neque glōriam parāvit.
 41. Fieri nōn potest ut cognōscās unde vēnerit iste senex, quālis sit. Est tamen tam nōtae fāmae ut in ōre omnium semper sit.

42. Quālis vir scelera huius modī facere audeat?
43. Fēcit ut amici nihil aliud eō tempore agerent nisi ut dolōrem ex sē ipsis quam primum expellerent.
44. Dignī erant quī civitāte dōnārentur.
45. Fieri nūllō modō poterat quīn victis parcerētur.
46. Nēmō tam impius est quīn hoc iūre factum esse fateātur.
47. Quae rēs efficiēbat ut cibus sine periculō portārī posset.
48. Tālis est quaeque rēs pūblica, quālis eius nātūra aut voluntās, quī illam regit. [voluntās, -tātis, F., 'desire, inclination']
49. Hic, hīc sunt inter nōs, amice, in hōc orbis terrārum gravissimō cōsiliō, quī dē nostrum omnium ruīnā, quī dē huius urbis atque adeō dē orbis terrārum ruīnā cōgitent. [cōsiliū, -ī, N., here, 'the people who deliberate, a council'; adeō, adv., here, 'indeed']

II.

1. They ran across the fields so quickly that they arrived home faster than their friends.
2. There is no one who does not know that the commander of the allies has been in charge of the troops for many years. ["has been in charge": Latin requires the present infinitive here to denote the present perfect idea. The fact that the action began in the past is represented by the adverbial "for many years".]
3. The storm was so great that everyone wondered why the ships had not been destroyed.
4. They so wanted to get help that they ran as quickly as possible to where they might get it.
5. He was the only one in Rome who did not know what his daughter was doing.
6. It is possible that the old men have suffered more sorrow than we know.

III. Readings

A. Petronius, *Satyricon* 111.1:

Mātrōna¹ quaedam Ephesi² tam nōtae erat pudicitiae,³ ut vicinārum⁴ quoque⁵ gentium fēminās ad spectāculum⁶ sui ēvocāret.⁷

¹ mātrōna, -ae, F., 'a married woman' ² Ephesus, -ī, M., a town in Asia Minor
³ pudicitia, -ae, F., 'purity, chastity' ⁴ vicinus, -a, -um, 'neighboring' ⁵ quoque (adv.), 'also'
⁶ spectāculum, -ī, N., 'sight, spectacle' ⁷ ēvocō (1), 'call forth, summon'

- ### B. Cicero chides the senate for their inaction regarding Catiline and his fellow conspirators and urges those who wish ill to the state to depart at once (*In Catilinam* I, selections from sections 12 and 13):

Nōnnūllī¹ sunt in hōc ōrdine² quī aut ea quae imminent³ nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent;⁴ quī spem Catilinae mollibus⁵ sententiis aluērunt;⁶ auctōritātem secūtī multī nōn sōlum⁷ improbi,⁸ vērūm etiam⁷ imperiti,⁹ sī in hunc animadvertissem,¹⁰ crūdēliter factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit, in Manliāna¹¹ castra¹² ierit, nēminem tam stultum¹³ futūrum esse quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem¹⁴ esse factam, nēminem tam improbum⁸ quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc rei pūblicaē pestem¹⁵ paulisper¹⁶ reprimi,¹⁷ nōn in perpetuum¹⁸ comprimī¹⁹ posse. Quod sī²⁰ sē ēiēcērit²¹ sēcūmque suōs ēdūxerit,²² dēlēbitur nōn modo²³ haec tam adulta²⁴ rei pūblicaē pestis,¹⁵ vērūm etiam²³ stirps²⁵ ac sēmen²⁶ malōrum omnium.

Quārē sēcēdant²⁷ improbi,⁸ sēcernant²⁸ sē ā bonis, mūrō²⁹ dēnique,³⁰ id quod saepe iam dixi, discernantur³¹ ā nōbis. Polliceor hoc vōbis, patrēs cōnscriptī,³² tantam in nōbis cōnsulibus futūram esse diligentiam, tantam in vōbis auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus³³ Rōmānis virtūtem, tantam in omnibus bonis cōnsēnsiōnem,³⁴ ut Catilinae profectiōne³⁵ omnia patefacta,³⁶ inlūstrāta,³⁷ oppressa, vindicāta esse³⁸ videātis.

¹ nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, 'some' ² ōrdō, -inis, M., 'order, class, body of men' ³ immineō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'threaten, be imminent' ⁴ dissimulō (1), 'conceal, leave unnoticed' ⁵ mollis, -e, 'gentle, mild' ⁶ alō, -ere, aluī, altus, 'nourish, support' ⁷ nōn sōlum . . . vērūm etiam (adv.), 'not only . . . but also' ⁸ improbus, -a, -um, 'bad, wicked' ⁹ imperitus, -a, -um, 'inexperienced, ignorant' ¹⁰ animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, 'turn one's attention to, notice' (often with in + accusative) ¹¹ Manliānus, -a, -um, 'of Manlius (a Roman name)' ¹² castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ¹³ stultus, -a, -um, 'foolish' ¹⁴ coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy' ¹⁵ pestis, -is, F., 'infectious disease, pestilence' ¹⁶ paulisper (adv.), 'for a short time' ¹⁷ reprimō (re- + premō), 'hinder, repress' ¹⁸ in perpetuum (adverbial phrase), 'forever' ¹⁹ comprimō (com- + premō), 'suppress, subdue' ²⁰ quod sī, 'but if' ²¹ ēiciō (ē + iaciō), -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, 'throw out' ²² ēdūcō (ē + dūcō), 'lead out' ²³ nōn modo . . . vērūm etiam (adv.), 'not only . . . but also' ²⁴ adultus, -a, -um, 'grown up, adult, advanced' ²⁵ stirps, stirpis, F., 'root' ²⁶ sēmen, -inis, N., 'seed' ²⁷ sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, 'withdraw' ²⁸ sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'separate' ²⁹ mūrus, -ī, M., 'wall' ³⁰ dēnique (adv.), 'finally, at last' ³¹ discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'set apart' ³² cōnscribō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'; patrēs cōnscriptī, 'senators' ³³ eques, -itis, M., 'knight' ³⁴ cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, F., 'agreement, harmony' ³⁵ profectiō, -ōnis, F., 'departure' ³⁶ patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, 'disclose' ³⁷ inlūstrō (1), 'elucidate, explain' ³⁸ vindicō (1), 'avenge, punish'

UNIT FIFTEEN

A. *cum* Clauses

Cum is not only a preposition meaning 'with', but it occurs also as a subordinating conjunction with the meanings 'when', 'since', and 'although'. The verb in such clauses is most often in the subjunctive, its tense determined by the rules for sequence of tenses after the main verb. The meaning of **cum** in such clauses must be determined from the context of the sentence.

1. TEMPORAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES

When the **cum** clause refers strictly to *time* and its action is coordinate with that of the main verb, it is a *temporal cum clause* and **cum** is translated 'when'. Such clauses have their verbs in the *indicative*.

Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō. (*At the very time*) when I see you, I shall be happy.

Cum tē vidī, fēlix eram. (*At the very time*) when I saw you, I was happy.

If the **cum** clause states the *circumstances* in which the action of the main verb takes place, it is called a *circumstantial cum clause* and **cum** is translated 'when'. When the action in such **cum** clauses refers to *present* or *future* time, the *indicative* is used.

Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō. *Under the circumstances of my seeing you, I shall be happy; when I see you, I shall be happy.*

When the action in the circumstantial **cum** clause is in *past* time, the *subjunctive* is used.

Cum tē vidērem, fēlix eram. *When I saw you (i.e., not at a point of time, but under these circumstances), I was happy.*

2. CAUSAL CLAUSES

When **cum** translates as 'since' or 'because', the **cum** clause is *causal*. The verb in *causal cum clauses* is *always* in the *subjunctive*.

- Cum tē videam**, fēlix sum. *Since I see you, I am happy.*
Cum tē viderim, fēlix sum. *Since I saw you, I am happy.*
Cum tē vidērem, fēlix eram. *Since I saw you, I was happy.*
Cum tē vidissem, fēlix eram. *Since I had seen you, I was happy.*

3. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

When **cum** translates ‘although’, the **cum** clause is *concessive*. Frequently **tamen**, ‘nevertheless’, in the main clause indicates that **cum** is to be taken as ‘although’, but the **tamen** is not always there. *Concessive cum clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive.*

- Cum tē videam**, fēlix (tamen) sum. *Although I see you, (nevertheless) I am happy.*
Cum tē viderim, fēlix (tamen) sum. *Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I am happy.*
Cum tē vidērem, fēlix (tamen) eram. *Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I was happy.*
Cum tē vidissem, fēlix (tamen) eram. *Although I had seen you, (nevertheless) I was happy.*

THUS:

	PRIMARY SEQUENCE	SECONDARY SEQUENCE
cum Temporal	indicative	indicative
cum Circumstantial	indicative	subjunctive
cum Causal	subjunctive	subjunctive
cum Concessive	subjunctive	subjunctive

4. *cum*, ‘whenever’

If **cum** means “whenever”, it takes a *perfect* indicative when the main verb is present, a *pluperfect* indicative when the main verb is imperfect.

- Cum tē vīdī**, fēlix sum. *Whenever I see you, I am happy.*
Cum tē vīderam, fēlix eram. *Whenever I saw you, I was happy.*

B. *cum* Clauses and Ablatives Absolute

The sentences used to illustrate the ablative absolute construction in Unit Ten might also have been expressed with **cum** clauses with no change in meaning:

- Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet. } When her husband comes, the
 Cum coniūnx veniet, fēmina discēdet. } woman will depart.
- Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet. } Since (although) her husband is
 Cum coniūnx veniat, fēmina discēdet. } coming, the woman will depart.
- Coniuge visō, fēmina discessit. }
 Cum coniugem vidisset, fēmina } When (after, since, although) she saw (had
 discessit. } seen) her husband, the woman departed.

It will be noted in this last example that, whereas the ablative absolute with the perfect participle must be expressed in the passive because of the lack of a perfect active participle (since *videō*, *-ēre* is not a deponent verb) and also in order to avoid concordance of subjects in both clauses, the *cum* clause may use the active voice.

C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

1. TEMPORAL

ut
ubi
postquam
quandō } + indicative

Ut (*ubi*, *postquam*, *quandō*) *mē risit*, When (after) he laughed at me, I
irātus fiēbam. became angry.

2. CAUSAL

quoniam
quandō } almost always with indicative

quod
quia } + indicative or subjunctive; see section D1

Quoniam (*quandō*) *mē risit*, Since (because) he laughed at me, I became
irātus fiēbam. angry.

3. CONCESSIVE

quamquam
etsī } + indicative

quamvis + subjunctive
(*quam vis*, 'as you wish')

Quamquam (*etsī*) *mē risit*, *irātus* Although he laughed at me, I did not
(*tamen*) *nōn fiēbam*. (nevertheless) become angry.

Quamvis *mē risisset*, *irātus* Although he had laughed at me, I
(*tamen*) *nōn fiēbam*. did not (nevertheless) become
angry.

D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive

Several conjunctions take either the indicative or the subjunctive. The distinction is based on the difference between these two moods, which was stated in Unit One: The indicative is the mood of fact, while the subjunctive is the mood of probability, intention, or idea.

1. **quod** OR **quia**, 'because'

Abest **quod** (**quia**) corpore He is absent *because he is (actually)* not
validus nōn est. healthy in body (i.e., the speaker believes
and accepts responsibility for the excuse).

Abest **quod** (**quia**) corpore He is absent *because he is (allegedly)* not
validus nōn sit. healthy in body (i.e., the speaker does
not accept responsibility for the excuse
and so does not express it as a fact: it is
within the realm of probability or idea).

This use of **quod** with the subjunctive is referred to as a **quod** clause of *alleged reason*.

2. **dum** OR **dōnec**, 'while, as long as, until'

Dum or **dōnec** meaning 'while, as long as' or 'until', when referring merely to a temporal idea, takes the indicative.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) vēnī. He waited *until I (actually) came*.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) rēgīnae He waited *until (while) I greeted the*
salūtem dixī. queen.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) voluit. He waited *as long as he wished*.

NOTE: **Dum**, 'while', normally uses the present indicative (the so-called historical present) to denote continued action in past time.

Dum haec geruntur, nūntius ad *While these things were (are) going on, a*
mē vēnit. messenger came to me.

When a notion of purpose, intention, or a future idea is involved, the subjunctive is used.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) venīrem. He waited *until I should come*; he
waited *for me to come*. (i.e., there
is nothing in the sentence to say
that "I" actually *did* come; the
clause is expressed as an idea or
an intention, not a fact)

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) rēgīnae He waited *until I should greet the*
salūtem dicerem. queen; he waited *for me to greet*
the queen.

3. **antequam** OR **priusquam**, 'before'

When **antequam** and **priusquam** refer strictly to time, they take the indicative.

Antequam (**Priusquam**) vēnī, *Before I came, he went away. (stated as a*
discessit. fact)

When purpose, intention, or idea is involved, the subjunctive is used in secondary sequence.

Antequam (Priusquam) venirem, *Before I could come,* he went away. (i.e.,
discessit. nothing in the sentence states that,
as a fact, "I" actually did come)

In primary sequence, the present or future perfect indicative is generally used (less frequently, the present subjunctive).

Antequam (Priusquam) vēnerō, *Before I (shall have) come,* he will leave.
discēdet.

Frequently **ante/quam** or **prius/quam** is split (tmesis) so as to give the sentence a greater degree of cohesion:

Ante discessit **quam** venirem. He went away *before* I could come.
Prius clāmāvit **quam** mē vīdit. He shouted *before* he saw me.

E. Clauses of Proviso

Dum, modo, and **dummodo** (all meaning 'if only, provided that') are used to express conditional wishes with the present and imperfect subjunctives. The negative uses **nē**.

Ōderint, dum (modo, dummodo) timeant. Let them hate, *provided that they*
fear.

Id saepe faciat, dum (modo, dummodo) nē miser fiat. Let him do this often, *provided that*
he does not become unhappy.

F. Accusative of Exclamation

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Oh, the times, oh, the customs!, What times (these
are), what customs!

Patriam perditam! Oh wasted land!

Puerum miserum! Unhappy boy!

UNIT FIFTEEN — VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus	be away, be absent
absēns, absentis	absent
adsum, adesse, adfuī, --	be present
agitō (1)	disturb, stir up
antequam (conj.)	before
appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	appear, come in sight, be apparent

calamitās, -tātis, F.	disaster, calamity
contrā (prep. + acc.; adv.)	against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn
cum (conj.)	when, since, although
dēsīnō, -ere, dēsīi, --	stop, cease (frequently with infinitive or ablative: pūgnāre dēsīit , 'he stopped fighting'; inimīcitiā dēsīit , 'he stopped (his) hostility')
dōnec (conj.)	while, until, as long as
dum (conj.)	while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
dummodo (conj.)	if only, provided that
etsī (conj.)	although, even if (+ indicative)
exiguus, -a, -um	small
exspectō (1)	wait (for), expect
fore	= futūrus, -a, -um esse (future infinitive of sum)
fors, fortis, -ium, F.	chance
fulgor, -ōris, M.	lightning, flash, brightness
grātus, -a, -um	pleasing (+ dat.)
igitur (postpositive conj.)	therefore
ingenium, -ī, N.	nature, talent, disposition, natural quality
inimīcitiā, -ae, F.	hostility
interdum (adv.)	sometimes
iūdex, iūdicis, M.	judge; jury (pl.)
iūdicium, -ī, N.	trial, judgment, decision
memoria, -ae, F.	memory
misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus	mix, intermingle, blend
modo (conj.)	if only, provided that
nusquam (adv.)	nowhere
nūtrix, nūtrīcis, F.	nurse
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus	fall, set, die
omnīnō (adv.)	all in all, as a whole, entirely
pereō, -īre, -ī (-ivī), -itus	die, perish
priusquam (conj.)	before
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, --	be useful, do good, benefit, profit (+ dat.)
putō (1)	think
quamvis (conj.)	although (+ subjunctive)
quasi (adv.)	as if, as it were
quidem (adv.)	indeed
nē . . . quidem (enclosing the word or words they emphasize)	not even
quōad (conj.)	as long as, as far as, until (takes same construc- tion as dum and dōnec)

quoniam (conj.)	since (+ indicative)
redeō, -īre, -ī, -itus	return, go back
simul ac (or atque) (conj.)	as soon as (+ indicative)
somnus, -ī, M.	sleep, dream
supersum, -esse, -fuī, --	be left over, survive
ubi (conj.)	when

UNIT FIFTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, a compound of **ab** and **sum** meaning ‘be away, be absent’, has a present participle **absēns**, ‘absent’; **adsum, adesse, adfuī, --**, ‘be present’, has no fourth principal part. (Note that although **ab** as a prefix may be shortened to **ā-**, **ad** does not shorten except in such instances as **adspiciō**, ‘look at’, which is usually spelled **āspiciō**. This normally happens before **gn, sp, sc, and st.**)

Prōsum, another compound of **sum**, uses **-d-** as a connecting consonant between **prō** and **esse**, **prōdesse, prōfuī, --**, ‘be useful, do good, benefit, profit’. This connecting **-d-** is used to prevent hiatus (a pause between vowels).

Supersum, also lacking a fourth principal part, means ‘be left over, survive.’

Antequam and **priusquam**, both meaning ‘before’, may be cut into two parts, **ante...quam, prius...quam** for greater cohesion in the sentence. This is called tmesis: **Ante (Prius) discessimus quam tē vidēre potuimus**, ‘We left before we could see you’.

Appāreō is a compound of **ad** and **pāreō**; it means ‘appear, come in sight, be apparent’.

Dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsī, -- is a compound of **dē** and **sinō** which originally meant ‘let, set’, but later was used exclusively as ‘allow, permit’. **Dēsinō**, literally ‘set down’, means ‘stop, cease’.

Exspectō, a compound of **ex** and **spectō**, ‘look out for’, means ‘wait (for), expect’.

Fore is often used instead of **futūrus (-a, -um) esse**, the future infinitive of **sum**. **Āfore, affore (adsum), prōfore** also are used.

Fors, fortis, F., is a noun meaning ‘chance’. Notice that the genitive singular looks like the adjective **fortis** and that the ablative singular **forte**, ‘by chance’, looks like the neuter adjective **forte**.

Igitur, ‘therefore’, is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

We have already learned **amicitia** and so **inimicitia** is clearly ‘hostility’.

Iūdex, iūdicis, M., and iūdicium, iūdicī, N., both have the same root; **iūdex** is ‘judge’, and in the plural, ‘jury’, and **iūdicium** is ‘trial, judgment, decision’.

Nusquam, ‘nowhere’, is the opposite of **usquam**, ‘anywhere’, and should not be confused with **numquam**, ‘never’.

Nūtrix, **nūtrīcis**, F., is ‘she who suckles, nourishes, brings up’ (**nūtriō**, **nūtrire**, **nūtrivī** (**nūtrīi**), **nūtrītus**), thus ‘nurse’.

Occidō, a compound of **ob** and **cadō**, means ‘fall, set, die’, and in this last meaning it is synonymous with **pereō** (a compound of **per** and **eō**, ‘go through [life]’, thus ‘die, perish’). It gives the stem of “occident”, the place of the falling (i.e., setting) sun, thus, the West.

Redeō is another compound of **eō** (**re-** and **eō**, with a connecting **-d-** to avoid hiatus); it means ‘return, go back’.

Quidem is an adverb, ‘indeed’; **nē . . . quidem**, ‘not even’, surround the word or words they emphasize: **Cum nullā nē sorōre quidem collocūta est**, ‘She spoke with no woman, not even her sister’.

Simul is an adverb meaning ‘at the same time, together’, but **simul ac** or **simul atque** is a conjunction introducing a verb in the indicative and meaning ‘as soon as’.

PREFIXES (from prepositions)

ā-, **ab-** (**abs-**, **au-**, **as-** [before **-p-**, very rare]), ‘away’

abdūcō, ‘lead away’

aberrō, ‘wander away’

absolvō, ‘loosen from, set free’

abstineō, ‘keep off *or* away; abstain from’

asportō, ‘carry off *or* away’

aufugiō, ‘flee, run away; flee from’

āvertō (**vertō**, **-ere**, **vertī**, **versus**, ‘turn’), ‘turn away’

ad- (**ac-**, **af-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**), ‘to, toward’

accingō (**cingō**, **-ere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus**, ‘gird’), ‘gird to’

addūcō, ‘lead to’

affor (**for**, **fārī**, **fātus sum**, ‘speak’), ‘speak to’

aggerō, ‘bring *or* bear to *or* toward’

alloquor, ‘speak to’

appōnō, ‘apply to, add’

arrīdeō, ‘smile toward’

assiliō (**saliō**, **-ire**, **--**, **-itus**, ‘leap’), ‘leap to *or* upon’

atrahō (**trahō**, **-ere**, **trāxī**, **tractus**, ‘draw, drag’), ‘draw to *or* toward; attract’

ante-, ‘before’

antecurrō, ‘run before’

anteeō, ‘go before’

anteferō, ‘carry before, prefer, anticipate’

- circum-**, ‘around, on all sides’
circumagō, ‘drive around’
circumdūcō, ‘lead around’
circumspectō, ‘look around’
- (**cum**, preposition) **com-** (**col-**, **con-**, **co-**, **cor-**), ‘together (with), completely’
collaudō, ‘praise very much’
collocō (**locō** (1), ‘place’), ‘place together’
comedō (**edō**, **-ere**, **ēdī**, **ēsus**, ‘eat’), ‘eat entirely’
conveniō, ‘come together’
cooperiō (**operiō**, **-ire**, **-uī**, **-tus**, ‘cover’), ‘cover wholly’
corrivō (**rivō** (1), ‘lead, draw off’), ‘conduct streams of water together’
- dē-**, ‘down, utterly, from’
dēcēdō, ‘go away, withdraw, depart’
dēcidō, ‘fall down’
dērelinquō (**relinquō**, **-ere**, **reliquī**, **relictus**, ‘leave behind, abandon’)
‘forsake wholly’
- ē-**, **ex-** (**ef-**), ‘out’
ēdormiō (**dormiō**, **-ire**, **-īvi** (**-īi**), **-ītus**, ‘sleep’), ‘sleep out, sleep away’
effundō (**fundō**, **-ere**, **fūdī**, **fūsus**, ‘pour’), ‘pour out’
exeō, ‘go out’
- in-** (**il-**, **im-**, **ir-**), ‘in, on, against’
illigō (**ligō** (1), ‘bind’), ‘bind on’
immittō, ‘send into, send against’
ineō, ‘go in’
irrigō (**rigō** (1), ‘wet, water’), ‘lead (water) to (a place), irrigate’
- inter-**, ‘between’
interpōnō, ‘put *or* place between *or* among’
intersum, ‘be between’
interveniō, ‘come between’
- ob-** (**oc-**, **of-**, **op-**), ‘toward, to meet, against’
obveniō, ‘come to meet’
occurrō, ‘run up to, run to meet’
offulgeō, ‘shine against *or* upon’
oppōnō, ‘set *or* place against’
- per-**, ‘through, thoroughly’
pererrō, ‘wander through’
perfluō (**fluō**, **fluere**, **flūxī**, **flūxus**, ‘flow’), ‘flow through’
permoveō, ‘move thoroughly, stir up thoroughly’
permūniō, ‘fortify completely’
permūtō, ‘change completely’
- post-**, ‘after’

- postferō**, 'put after'
postpōnō, 'put after, postpone'
prae-, 'before, previous'
praemittō, 'send forward, send before'
praemōnstrō, 'show beforehand'
praescribō, 'write before *or* in front *or* previously'
prō-, 'in front of, forth'
prōcēdō, 'go forth, proceed'
prōcidō, 'fall forward'
prōmoveō, 'move forward'
prōscribō, 'write before *or* in front of'
sub- (**suc-**, **suf-**, **sum-**, **sup-**, **sur-**, **sus-**), 'under, up from under'
subiciō, 'throw under, place under'
subigō, 'bring under, turn up from beneath'
succurrō, 'run under, run to the aid of'
suffundō (**fundō**, **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fūsus**, 'pour'), 'pour below *or* underneath'
summittō, 'set *or* put under *or* below; send below *or* from below'
suppōnō, 'put, place, *or* set under'
surrepō (**repō**, **repere**, **repsī**, **reptus**, 'creep'), 'creep under, creep along'
sustineō, 'hold up, support, sustain'
super-, 'over and above'
superpōnō, 'put *or* place over *or* upon'
supertegō, 'cover above, cover over'
trāns- (**trā-**, **trān-**), 'across'
trānseō, 'go across, cross over, pass over'
trānsmittō, 'send *or* carry across *or* over *or* through'
trādūcō, 'lead *or* bring across, transfer'
trānsiliō (**saliō**, **-īre**, **--**, **salitus**, 'leap, jump'), 'leap *or* jump across *or* over, hasten'

UNIT FIFTEEN — DRILL

I. *cum* Clauses

1. Cum verba tua audivissem, rem intellēxī.
2. Cum verba mea nōn audivisset, rem tamen intellēxit.
3. Cum verba vestra audivissēmus, rem intellēximus.
4. Ego cum ā tē monitus essem, nihil tamen fēcī.
5. Tū cum ā mē monitus sis, tamen nihil facis.
6. Cum ā vōbis monitī essēmus, aliquid fēcimus.
7. Cum ā nōbis moneāminī, aliquid facitis.
8. Cum urbs capta esset, militēs tamen mānsērunt.

9. Cum oppidum captum sit, militēs tamen manent.
10. Cum urbs capiētur, fēminae clāmābunt.
11. Cum oppida capiantur, fēminae clāmābunt.
12. Cum periculum timeam, ex urbe proficīscor.
13. Cum tē videō, fēlix sum.
14. Cum periculum timuerim, ex urbe proficīscor.
15. Cum periculum timērem, ex urbe proficīscēbar.
16. Cum periculum timuissem, ex urbe profectus sum.
17. Cum periculum timuī, clāmō.
18. Cum periculum timueram, clāmābam.

II. Exercises in Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive, etc.

1. Dum Lesbiam amābat Catullus, Lesbia amābat alium.
2. Quamvis Lesbia amāret alium, Catullus eam amāvit.
3. Cum infēlix esset Catullus, tamen amābat Lesbiam.
4. Catullus domī manēbat dum Lesbia alium amābat.
5. Catullus domī manēbat dum Lesbia eum amāret.
6. Catullus quamquam domī mānserat, tamen Lesbiam amābat.
7. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ōdisse incēpit illa.
8. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ōdisse inciperet illa.
9. Dum Cicerō est cōsul, nōn timeō.
10. Dum Cicerō in urbe maneat, nōn timēbō.
11. Nōn discēdam dum Cicerō veniat.
12. Antequam Cicerō venīret, discessit turba.
13. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod rem pūblicam servāvisset.
14. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem, nōn quod inimicum superāvisset, sed quia rem pūblicam servāvit.
15. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod cōsul optimus esset.
16. Quamvis turba laudāverit Cicerōnem, cōsilia eius nōn cēpit.
17. Nē Cicerōnem turba laudet, dummodo cōsilia eius capiat.
18. Domum cucurrit quia timuit.
19. Indignum senem! Domum cucurrit quia timēret.
20. Morātī sunt dōnec tempestās erat serēna.
21. Morātī sunt dōnec tempestās esset serēna.
22. Morārī cōstituērunt modo tempestās nē esset serēna.
23. Morārī cōstituērunt dum tempestās nē esset serēna.
24. Morārī cōstituērunt dummodo tempestās nē esset serēna.

III. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

1. Ubi hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.
2. Postquam hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.

3. Quandō hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.
4. Ut ad patriam advēnimus, laetī erāmus.
5. Quoniam ad patriam advēnimus, laetī erāmus.
6. Etsī ad patriam advēnimus, laetī nōn erāmus.
7. Quamquam ad patriam advēnimus, laetī nōn erāmus.
8. Dum ea accidunt, militēs trāns flūmen quam celerrimē properāvērunt.
9. Dum nūntius multōs diēs morātur, lēgātus cum eis cōpiis quās ā rēge accēperat ad finēs sociōrum advēnit.

UNIT FIFTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cum āfuistī, misera sum.
2. Cum āfuerās, misera eram.
3. Cum nūper perierit, tamen memoria factōrum bonōrum manet.
4. Cum fulgor appāret, multī quidem timent.
5. Cum fulgor appāruit, multī timuērunt.
6. Cum inimicitia inter eōs maxima esset, iūdex cōstituit ut numquam inter sē miscēre dēbērent.
7. Cum pūgnāre dēsinerent, hostēs tamen mānsērunt.
8. Cum animus agitārētur, multa putāre nōn potuī.
9. Cum ingenium tuum mihi omninō grātum sit, tē semper adesse volō.
10. Interdum cum calamitās exspectātur, somnus ā nōbis longē abest.

UNIT FIFTEEN — EXERCISES

1. a) Dē futūris rēbus etsī semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere. [coniectūra, -ae, F., 'guess, conjecture']
b) Dē futūris rēbus cum semper difficile sit dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere.
2. Quae cum ita essent, dixit sē quam celerrimē domum receptūrum esse.
3. Saepe magnum ingenium virtūtis priusquam rei pūblicae prōdesse posset dēlētum est.
4. a) Rēx cum Rōmā rediret mortuus est.
b) Rēx ubi Rōmā redierat mortuus est.
5. Rēge Rōmā redeunte, civēs dēmentēs effēcērunt ut servī inter sē inimicitiam agitantēs miscērent.
6. Ō rēs horridās! Ō civitātem malam! Quis caelum terris miscēre velit, quis mare caelō?

7. Quae cum ita sint, effectum est ut nihil sit malum quod mūtārī nōn possit.
8. Perīre artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsīnat ars esse, sī appāret.
9. Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret.
10. Longum illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum.
11. Ex rēgnō prius ēgressus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet.
12. Ibi manēbat dum rēx eum in fidem reciperet (recēpit).
13. Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus. [sonus, -ī, M., 'sound']
14. Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam.
15. a) Mē omnia expertūrum esse certum est priusquam peribō.
b) Eum omnia expertum esse certum est priusquam periiit.
c) Mē omnia prius expertūrum esse certum est quam perierō.
16. Vīta dum superest, bene est.
17. Ille imperātor tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit.
18. Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vīxī rēge laetior. [Persae, -ārum, M., 'the Persians']
19. Morātus est dum frāter imperātōrem rogāret in quantā calamitāte essent.
20. Dummodo somnus celeriter accēdat, nūtricem nōn vocābimus.
21. Ībam forte viā sacrā, ut meus est mōs. [sacer, sacra, sacrum, 'sacred']
22. Postquam ē tantā tempestāte lūx rediit, nautae Rōmam sē recēpērunt.
23. Cum bene vivās, nē cōgitēs dē verbis malōrum; sapientī nē sit cūrae quid quisque loquātur.
24. Multa ante cōnēris quam virum inveniās bonum.
25. a) Cum (quamvis) exigua pars iūdicīi superesset dum rēs cōstituerētur, nēmō tamen ex iūdicibus manēre voluit quod magnum futūrum esset perīculum eis dē istō pessimō male loquentibus.
b) Quamquam exigua pars iūdicīi supererat, nēmō tamen manēre voluit.
26. Magnopere timētur quod ducēs in forō appāruerint ut culpam in omnēs inimicitiam inter sē agitantēs iacerent.
27. Cum somnō solūtus erō tibi dicam quid heri fēcīrim.
28. Dixit sē somnō mox datūrum esse; eō modō fēliciōrem fore.
29. Ex eō bellō quod iam ā civibus domī timērī dēsierat, nē duo quidem ē mīlitibus prius tūtī rediērunt quam pāx cōstituerētur.
30. Cum rūmōrēs pulsī sunt, hominēs multō sunt fēliciōrēs.
31. Cūrārum maxima nūtrix est nox, dummodo nōs somnō celeriter dēmus.
32. a) Cum senex iūdicium meae virtūtis fēcisset, omnēs cōstituērunt mē nēminī nocēre potuisse. Imperāvērunt igitur ut domum irem.
b) Postquam (ubi) senex iūdicium meae virtūtis fēcīcit, omnēs cōstituērunt mē nēminī nocēre potuisse.
33. Tē iūdice, nōn ego calamitātem timeam dummodo mea verba contrā

- imperatōrem civibus liberis prōsint; priusquam tū iūdex fiēbās, magnopere timū.
34. Dum cōnāmur, laudāmur. Homō nihil agēns nēmini placet.
35. Nē exigua quidem pars civitātis exspectāvit dum cōpiae sociōrum advenirent; dēsīerunt autem nihil agere et cum audāciā hostēs ex urbe pepulērunt.
36. Cum ego loquī velim, nihil tamen dicam.
37. Illum absentem diū exspectāvimus, sed nusquam appāruit quod validus nōn fuit. Quoniam quidem validus nōn est, absit. Si occidat, miserī quasi perditī omnīnō simus.
38. Imperatōr contrā cōstituit exspectandam nāvem; quae ubi advēnit, omnibus prōfuit.
39. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22, adapted:
Sophoclēns ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; quod propter studium cum rem negligere familiārem vidērētur, ā filiis in iūdicium vocātus est, ut, quia nostrō mōre solet male rem gerentēs patrēs ē bonis removēri, sic illum quasi dēsipientem ā rē familiāri removērent iūdicēs. Tum senex dicitur eam tragoediam quam in manibus habēbat et nūperrimē scripserat, *Oedipum Colōnēum*, lēgisse iūdicibus quaesivisseque num illud carmen dēsipientis vidērētur. Ille cum id lēgisset, sententiis iūdicum est liberātus. Quamquam Sophoclēns ā iūdicibus liberātus erat, filii tamen irātissimī erant quod eius bona capere nōn poterant.
[**dēsipiēns**, -entis, 'foolish, insane'; **familiāris**, -e, 'pertaining to the family'; **Oedipus Colōnēus**, 'Oedipus at Colonus' (a tragedy by Sophocles); **senectūs**, -tūtis, F., 'old age'; **Sophoclēns**, -is, M., proper name; **tragoedia**, -ae, F., 'tragedy']
40. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 79-80, adapted slightly:
Moriēns Cīrus maior haec dicit: "nōlite arbitrāri, ō mihi cārissimī filiī, mē, cum ā vōbis discesserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore. Nec enim, dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis, sed eum esse in hōc corpore ex his rēbus quās gerēbam intellegēbātis. Eundem igitur esse crēdite, etiam sī nūllum vidēbitis. Nec vērō clārōrum virōrum post mortem honōrēs manērent, sī nihil eōrum ipsōrum animī efficerent, quō diūtius memoriam suī tenērēmus. Mihi quidem numquam persuādērī potuit animōs dum in corporibus essent mortālibus vīvere, cum excessissent ex eīs morī."
[**Cīrus**, -ī, M., proper name; **excēdō** (ex + cēdō), 'depart, withdraw'; **honor**, -ōris, M., 'honor, distinction'; **mortālis**, -e, 'mortal']
41. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 76, adapted:
Omnīnō, ut mihi quidem vidētur, studiōrum omnium satietās vitae facit satietātem. Sunt pueritiae studia certa: num igitur ea optant adulēscentēs? Quōad pueri sumus, illa studia nōbis cārīōra sunt, simul ac adulēscentēs iimus, alia studia nōbis placent. Sunt incipientis adulēscentiae studia: num

ea iam vult aetās, quae media dicitur? Sunt etiam eius aetātis: nē ea quidem quaeruntur in senectūte. Sunt extrēma quaedam studia senectūtis: ut igitur aliārum aetātum studia occidunt, sic occidunt etiam senectūtis; quod cum fit, satietās vitae tempus bonum mortis affert.

[**adulēscētia**, -ae, F., 'young manhood'; **aetās**, -tātis, F., 'age, time of life'; **extrēmus**, -a, -um, 'last, outermost'; **pueritia**, -ae, F., 'boyhood, childhood'; **satiētās**, -tātis, F., 'satiety, fullness'; **senectūs**, -tūtis, F., 'old age']

42. Nil recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidēri.

Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs.

(Martial 2.88)

[**estō**, 2nd person sing. future imperative of **sum**, 'you shall be' (see Appendix, pp. 353, 381); **Māmercus**, -ī, M., a proper name; **quidquid** (pron.), 'whatever'; **recitō** (1), 'recite']

43. Manent ingenia senibus, modo maneat studium et industria. [**industria**, -ae, F., 'diligence, activity']

44. Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū cognitum est, lēgātus ad eum vēnit. [**adventus**, -ūs, M., 'arrival'; **Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar']

45. Dum ea Rōmāni parant, Saguntum summā vi oppūgnābātur. [**Saguntum**, -ī, N., 'Saguntum', a town in Spain; **summā**, *here*, 'very great']

46. Dum ea geruntur, eī Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem in eā parte vidēri. [**pulvis**, **pulveris**, M., 'dust']

II.

1. Since someone is approaching, we shall bring it about that your friend does not harm anyone.
2. Although he delayed a long time, he could not wait for the nurse to approach.
3. When the people fear you, they hate you.
4. Let him come, provided that my opinions profit him.
5. He withdrew to his home because (he claimed) he was going to die soon.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 7.24:

Facile indicābat¹ ipsa nātūra vim suam, cum hominēs, quod facere ipsi nōn possent, id rēctē² fieri in alterō iūdicārent.³

¹ **indicō** (1), 'disclose, show' ² **rēctē** (adv.), 'rightly' ³ **iūdicō** (1), 'judge'

B. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.20.39:

Dionysii¹ māter, eius quī Syracosiorum² tyrannus³ fuit, ut scriptum apud⁴

¹ **Dionysius**, -ī, M., 'Dionysius', tyrant of Sicily ² **Syracosius**, -a, -um, 'Syracusan'
³ **tyrannus**, -ī, M., 'tyrant, absolute ruler' ⁴ **apud** (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of'

Philistum⁵ est, et doctum hominem et diligentem⁶ et aequalem⁷ temporum illorum, cum praegnans⁸ hunc ipsum Dionysium¹ alvō⁹ contineret,¹⁰ somniavit¹¹ sē peperisse¹² Satyriscum.¹³ Huic interpretēs¹⁴ portentorum,¹⁵ quī Galeōtae¹⁶ tum in Sicilia¹⁷ nōminābantur,¹⁸ respondērunt, ut ait Philistus,⁵ eum, quem illa peperisset,¹² clārissimum Graeciae diūturnā¹⁹ cum fortunā²⁰ fore.

⁵ Philistus, -ī, M., 'Philistus', a Greek historian from Syracuse ⁶ diligēns, -entis, 'diligent'
⁷ aequālis, -e, 'contemporary with' (+ gen.) ⁸ praegnāns, -antis, 'pregnant' ⁹ alvus, -ī, F., 'womb'
¹⁰ contineō (com- + teneō), 'contain' ¹¹ somniō (1), 'dream'
¹² pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, 'bring forth, give birth to' ¹³ Satyriscus, -ī, M., 'a little satyr'
¹⁴ interpres, -pretis, M. & F., 'interpreter, seer' ¹⁵ portentum, -ī, N., 'portent'
¹⁶ Galeōtae, -ārum, M., 'Galeotae', a group of Sicilian seers ¹⁷ Sicilia, -ae, F., 'Sicily'
¹⁸ nōminō (1), 'name' ¹⁹ diūturnus, -a, -um, 'of long duration' ²⁰ fortunā, -ae, F., 'fortune'

C. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.25.54:

Adiungāmus¹ philosophis² doctissimum hominem, poētā quidem divinum,³ Sophoclem;⁴ quī cum ex aede⁵ Herculis⁶ patera⁷ aurea gravis subrepta esset,⁸ in somnis vidit ipsum deum dicentem, quī id fēcisset. Quod semel⁹ ille iterumque¹⁰ neglēxit. Ubi idem saepius āscendit¹¹ in Arēopagum,¹² dētulit rem; Arēopagitae¹³ comprehendī¹⁴ iubent eum, quī ā Sophocle⁴ erat nōminātus;¹⁵ is, quaestiōne¹⁶ adhibitā,¹⁷ cōfessus est pateramque⁷ rettulit. Quō factō fānum¹⁸ illud Indicis¹⁹ Herculis⁶ nōminātum est.¹⁵

¹ adiungō (ad- + iungō), 'join, add' ² philosophus, -ī, M., 'philosopher' ³ divinus, -a, -um, 'divine, divinely inspired'
⁴ Sophoclēs, -is, M., 'Sophocles', the Greek tragic poet ⁵ aedēs, -is, F., 'temple' ⁶ Herculēs, -is, M., 'Hercules' ⁷ patera, -ae, F., 'dish' (from which libations were poured)
⁸ subripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptus, 'steal'
⁹ semel (adv.), 'once, a single time' ¹⁰ iterum (adv.), 'again' ¹¹ āscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, 'ascend, go up'
¹² Arēopagus, -ī, M., a hill in Athens, upon which the court called the 'Areopagus' held sessions
¹³ Arēopagitēs, -ae, M., a member of the Areopagus
¹⁴ comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, 'seize' ¹⁵ nōminō (1), 'name' ¹⁶ quaestiō, -ōnis, F., 'trial, inquiry'
¹⁷ adhibeō (ad + habeō), 'employ, hold' ¹⁸ fānum, -ī, N., 'temple, holy place' ¹⁹ index, indicis, M., 'informer'

D. Martial 12.12:

Omnia prōmittis¹ cum tōtā nocte bibisti;²
māne³ nihil praestās,⁴ Pollio,⁵ māne³ bibe.²

¹ prōmittō (prō + mittō), 'promise' ² bibō, -ere, bibi, --, 'drink' ³ māne (adv.), 'in the morning'
⁴ praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitus, 'perform' ⁵ Polliō, -ōnis, M., a man's name

E. A DREAM COMES TRUE (Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.24.50):

Apud¹ Agathoclem² scriptum in historiā³ est Hamilcarem⁴ Karthāginiēsem,⁵

¹ apud (prep. + acc.), here, 'in the works of' ² Agathoclēs, -is, M., the name of an historian
³ historia, -ae, F., 'history, work of history' ⁴ Hamilcar, -caris, M., a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal
⁵ Karthāginiēnsis, -e, 'Carthaginian'

cum oppugnāret Syracūsās,⁶ vīsum esse audire vōcem, sē postridiē⁷ cēnātūrum⁸ Syracūsīs;⁶ cum autem is diēs illūxisset,⁹ magnam sēditiōnem¹⁰ in castrīs¹¹ eius inter Poenōs¹² et Siculōs¹³ militēs esse factam; quod cum sēnsissent Syracūsānī,¹⁴ inprōvisō¹⁵ eōs in castra¹¹ irrūpisse,¹⁶ Hamilcaremque⁴ ab eis vivum¹⁷ esse sublātum.¹⁸ Ita rēs somnium¹⁹ comprobāvit.²⁰

⁶ Syracūsae, -ārum, F., 'Syracuse', the chief town of Sicily ⁷ postridiē (adv.), 'the next day' ⁸ cēnō (1), 'dine' ⁹ illūcēsco, -ere, -lūxī, --, 'become light, dawn' ¹⁰ sēditiō, -ōnis, F., 'uprising' ¹¹ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ¹² Poenus, -a, -um, 'Carthaginian' ¹³ Siculus, -a, -um, 'Sicilian' ¹⁴ Syracūsānus, -a, -um, 'Syracusan' ¹⁵ inprōvisō (adv.), 'unexpectedly' ¹⁶ irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'rush in' ¹⁷ vivus, -a, -um, 'alive' ¹⁸ tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, 'carry off' ¹⁹ somnium, -ī, N., 'dream' ²⁰ comprobō (1), 'verify'

UNIT SIXTEEN

A. The Gerund

It has been said that the infinitive is a neuter *verbal noun* and that it may be used as the subject of a verb.

Legere est difficile. *To read* is (a) difficult (thing); *reading* is difficult.

Yet, the infinitive retains its character as a verb by taking an object or by being modified by an adverb.

Ducem dēligere est difficile. It is (a) difficult (thing) *to choose a leader*; *choosing a leader* is difficult.

When the verbal noun is not functioning as the subject of a verb, a specific form, called the *gerund*, is used. The infinitive supplies the nominative of the gerund. The other cases are formed by adding **-nd-** to the present stem of the verb (for i-stems of the third conjugation and for all fourth conjugation verbs, an **-ie-** will appear before the **-nd-**), plus the neuter endings of the second declension. These forms are in fact the same as the neuter singular of the future passive participle, except that there is no nominative.

The gerund has no plural.

Therefore, the forms of the gerund of **dēligō, -ere**, 'choose', are:

(Nom.	dēligere	choosing)
Gen.	dēligendī	of choosing
Dat.	dēligendō	to/for choosing
Acc.	dēligendum	choosing
Abl.	dēligendō	from/with/in/by choosing

The gerund functions in the various grammatical cases like any other noun, but it still retains its verbal force and so may control an object and may be modified by an adverb. Intransitive verbs which govern the dative case will do so in the gerund form as well.

Legendō legere discimus.	We learn to read <i>by</i> (<i>means of</i>) <i>reading</i> .	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS)
Cupidus legendī est.	He is desirous <i>of</i> <i>reading</i> .	(OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH cupidus)
Ducī libenter pārendō fortiōrēs fiēmus.	<i>By obeying the leader</i> willingly, we shall become stronger.	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS; INTRANSITIVE VERB GOVERNING DATIVE)

B. The Gerundive

The gerundive is a verbal adjective and is sometimes called the future passive participle. The forms for the gerundive of **dēligō**, -ere, 'choose', are **dēligendus**, -a, -um.

Although the gerund may govern an object, in such instances Latin frequently prefers to use a gerundive construction instead, except when that object is a neuter adjective or pronoun. Observe:

GERUND:	Librōs legendō legere discimus.	<i>By reading books</i> we learn to read.
GERUNDIVE:	Libris legendis legere discimus.	<i>By means of books to-be-read</i> we learn to read; <i>by reading</i> <i>books</i> we learn to read.
GERUND:	Cupidus librōs legendī est.	He is desirous <i>of reading books</i> .
GERUNDIVE:	Cupidus librōrum legendōrum est.	He is desirous <i>of books-to-be-</i> <i>read</i> ; he is desirous <i>of</i> <i>reading books</i> .

C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose

Purpose may be expressed by the gerund and gerundive in two common ways:

1. Ad + THE ACCUSATIVE

Ad + the accusative of the gerund may express purpose.

Ad legendum venit. He comes *to (towards) reading, for the purpose of reading, in order to read*.

The gerund, as always, may take a direct object:

Ad legendum librōs venit. He comes to read books.

But when the gerund would take an object, the gerundive construction is preferred in Latin:

Ad librōs legendōs venit. He comes *to (towards) books to-be-read*; he comes *for the purpose of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

2. GENITIVE FOLLOWED BY *causā*, 'for the sake of'

The genitive of the gerund, followed by *causā*, may be used to express purpose.

Legendī causā venit. He comes *for the sake of reading*; he comes *to read*.

Librōs legendī causā venit. He comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

Again, when the gerund would govern an object (except in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns), the gerundive construction is preferred:

Librōrum legendōrum causā venit. He comes *for the sake of books to-be-read*; he comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

The reason for the exception in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns is the confusion in gender which might arise. Consider:

Multa videndī causā venit. He comes to see many things.

BUT:

Multōrum videndōrum causā venit. He comes to see many things (or) men.

It is unclear in the latter case whether the gender is masculine or neuter.

The constructions discussed above are alternate ways of expressing the same idea as purpose clauses:

Venit **ut** librōs **legat**. He comes *in order that he may read books* He comes *to read books*.

D. Impersonal Verbs

A small number of verbs in Latin are found only in the third person singular, the infinitive, and sometimes the participle because of their peculiar meanings. Such verbs are called *impersonal* verbs because of their lack of a personal subject and require in English the word "it" to function as the subject. Some verbs of this type are:

licet, licēre, licuit	it is permitted
oportet, oportēre, oportuit	it is necessary, it is proper
miseret, miserēre, miseruit	it pities; it moves to pity
piget, pigēre, piguit	it disgusts
taedet, taedēre, taeduit	it bores, it disgusts
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit	it repents
pu-det, pudēre, puduit	it shames
ne-cesse est	it is necessary

The constructions with these verbs are as follows:

1. WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

oportet; necesse est; licet

- Oportet mē abire.** It is necessary (proper) *that I go away*; It is necessary (proper) *for me to go away*; I must go away.
Necesse est mē abire. It is necessary *that I go away*; I must go away.
Licet mē abire. It is permitted *that I go away*; I can (am permitted to) go away.

2. WITH DATIVE AND INFINITIVE

necesse est; licet

- Necesse est mihi abire.** It is necessary *for me to go away*; I must go away.
Licet mihi abire. It is permitted *for me to go away*; I can (am permitted to) go away.

3. WITH SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY **ut** (EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED)

necesse est; licet

- Necesse est (ut) abeam.** It is necessary *that I go away*; I must go away.
Licet (ut) abeam. It is permitted *that I go away*; I can (am permitted to) go away.

NOTE that there is *no* distinction in meaning in the three uses of **necesse est** and of **licet**.

4. WITH OBJECTIVE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

miseret; piget; taedet; paenitet; pudet

These impersonals take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

- Miseret mē dolōris.** It pities *me of (his) grief*; I pity *(his) grief*.
Paenitet mē sceleris. It repents *me of (my) crime*; I am sorry *for (my) crime*.

Instead of a genitive, an infinitive, a **quod** clause, or a neuter pronoun is sometimes used to express the source of the feeling. When this occurs, the infinitive, the **quod** clause, or the neuter pronoun is the subject of the verb.

Legere mē taedet.	<i>Reading bores me.</i>
Mē paenitet quod tanta scelera in hāc civitāte facta sunt.	<i>The fact that (see p. 294) such great crimes have been committed in this state repents me; I am sorry that such great crimes have been committed in this state.</i>
Hoc mē pudet.	<i>This shames me; I am ashamed of this.</i>

E. The Impersonals *interest* and *rēfert*

These two impersonals, which mean ‘it concerns, it is of interest, it is in the interest of’, take the genitive of the person concerned and an infinitive, an *ut* clause, or a demonstrative pronoun in the neuter singular to express the thing which is of concern. But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the following adjectival forms in the ablative case are used: **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, **vestrā**.

Ducis interest (rēfert) opus cōficere.	<i>It is in the interest of the leader to complete (his) work.</i>
Ducis interest (rēfert) ut celeriter abeās.	<i>It is in the interest of the leader that you go away quickly; it concerns the leader that you go away quickly.</i>
Hoc ducis interest (rēfert).	<i>This is in the interest of the leader.</i>
BUT:	
Meā interest (rēfert) ut celeriter abeās.	<i>It is of interest (with respect to my [affair]) to me that you go away quickly; it concerns me that you go away quickly.</i>

In the latter case, **meā** is in fact modifying the noun **rē**, which is the first part of the verb **rēfert**. The use of the ablative **meā** with **interest** is on analogy with **rēfert**.

UNIT SIXTEEN — VOCABULARY

abeō, -īre, -iī, (-ivī), -itus	go away, depart
adversus, -a, -um	opposite, hostile, adverse
aliēnus, -a, -um	belonging to another, strange, out of place
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus	let go, lose
aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus	open
causa, -ae, F.	cause, reason
causā (preceded by the genitive)	for the sake of

cotīdiē or cotīdiē (adv.)	daily
decōrus, -a, -um	fitting, suitable; handsome
dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, --	be missing, fail (often + dat.)
discō, -ere, didici, --	learn
frūstrā (adv.)	in vain
īfirmus, -a, -um	weak, unhealthy
īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus	set (up), establish, arrange
interest, -esse, -fuit, --	it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum	slip, glide, fall
lēx, lēgis, F.	law
libenter (adv.)	freely, willingly, gladly
licet, -ēre, -uit (licitum est)	it is permitted
miseret, -ēre, -uit (miseritum est)	it pities, it moves to pity
necesse (indeclinable adj.)	necessary
oportet, -ēre, -uit, --	it is necessary, it is proper
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, --	it repents
piget, -ēre, -uit (pigitum est)	it disgusts
pudet, -ēre, -uit (puditum est)	it shames
rēfert, -ferre, -tulit, --	it is of importance
scrīptor, -ōris, M.	writer
stō, stāre, steti, stātus	stand
studiōsus, -a, -um	fond of, partial to, studious (+ gen.)
sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	support, maintain
taedet, -ēre, -uit (taesum est)	it bores, it disgusts
ūtilis, -e	useful, beneficial
vel (conj.)	or
vel . . . vel	either . . . or
vetus, -eris	old
violō (1)	do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)

UNIT SIXTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aliēnus, -a, -um has the stem of **alius, -a, -ud** as its base, with the adjectival ending **-ēnus, -a, -um**, ‘belonging to’, added; thus, **aliēnus** means ‘belonging to another, strange, out of place’.

The ablative of the noun **causa**, ‘cause, reason’, is used as a preposition governing the genitive case; **causā** is placed after the genitive it governs: **Militēs ex oppidō pācis causā discesserunt**, ‘The soldiers withdrew from the town for the sake of peace’.

Īnfirmus, -a, -um means literally ‘not strong’, therefore ‘weak, unhealthy’.

Stō, stāre, steti, stātus is the verb ‘stand’. There is also a verb **sistō, sistere, stiti, stātus** meaning ‘cause to stand, make stand, place, set up, establish’. Connected with these two verbs is another, **statuō, statuere, statui, statūtus**, ‘cause to stand, set up, establish’. These verbs have many compounds:

astō, astāre, astiti, --, ‘stand at *or* near’

circumstō, circumstāre, circumsteti, --, ‘stand around’

instō, instāre, institi, instātus, ‘stand on *or* upon, insist, threaten’

obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātus, ‘stand before *or* against; hinder’

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitus, ‘set down, stand off, stop’

insistō, insistere, institi, --, ‘stand upon, pursue’

obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitus, ‘set *or* place before; set oneself against, oppose, resist’

persistō, persistere, perstiti, --, ‘continue steadfastly’

resistō, resistere, restiti, --, ‘stand back, stand still, stop’

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus, ‘cause to stand, set up, establish; decide’

dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstitui, dēstitūtus, ‘set down, leave alone, abandon’

instituō, instituere, institui, institūtus, ‘put *or* place into; set up, establish, arrange’

restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūtus, ‘set up again, restore’

Studiōsus, -a, -um, literally ‘full of zeal’, means ‘fond of, partial to, studious,’ and governs the genitive case.

Ūtilis, -e has the same root as **ūtor** and thus means ‘useful, beneficial’.

PREFIXES (not from prepositions)

dis- (dī-, dif-), ‘apart’

dīdūcō, ‘draw apart, separate, divide’

diffugiō, ‘flee in different directions, scatter’

dispellō, ‘drive apart, scatter, disperse’

dispōnō, ‘place here and there, distribute regularly, arrange’

in- (il-, im-, ir-), ‘not’

illiterātus, -a, -um, ‘unlettered, uneducated’

immemor, immemoris, ‘unmindful, forgetful’

inauditus, -a, -um, ‘unheard (of), strange’

irrevocābilis, -e, ‘not to be called back, irrevocable, uncontrollable’

re-, ‘back, again’

recēdō, ‘go back, withdraw, retire’

recidō, ‘fall back’

reficiō, ‘make again, remake, restore, renew’

sē-, 'apart'

sēcēdō, 'go apart, go away, withdraw'

sēdūcō, 'lead apart, draw aside'

DENOMINATIVE VERBS

Many verbs in Latin were formed from nouns or adjectives; although these denominative verbs are found in all conjugations, most of them are in the first conjugation.

bellō (1), 'wage, carry on war, fight in war' (from **bellum**)

corōnō (1), 'crown' (from **corōna**)

culpō (1), 'reproach, blame, condemn' (from **culpa**)

custōdiō, **-īre**, **-īvi** (**-īi**), **-ītus**, 'watch, protect, defend, preserve' (from **custōs**)

dignor (1), 'deem worthy' (from **dignus**)

dominor (1), 'be lord and master, rule, domineer' (from **dominus**)

dūrō (1), 'make hard, harden, last' (from **dūrus**)

finiō, **-īre**, **-īvi** (**-īi**), **-ītus**, 'limit, restrain, check' (from **finis**)

flōreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **--**, 'bloom, blossom, flower' (from **flōs**, **flōris**, M., 'blossom, flower')

locō (1), 'place, lay, set' (from **locus**)

metuō, **-ere**, **metuī**, **--**, 'fear, be afraid' (from **metus**)

saeviō, **-īre**, **-īi**, **-ītus**, 'be fierce, rage' (from **saevus**)

UNIT SIXTEEN — DRILL

1. a) Legere est bonum.
b) Amor legendi est bonus.
c) Legendō praefuisti.
d) Ad legendum omnibus adfuit.
e) Legendō multum cognōvimus.
2. a) Rōmam ivimus ad Caesarem videndum.
b) Rōmam ivimus Caesaris videndi causā.
3. a) Impiī plēbem agitābant ad pūgnandum.
b) Impiī plēbem agitābant pūgnandi causā.
4. a) Omnēs patī necesse est.
b) Omnibus patī necesse est.
c) Necesse est (ut) omnēs patiantur.
5. a) Rēgis rēfert rēgnum regere.

- b) Rēgis rēfert ut rēgnum regat.
 c) Meā rēfert rēgī pārēre.
6. a) Cōsulis intererat malōs perire.
 b) Cōsulis intererat ut mali perirent.
 c) Meā intererat ut mali perirent.
7. Et meā et urbis interfuit quid agerēs.
8. Estne periculum in currendō per viās urbis?
9. Magna sunt gaudia docendī.
10. Cicerō clārus erat arte loquendī.
11. a) Iuvenēs cupidi fuērunt puellās pulchrās videndī.
 b) Iuvenēs gaudium cēpērunt ē puellis pulchris videndis.
12. Studium plūra habendī pectora multōrum implet.
13. a) Rōmae adfuimus ad magnās divitiās parandās.
 b) Parāre magnās divitiās est difficillimum.
 c) Quid agerēs magnārum divitiārum parandārum causā?
14. Nostrā patriā discessimus ad vīvendum sine inimicitia.
15. Diūtissimē exspectandō infēlicēs sumus.
16. Morandō domī placuistis vestris parentibus: domī morātī estis vestris parentibus placendī causā.

UNIT SIXTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. Celeriter abire ab hāc terrā est magnum gaudium.
2. Mihi timor abeundi ab hāc terrā est magnus.
3. Eum instituendō lēgēs praefēcimus.
4. Mea bona āmittere ōdī.
5. Semper in discendō vītam agere dēbēmus.
6. Cupidus amīci videndī Rōmam ivī.
7. Mihi timor lēgum violandārum est magnus.
8. Novōrum verbōrum discendōrum studiōsi sumus.
9. Lēgis violandae studiōsi nōn sumus.
10. In novis rēbus discendis vītam agere dēbēmus.
11. Ab hāc terrā abivī ad pecūniam multam faciendam (pecūniae multae faciendae causā).
12. Ab hāc terrā abivit rēgni novī instituendī causā.
13. Rēgnum novum instituērunt fēliciter vīvendī causā.
14. Multa didicimus ad bene vītam agendam.
15. Hic scriptor multa ad bene scribendum didicit.

UNIT SIXTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Tam studiōsus librōrum legendōrum fuit ut omnēs ē villā ducis clārī removēret.
2. Rōmam vēnit ad auxilium ā militibus rēgis quaerendum.
3. Cottidiē currendō salūtem corporis sustineō; numquam ab hōc modō vivendi lāpsus sum.
4. Carminibus canendis poēta pecūniam accēpit.
5. Cīvēs fortēs rei pūblicae hostium superandōrum causā oppūgnāre incēpērunt.
6. a) Mē semper necesse erat intellegere illa quae ā duce dicta sunt.
b) Semper necesse erat ut intellegerem quae ā duce dicta essent.
7. Omnēs oportet vitam quam optimē agere; tempus enim celerrimē lābitur. Nisi quid bonī ēgerimus, frūstrā vivēmus.
8. Rēgī morī necesse est ut libertās in hāc rē pūblicā instituātur.
9. Pācis temporibus licet ut portae urbis antiquae mūnitae aperiantur.
10. Si hominibus lēgēs violāre licet, quam ob rem iussis cōsulis ā nōbis pārendum est?
11. Custōdem honestum piūmque sceleris parvī tam paenituit ut multa dōna āris deōrum immortalium offerret.
12. Nesciō cūr tē gravis dolōris omnium virōrum corporibus infirmis misereat.
13. Bonōs honestōsque taedet pigetque virōrum malōrum quī lēgēs ā rēge īstitūtās violāre volunt.
14. Cuius rēfert ut lēgēs ūtilēs instituat salūtis omnium gentium servandae causā?
15. Nostrā interest sapientiam legendis libris scriptōris sapientis discere.
16. Neque cuiquam nostrum licuit istā lēge ūtī.
17. Male imperandō summum imperium āmittitur.
18. Dē civitatibus novis instituendis litterae ad mē mittēbantur.
19. Quamquam studiōsus erat bene regendī, amor populī ei dēerat.
20. Pācis petendae causā, ducem oportēbat pollicērī sē nēminī post bellum nocitūrum esse.
21. Rogāvit num id scelus sit, cuius paenitēre fuerit necesse.
22. Gerenda bella sunt ut sine noxā in pāce vivātur; hostibus victis, pāce perfectā, populī nōn rēfert ut tot fortissimi mortuī sint quod prō patriā et omnium libertāte perierint.
23. Mē paenitet causam rei pūblicae bene nōn sustinendi; sed maximē meā interfuit ut tūtus viverem.
24. Pudet pigetque mei mē.
25. Nostra māter, tuī nōs miserēret nisi tam cupida coniugis perdendī essēs!

26. a) Ad pācem parandam civēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
 b) Pācis parandae causā civēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
 c) Ut pācem parārent, civēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
27. a) Operis melius cōficiendī causā coniūnx auxilium parābat.
 b) Ad opus melius cōficiendum coniūnx auxilium parābat.
 c) Quō melius opus cōficeret coniūnx auxilium parābat.
28. Bellis gerendis patriae validiōrēs fiunt.
29. Bene regendō dux amōrem comitum capit.
30. Sequāmur nātūram optimam bene vivendi ducem!
31. Istius vērē ducis hoc rēferre vidētur.
32. Neque rēfert cuiusquam utrum rēx cupidus sit auctōritātis ostendendae necne. Civēs ei favent, nec suā interest quō modō viribus ūtātur, dummodo sibi ipsis nē noceat.
33. Ac si quis est tālis quālis esse omnis oportēbat, qui irātus fit quod istōs hostēs, civitātī inimicōs, nōn interfēcērim potius quam ex urbe pepulerim, nōn est istud mea culpa, sed temporum. [**potius quam**, 'rather than']
34. Necesse est hominēs adsint vel bellō vel pāci parāti.
35. Adversis ventis nautae ad insulam accēdere nōn potuērunt; nāvēs adversō flūmine feruntur. Qui proximō in litore stetērunt nihil auxilii ferre poterant.
36. Fēlix est qui libenter potuit rērum cognōscere causās multis librīs legendis et multa descendō.
37. Crēdendum erit veteribus si cupidī erimus bene vivendi. Exempla optima ante oculōs stant. Necesse est ea videāmus.
38. Quae dōna decōra abeuntibus dedisti?
39. Pepercit dux neque suis comitibus neque aliēnis. Nēmō in omnibus prōvinciae urbibus vel in hāc ipsā erat tūtus.
40. Bonus etiam causam dandī cōgitat.
41. Respondit ad cōnsilium capiendum temporis opus esse.
42. A SYLLOGISM PROVING THAT THERE IS SUCH A THING AS DIVINATION (Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 101–2, adapted):

Sī sunt dī neque ante dicunt hominibus quae futūra sint, aut nōn diligunt hominēs, aut quid futūrum sit nesciunt; aut arbitrantur nihil interesse hominum scire quid sit futūrum; aut nōn putant esse suae glōriae praesignificāre hominibus quae sunt futūra; aut ea nē ipsi quidem dī significāre possunt. At neque nōn diligunt nōs (sunt enim clārissimī bonique hominum amīci); neque nesciunt ea quae ab ipsis cōstitutā sunt; neque nostrā nihil interest scire ea quae futūra sunt (erimus enim fēliciōrēs et tūtiōrēs, certiōrēs dē illō quod accidet, si sciēmus); neque hoc aliēnum dūcunt glōriā suā (nihil est enim beneficentiā clārius meliusque); neque nōn possunt futūra praenōscere; nōn igitur dī sunt nec significant nōbis futūra; sunt

autem dī; significant igitur ad nōs dē rēbus futūris monendōs; et nōn, sī significant futūra, nūllās dant viās nōbis ad signa intellegenda (frūstrā enim significārent); nec, sī dant viās, nōn est divinātiō; est igitur divinātiō. [at (conj.), 'but'; **beneficentia**, -ae, F., 'kind deed, service'; **diligō**, -ere, **dilēxi**, **dilēctus**, 'esteem, be fond of'; **divinātiō**, -ōnis, F., 'divination'; **nihil** (*here*, as adv.), 'not at all'; **praenōscō** (*prae* + **nōscō**), 'know beforehand'; **praesignificō** (1), 'show beforehand, express beforehand'; **significō** (1), 'show, report, express']

43. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 69, adapted:

Quid est in hominis nātūrā diū? Dā enim summum tempus, exspectēmus longam aetātem, mihi autem nē longum quidem quicquam vidētur, in quō est aliquī finis. Cum enim id advēnit, tum illud quod praeteriit efflūxit; id solum remanet, quod virtūte et bonīs factīs cōsecūtus sīs; hōrae quidem cēdunt et diēs et mēnsēs et annī, nec praeteritum tempus umquam redit, nec quid sequātur scīrī potest; quod cuique temporis ad vīvendum datur, eō dēbet esse contentus. [**aetās**, -tātis, F., 'age, life'; **cōsequor** (*com-* + **sequor**), 'obtain, acquire'; **contentus**, -a, -um, 'content'; **effluō**, -ere, -flūxī, --, 'flow forth, escape'; **mēnsis**, -is, M., 'month'; **praetereō** (*praeter*, 'beyond', + **eō**), 'pass by']

II.

1. The queen was so ashamed of her burning love for the handsome leader that she drove him from her state.
2. In order to terrify the citizens, the legate ordered the troops that they attack and destroy their province.
3. The art of writing a poem is so difficult that very few men are desirous of learning how it should be done.
4. After the torches had been carried into the (city) gates, the king was able to show the lofty walls to the guests from the province who had come to learn the art of fortifying towns.
5. Learning about other people's laws bores me; I don't even have time to read our own.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.7.15:

Numquam ego ab dis immortalibus optābō, Quiritēs,¹ invidiae meae relevandae² causā ut Catilinam dūcere exercitum³ hostium atque in armīs volitāre⁴ audiātis, sed trīduō⁵ tamen audiētis.

¹ **Quiritēs**, -ium, M., 'fellow citizens' ² **relevō** (1), 'diminish' ³ **exercitus**, -ūs, M., 'army' ⁴ **volitō** (1), 'hasten about' ⁵ **trīduum**, -ī, N., 'a space of three days'

B. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 5.15:

Etenim,¹ cum complector² animō, quattuor³ reperiō⁴ causās cūr senectūs⁵ misera videātur: ūnam, quod āvocet⁶ ā rēbus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam,⁷ quod prīvet⁸ omnibus ferē⁹ voluptātibus;¹⁰ quartam,¹¹ quod haud¹² procul¹³ absit ā morte. Eārum, si placet, causārum quanta quamque¹⁴ sit iūsta¹⁵ ūna quaeque videāmus.

¹ etenim (adv.), 'truly, and indeed' ² complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, 'embrace intellectually, think over' ³ quattuor (indeclinable adj.), 'four' ⁴ reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus, 'discover' ⁵ senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age' ⁶ āvocō (1), 'call away or off' ⁷ tertius, -a, -um, 'third' ⁸ prīvō (1), 'deprive' ⁹ ferē (adv.), 'almost, practically' ¹⁰ voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure' ¹¹ quartus, -a, -um, 'fourth' ¹² haud (adv.), 'not at all' ¹³ procul (adv.), 'at a distance' ¹⁴ quam (adv.), 'how' ¹⁵ iūstus, -a, -um, 'just'

C. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 17.59:

Multās ad¹ rēs perūtilēs² Xenophontis³ librī sunt, quōs legite, quaesō,⁴ studiōsē, ut facitis. Quam⁵ cōpiōsē⁶ ab eō agrī cultūra⁷ laudātur in eō librō, quī est dē tuendā⁸ rē familiārī,⁹ quī *Oeconomicus*¹⁰ inscribitur!¹¹

¹ ad, here, 'for' ² perūtilis, -e, 'very useful' ³ Xenophōn, Xenophontis, M., 'Xenophon', a Greek historian ⁴ quaesō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, 'beg, entreat' ⁵ quam (adv.), 'how' ⁶ cōpiōsē (adv.), 'copiously, abundantly' ⁷ cultūra, -ae, F., 'cultivation' ⁸ tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, 'care for, protect' ⁹ familiāris, -e, 'belonging to the household' ¹⁰ oeconomicus, -a, -um, 'pertaining to domestic economy', here, the title of a book by Xenophon (understand liber) ¹¹ inscribō (in + scribō), 'entitle, name'

D. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 26.98:

Nūlla est igitur haec amicitia, cum alter vērum audire nōn vult, alter ad mentiendum¹ parātus est.

¹ mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum, 'lie, tell a falsehood'

E. Martial 12.23:

Dentibus¹ atque comis² — nec tē pudet — ūteris ēmptīs.³
Quid faciēs oculō, Laelia?⁴ Nōn emitur.³

¹ dēns, dentis, M., 'tooth' ² coma, -ae, F., 'hair' (of the head) ³ emō, emere, emī, ēmptus, 'buy' ⁴ Laelia, -ae, F., a woman's name

F. Seneca writes to his friend, Lucilius, on the subject of masters and slaves (*Epistulae Mōrālēs* XLVII.1–5):

Libenter ex iis, quī ā tē veniunt, cognōvi familiārīter¹ tē cum servis tuis vivere. Hoc prūdentiam² tuam, hoc ēruditiōnem³ decet.⁴ "Servi sunt."

¹ familiārīter (adv.), 'in a friendly way' ² prūdentia, -ae, F., 'discretion' ³ ēruditiō, -ōnis, F., 'erudition, knowledge' ⁴ decet, -ēre, decuit, 'it fits, it suits' (impersonal verb)

Immō⁵ hominēs. “Servi sunt.” Immō⁵ contubernālēs.⁶ “Servi sunt.” Immō⁵ humilēs amīcī. “Servi sunt.” Immō⁵ cōservī,⁷ si cōgitāveris tantundem⁸ in utrōsque⁹ licēre fortunāe.¹⁰

Itaque¹¹ rideō istōs, quī turpe¹² existimant¹³ cum servō suō cēnāre.¹⁴ Quārē, nisi quia superbissima¹⁵ cōsuētūdō¹⁶ cēnantī¹⁴ dominō stantium servōrum turbam circumdedit?¹⁷ Est¹⁸ ille plūs quam capit, et ingenti aviditāte¹⁹ onerat²⁰ distentum²¹ ventrem²² ac dēsuetū²³ iam ventris²² officiō,²⁴ ut maiōre operā²⁵ omnia ēgerat²⁶ quam ingessit;²⁷ at²⁸ infēlicibus servis movēre labra²⁹ nē in hōc³⁰ quidem, ut loquantur, licet. Virgā³¹ murmur³² omne compescitur,³³ et nē fortuīta³⁴ quidem verberibus³⁵ excepta sunt,³⁶ tussis,³⁷ sternūmenta,³⁸ singultūs.³⁹ Magnō malō ūllā vōce interpellātum⁴⁰ silentium⁴¹ luitur.⁴² Nocte tōtā iēiūni⁴³ mūtique⁴⁴ perstant.⁴⁵

Sic fit, ut isti dē dominō loquantur, quibus cōram⁴⁶ dominō loquī nōn licet. At²⁸ illī, quibus nōn tantum⁴⁷ cōram⁴⁶ dominis, sed cum ipsis erat sermō,⁴⁸ quōrum ōs nōn cōsuēbātur,⁴⁹ parātī erant prō dominō porrigere⁵⁰ cervicem,⁵¹ periculum imminēns⁵² in caput⁵³ suum āvertere;⁵⁴ in convivīis⁵⁵ loquēbantur, sed in tormentis⁵⁶ tacēbant. Deinde⁵⁷ eiusdem arrogantiae⁵⁸ prōverbium⁵⁹ iactātur, tot hostēs esse quot servōs. Nōn habēmus illōs hostēs, sed facimus.

⁵ immō (adv.), ‘no, but . . .’ ⁶ contubernālis, -is, M. & F., ‘comrade’ ⁷ cōservus, -ī, M., ‘fellow slave’ ⁸ tantusdem, tantadem, tantundem, ‘just so much’ ⁹ uterque, utraque, utrumque, ‘each (of two), both’; in utrōsque, ‘to (for) both (of you)’ ¹⁰ fortuna, -ae, F., ‘fortune’ ¹¹ itaque (adv.), ‘and so’ ¹² turpis, -e, ‘foul, ugly’ ¹³ existimō (1), ‘think’ ¹⁴ cēnō (1), ‘dine’ ¹⁵ superbus, -a, -um, ‘haughty’ ¹⁶ cōsuētūdō, -tūdinis, F., ‘habit, custom’ ¹⁷ circumdō (circum + dō), ‘put around’ ¹⁸ est, 3rd person sing. of edō, edere (esse), ēdī, ēsus, ‘eat’ ¹⁹ aviditās, -tātis, F., ‘greed’ ²⁰ onerō (1), ‘burden, load down’ ²¹ distentus, -a, -um, ‘full, distended’ ²² venter, ventris, M., ‘belly’ ²³ dēsuetū, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, ‘become unaccustomed’ ²⁴ officiū, -ī, N., ‘duty, task’ ²⁵ opera, -ae, F., ‘effort’ ²⁶ ēgerō (ē + gerō), here, ‘vomit’ (lit., ‘carry out’) ²⁷ ingerō (in + gerō), ‘throw in, heap on’ ²⁸ at (conj.), ‘but’ ²⁹ labrum, -ī, N., ‘lip’ ³⁰ in hōc (understand tempore) ³¹ virga, -ae, F., ‘rod, whip’ ³² murmur, murmuris, N., ‘murmur’ ³³ compescō, -ere, -pescuī, --, ‘restrain, check’ ³⁴ fortuītus, -a, -um, ‘casual, accidental’ ³⁵ verber, verberis, N., ‘lash’ ³⁶ excipiō (ex + capiō), ‘except’ ³⁷ tussis, -is (acc. -im), F., ‘cough’ ³⁸ sternūmentum, -ī, N., ‘sneeze’ ³⁹ singultus, -ūs, M., ‘sobbing’ ⁴⁰ interpellō (1), ‘interrupt’ ⁴¹ silentium, -ī, N., ‘silence’ ⁴² luō, -ere, luī, luitūrus, ‘atone for’ ⁴³ iēiūnus, -a, -um, ‘hungry, thirsty’ ⁴⁴ mūtus, -a, -um, ‘mute’ ⁴⁵ perstō, -āre, -stifī, -stātus, ‘stand firm’ ⁴⁶ cōram (prep. + abl.), ‘in the presence of, facing’ ⁴⁷ nōn tantum . . . sed, ‘not only . . . but’ ⁴⁸ sermō, -ōnis, M., ‘conversation’ ⁴⁹ cōsuō, -ere, -suī, -sūtus, ‘sew (stitch) together’ ⁵⁰ porrigō, -ere, porrēxī, porrēctus, ‘offer’ ⁵¹ cervix, -īcis, F., ‘neck’ ⁵² immineō, -ēre, --, --, ‘threaten’ ⁵³ caput, capitī, N., ‘head’ ⁵⁴ āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, ‘turn off, divert’ ⁵⁵ convivium, -ī, N., ‘banquet’ ⁵⁶ tormentum, -ī, N., ‘torture’ ⁵⁷ deinde (adv.), ‘finally’ ⁵⁸ arrogantia, -ae, F., ‘arrogance’ ⁵⁹ prōverbium, -ī, N., ‘proverb’

UNIT SEVENTEEN

A. Clauses of Fearing

Verbs or expressions of fearing take subjunctive clauses introduced by **nē** for the positive and **ut** for the negative. While this may seem a curious reversal, it is a logical construction. In the earliest stages of the language, the constructions were *paratactic*; *parataxis* is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side.

Timeō. I fear. Ut veniat! I wish he would come!

Timeō. I fear. Nē veniat! I wish he would not come!

(*Veniat* is an optative subjunctive; see Unit Twelve.)

As the language developed, the constructions became *hypotactic*; *hypotaxis* is the subordination of one clause to another. Thus:

Timeō **ut** veniat. I fear that he is *not* coming; I fear that he will *not* come.
(It is logical that one would fear that the *opposite* of his wish might come about.)

Timeō **nē** veniat. I fear that he *is* coming (*will* come).

Clauses of fearing follow the normal rules for sequence of tenses. While the present subjunctive may refer to an act that is either contemporaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb, when stress is laid on the subsequence (futura) of the action, the active periphrastic is occasionally used:

Timeō **ut** veniat. I fear *that he is not coming*; I fear *that he will not come*.

Timeō **ut** ventūrus sit. I fear *that he will not come* (emphasis on futurity).

Sometimes, **nē...nōn** are found instead of **ut** to introduce a negative clause of fearing:

Timeō **nē nōn** veniat. I fear *that he is not coming (will not come)*.

B. Clauses of Doubting

When **dubitō** (1) means 'hesitate', it takes an infinitive:

Hoc **facere** dubitō. I hesitate *to do* this.

When it means 'doubt', it takes the following constructions which are regularly used with words or expressions of doubting:

1. When the word or expression of doubting is positive (as opposed to negative), it introduces an indirect question.

Dubitō **num** **abitūrus** **sit**. I doubt *whether (that) he will go away*.

Dubitō **an** **abeat**. I doubt *whether (that) he is going away*.

2. When the word or expression of doubting is negative, a subjunctive clause introduced by **quīn** (translated literally 'but that') is used.

Nōn dubitō **quīn** **abeat**. I don't doubt (*but*) *that he is going away*.

Nōn dubitō **quīn** **abitūrus** **sit**. I don't doubt (*but*) *that he will go away*.

Nōn dubium est **quīn** **abeat**. It is not doubtful (*but*) *that he is going away*.

Quis dubitat **quīn** **abeat**? Who doubts (*but*) *that he is going away*?

In the last sentence, **quis dubitat** is an example of a *virtual negative*; that is, the implication is that *no one doubts* that he is going away.

C. Clauses of Prevention

To express prohibition or prevention, the following constructions are used:

1. **Vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus**, 'forbid', and **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, 'prohibit', take a simple infinitive.

Tē **vetō** **abire**. I forbid you *to go away*.

Tē **prohibeō** **abire**. I prohibit you *to go (from going) away*.

2. The following verbs are among those which take a subjunctive construction:

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus deter, prevent

impediō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus prevent

obstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātus hinder, stand in the way of

If the verb of prevention is *positive*, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by **quōminus** (= **quō minus**, 'by which the less') or **nē**, 'in order that not'. These clauses are analogous to relative clauses of purpose introduced by **quō** (see Unit Fourteen), and **quōminus** in effect is standing for **ut eō minus**, 'in order that by this the less'.

(Tē) **dēterreō** **quōminus** I deter you *by which the less you go away*; I **abeās**. I deter you *from going away*.

(Tē) **dēterreō** **nē** **abeās**. I deter you *in order that you not go away*; I deter (prevent) you *from going away*.

When the verb of prevention is *negative*, the subjunctive clause is introduced by **quōminus**, 'by which the less', or **quīn**, 'but that'.

Nōn (tē) dēterreō	I don't deter you <i>by which the less you go away</i> ; I
quōminus abeās.	don't deter you <i>from going away</i> .
Nōn (tē) dēterreō	I don't deter you <i>but that you go away</i> ; I don't deter
quīn abeās.	you <i>from going away</i> .

D. The Supine

The gerund is a verbal noun. There is another variety of verbal noun in Latin called the *supine*. As we might expect, it is neuter singular, but it has only two cases, the accusative and the ablative, each of which has a specific use. The supine, then, is not nearly as versatile as the gerund and, in fact, occurs infrequently. It is formed on the fourth principal part of the verb.

	I	II	III	IV
ACCUSATIVE	optātum	implētum	inceptum	sēnsū
ABLATIVE	optātū	implētū	inceptū	sēnsū

The *accusative* of the supine is used without a preposition after verbs of motion to express *purpose*.

It urbem **captum**. He goes *to capture* the city.

The *ablative* of the supine is used with some adjectives as an *ablative of respect*.

Hic liber facilis est **lēctū**. This book is easy *with respect to reading*; this book is easy *to read*.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — VOCABULARY

aetās, aetātis, F.	time of life, age, life
celeritās, -tātis, F.	speed, swiftness
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus	defend
dēnique (adv.)	finally, at last
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus	stop, desist
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	deter, prevent, hinder, keep from
dubius, -a, -um	doubtful
dubium, -ī, N.	doubt, hesitation
dubitō (1)	hesitate (with inf.); doubt (with indirect question or quīn + subjunctive)
impediō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus	deter, impede, prevent
metuō, -ere, metuī, --	fear

nemus, nemoris, N.	grove, wood
obitus, -ūs, M.	a going down, setting; downfall, ruin
obstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātus	stand in the way of, hinder (+ dat.)
orior, -īrī, ortus sum	rise, arise, begin
ortus, -ūs, M.	rising, source
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	arrive (at) (+ ad)
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	keep from, prohibit, prevent
quīn (conj.)	but that, that not (used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.)
quōminus (conj.)	by which the less, that not, from (used in positive or negative clauses of prevention)
radius, -ī, M.	rod, ray
religiō, -ōnis, F.	religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus	leave behind, abandon
reliquus, -a, -um	remaining; rest of
retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus	uncover, reveal
tergum, -ī, N.	back
turpis, -e	foul, ugly
ūnā (adv.)	together, at the same time
vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum	hunt, go hunting
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus	turn
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī,	turn one's attention to, notice
-versus	
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus	forbid

UNIT SEVENTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aetās, aetātis, F., is 'time of life, age, life'; do not confuse it with **aestās, aestātis, F.**, 'summer'.

Celeritās, celeritātis, F., is 'the state of being swift', thus, 'speed, swiftness'.

Dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; and so **dēfendimus** is 'we defend' or 'we have defended'.

Dēterreō, a compound of **dē** and **terreō**, means 'frighten from', and so 'deter, prevent, hinder, keep from'.

Dubius, -a, -um is the adjective 'doubtful'. Its stem comes from **duo** and **habeō**, 'hold two'; its primary meaning is 'moving in two directions alternately, fluctuating'. It then gets to mean 'vacillating in mind, uncertain, doubting, doubtful'.

Another adjective, **anceps, ancipitis**, has a similar history of meaning. Literally, it means 'two-headed' (**ambi-**, shortened to **an-**, 'both', + **ceps** from **caput**,

capitis, N., 'head'); the meaning then expands to 'that extends on two opposite sides', and then, 'fluctuating, doubtful'.

The neuter adjective **dubium** used substantively is 'doubt, hesitation'. The verb **dubitō** with an infinitive is 'hesitate'; without an infinitive it means 'doubt' and takes a construction using the subjunctive. **Dubitō** has **habeō** hidden in its stem as **dēbeō** does (**dē** + **habeō**). **Dēbeō** means literally 'hold from'; if one holds something from someone, he owes it to him, or he is under obligation to give it back. From there, the two meanings of **dēbeō** emerge: 'owe' and 'be bound to, ought'. **Dubitō** is a contraction of **duhibitāre** (**duo** + a frequentative of **habeō**), 'to have or hold as two'.

Impediō is a fourth conjugation denominative verb from **pēs, pedis**, 'foot'. When one gets something in the way of his foot, he becomes hindered and so the verb means 'deter, impede, prevent'. **Impedimenta, impedimentōrum**, N. pl., is the Latin word for 'baggage'.

Obitus is the fourth declension noun from **obeō**, 'go to meet, go down, die, travel, perform'; therefore **obitus** means 'visit, going down, setting, downfall, ruin, death'.

Ortus, 'rising', is the fourth declension noun from **orior**, 'rise'.

Perveniō, a compound of **per** and **veniō**, means 'arrive at'; **ad** is used with this verb: **Ad Italiam heri pervēnimus**, 'We arrived at Italy yesterday'.

Relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, 'leave behind, abandon', has an **-n-** only in the present stem; the English words "relinquish" and "derelict" might be helpful in remembering the roots of the principal parts of this verb.

Retegō (re- + tegō) does *not* mean 'cover again' but 'uncover, reveal'.

Ūnā is an adverb meaning 'together, at the same time'; often it is used with **cum**: **Ad Italiam ūnā cum sorōre ivī**, 'I went to Italy together with my sister'. Of course, this same sentence could be translated, 'I went to Italy with one sister', but usually this ambiguity does not occur.

Vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; **vertit** is both 'he turns' and 'he has turned'. Since this verb has many compounds, if one thinks of English derivatives, it is easy to remember the principal parts. For example, consider "convert, conversion; invert, inversion". **Animadvertō** means literally 'turn the mind to', and so 'notice'.

Vetō, 'forbid', is one of the few verbs of the first conjugation that do not follow the usual pattern of principal parts: **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus**.

FREQUENTATIVE VERBS

Frequentative (sometimes called iterative) verbs are usually first conjugation verbs that are formed from the stem of the perfect passive participle of another verb (of any conjugation) and have the idea of repeated or forcible action, although sometimes this idea is lost.

captō (1), 'strive to seize, lay hold with zeal *or* longing; catch at' (from **capiō**)

clāmitō* (1), 'cry out violently *or* aloud' (from **clāmō**)

cursō (1), 'run here and there *or* back and forth' (from **currō**)

dictō (1), 'say often' (from **dīcō**)

factitō† (1), 'make *or* do frequently; be wont to make *or* do' (from **faciō**)

fugitō (1), 'flee eagerly *or* in haste; shun' (from **fugiō**)

habitō (1), 'have frequently, be wont to have; inhabit' (from **habeō**)

lectitō† (1), 'gather *or* collect eagerly *or* often; read often *or* with eagerness *or* with attention' (from **legō**)

scriptitō† (1), 'write often, compose' (from **scribō**)

* Frequentatives made from first conjugation verbs end in **-itō** rather than **-ātō**.

† Here **-itō** has been added to the participial stem.

The following, although frequentatives, have lost the frequentative meaning:

ductō (1), 'lead, draw, conduct; delude' (from **dūcō**)

inceptō (1), 'begin, undertake, attempt' (from **incipiō**)

gestō (1), 'bear, carry, have' (from **gerō**)

Visō, visere, visī, visus, although not a first conjugation verb, is a frequentative meaning 'look at attentively'. From this verb another frequentative is formed, **visitō** (1), 'see, go to see, visit'.

INCHOATIVE VERBS

Inchoative (also called inceptive) verbs add the ending **-scō, -scere** either to the present stem of another verb or to the stem of a noun or adjective in order to indicate the beginning of an action. The inchoative verb has no perfect tense of its own, but it may use that of the verb on which it is based.

ardēscō, -ere, arsi, --, 'take fire, kindle, be inflamed, gleam'

(**ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsus**, 'be on fire, burn')

calēscō, -ere, calui, --, 'grow warm'

(**caleō, -ēre, calui, --**, 'be hot')

candēscō, -ere, candui, --, 'become bright'

(**candeō, -ēre, candui, --**, 'glitter, shine')

fervēscō, -ere, --, --, 'become boiling'

(**ferveō, -ēre, ferui, --**, 'be boiling hot, boil')

liquēscō, -ere, licui, --, 'become fluid *or* liquid, melt'

(**liqueō, -ēre, liqui or licui, --**, 'be fluid *or* clear')

lūcēscō, -ere, --, --, 'begin to shine, grow light'

(**lūceō, -ēre, lūxi, --**, 'be light, clear; shine')

rubēscō, -ere, rubui, --, 'grow red'

(**rubeō, -ēre, rubui, --**, 'be red')

valēscō, -ere, valūī, --, 'grow strong'
 (valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'be strong')
irāscor,* -ī, irātus sum, 'grow angry'
 (ira, -ae, F., 'anger')
mitēscō,* -ere, --, --, 'grow mild'
 (mitis, -e, 'mild')

* Note that a connecting vowel is sometimes added between the stem and the inchoative suffix.

Some verbs although inchoative in form have no inchoative force in their meaning:

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, 'grow, spring forth'
ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus, 'be forgiving, forgive, pardon'
oblivīscor, -ī, oblitus sum, 'forget'
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, 'set forth, set out, start'

UNIT SEVENTEEN — DRILL

1. Verēmur nē fulgor domūs dēleat.
2. Timuērunt nē hostēs oppidum oppūgnātūrī essent.
3. Veritī sumus ut iuvenēs lēgibus novīs pārērent.
4. Timuistis nē veterēs in prōvinciā novā ūtilēs nōn essent.
5. Dē hōc tibi dicere dubitābam.
6. Quis est quī dubitet quīn multō optimus magister sis?
7. Dubitāvimus an senēs primā lūce ventūrī essent.
8. Dubitātis num multum discāmus.
9. Nōn dubitāmus quīn multum discāmus.
10. Ivērunt Rōmam Caesarem vīsum.
11. Dolor erat difficilis lātū.
12. Liber erat facilis lēctū.
13. Nōn est dubium quīn liber facilis lēctū sit.
14. a) Cīvēs verentur ut urbs quam optimē mūniātur.
 b) Lēgātum igitur ad cōsulem auxilium rogātum mittent.
 c) Dubium est an eis cum veniā respōnsūrus sit.
15. Tē vetō istud facere.
16. a) Dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.
 b) Dēterrēbō nē istud faciās.
 c) Nōn dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.
 d) Num dēterreō quīn istud faciās?

17. Tuus pater mäterque veniunt.

Rewrite this sentence after each of the following introductory words or phrases:

- a) Timeō ut
- b) Timeō nē
- c) Vetō
- d) Dēterreō
- e) Nōn dēterreō

18. Soror frātri dōnum dat.

Rewrite this sentence after the five introductory words or phrases given under 17 above.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Metuō ut ūnā vĕnātūrī simus.
2. Timuisti nē illō tempore relictus essēs?
3. Verēmur ut adulēscentēs urbem nostram cum celeritāte dēfendant.
4. Metuisne nē facta turpia sociōrum nōn cēlāta sint?
5. Timeō nē reliquī ad urbem nōn perveniant.
6. Dubitō num religiō nōbīs prōfutūra sit.
7. Dubitāsne an nōs ad hās rēs animadvertāmus?
8. Dubium nōn est quīn mihi magnus metus sit.
9. Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn ortum sōlis vidērent.
10. Dubitāre numquam dēsiit num ad āram pervenirēs.
11. Quis dubitat quīn sōl oriātur?
12. Dubitāvērunt an hostēs patriam invāsissent.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Vereor ut vincēns tuīs parsūrus sit.
2. Ūnum illud timēbam nē quid turpius facerem, vel dicam, iam effēcissem.
3. Nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit filius. [*uxor, uxōris, F., 'wife'*]
4. Nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae. [*Homērus, -i, M., 'Homer', a Greek epic poet*]
5. Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblicae auxiliō sit.
6. Aetās nōn impedit quōminus sapiēns bene vivendī cupidus sit.
7. Adest vir summā auctōritāte et religiōne et fidē quī nōs dēterrere potest nē plūra loquāmur.

8. Tū modo nē mē prohibeās accipere, sī quid det mihi, [**modo** (adv.), 'just']
9. Dēsinite dubitāre utrum sit ūtilius.
10. Honestumne factū sit dubitant.
11. Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.
12. Metuō quid futūrum dēnique sit.
13. Difficile est mihi omnia dē quibus dubitō ad tē referre.
14. Neque enim dubitandum putō quā aqua dūcenda sit in illam cīvitatē.
15. Opus est quam primum aliquō quod aquam in cīvitatē cum celeritate dūcat.
16. Vērē spērō tē eā quā dēbēbis diligentiā hoc opus factūrum.
17. Vēnātum Aenēās ūnāque miserrima Didō
in nemus ire parant, ubi primōs crāstinus ortūs
extulerit Titān radiisque retēxerit orbem.

(Vergil, *Aeneid* iv.117–119)

[**Aenēās**, proper name, a Roman hero; **Didō**, proper name, the queen of Carthage; **crāstinus**, -a, -um, 'pertaining to tomorrow, tomorrow's'; **Titān**, a god, 'the sun']

18. Sapientēs antiquī sōlis et lūnae reliquōrumque sīderum ortūs, obitūs, mōtūsque cognōscere voluērunt.
19. Tū prō tuā sapientiā quid optimum factū sit vidēbis; omnēs multō prius animadvertērunt tē intellegentiōrem esse illis hanc cīvitatē regentibus. [**prō**, here, 'by virtue of']
20. Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere destitērunt, quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.
21. Lēgātum suum ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat.
22. a) Vōs dēfendere relictam urbem vetāmus.
b) Dubium est an relictam urbem dēfēnsūrus sit.
c) Eis obstat quōminus relictam urbem dēfendant.
23. Ortō sōle, nēmō erat quī dubitāret quā cōpiae nostrae eō diē omnīnō superārent.
24. Cum tanta scelera fēcissent, omnēs impiī metuērunt ut sōl eō diē horridō orīrētur.
25. Nōn vērō periculum erat nē nōn mortem optandam putāret.
26. Num est periculum nē quis putet turpe esse?
27. Veritus est nē vēnārī nōn posset.
28. Nē quod bellum orīrētur metus erat.
29. Vidēsne enim, quae dubia sint, ea crēdi prō certis?

II.

1. He was (a man) of such sanctity that he kept the leaders from committing crimes.

2. a) We fear that he will reveal the crimes of this house.
 b) We fear that he revealed the crimes of this house.
 c) We fear that he is revealing the crimes of this house.
 d) We feared that he would reveal the crimes of this house.
3. The honorable men doubted whether his lifetime had been well spent.
4. The honorable men did not doubt that his lifetime had been well spent.
5. Stop hunting! I forbid you to kill more animals.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.11

Quoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant² hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum³ iūdicīō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.⁴ Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilii egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā⁵ tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

aliter (*adv.*), otherwise
antiquitus (*adv.*), in ancient times, long ago
arbitrium, -ī, *N.*, decision, judgment
circumveniō (*circum* + *veniō*), surround
dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visus, divide
egeō, -ēre, -uī, --, be in need of (+ *gen.*)
existimō (*I*), think, estimate, judge, deem
factiō, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party
nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation

pāgus, -ī, *M.*, district
potēns, **potentis**, powerful
princeps, **principis**, *M.*, leader, chief
prōpōnō (*prō* + *pōnō*), set forth, report
ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, plan, reason, rationale
sēsē, = *sē*
singulī, -ae, -a, single, one by one
summa, -ae, *F.*, control, main point

¹ **hunc locum**: i.e., in his narrative. Caesar has been writing about his conquests in Gaul and Germany and now pauses to speak about the culture of these countries.

² **quō differant**: indirect question dependent on **prōpōnere**; **quō** = **quō modō**

³ **eōrum**: refers to the Gauls

⁴ **redeat**: subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic; translate 'is referred'

⁵ **in summā**: 'generally'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.12

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī,⁶ alterius Sēquani.⁶ Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs⁶ magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum⁷ sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnis iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitāte Aeduōrum⁶ interfectā, tantum⁸ potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs⁶ ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs⁶ cōnsiliū⁹ inītūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Diviciācus¹⁰ auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs⁶ redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novis per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ii quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant

accipiō (ad + capiō), take over, receive
addūcō (ad + dūcō), lead to, influence
adiungō (ad + iungō), join to, attach
adventus, -ūs, *M.*, arrival
aggregō (l), add, adhere; join
antecēdō (ante + cēdō), go before, excel
antiquitus (*adv.*), in ancient times, long ago
cliēns, **clientis**, *M.*, dependent
clientēla, -ae, *F.*, dependent, dependency
cōgō, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, compel
commūtātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, change
comparō (l), acquire
complūrēs, -a (-ia), several
dignitās, -tātis, *F.*, dignity
factiō, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party
finitimus, -a, -um, nearby, neighboring
grātia, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor
iactūra, -ae, *F.*, loss; expense, cost
ineō (in + eō), go into, begin
infectus, -a, -um (in + faciō), not done
iūrō (l), swear
necessitās, -tātis, *F.*, need, necessity

nōbilitās, -tātis, *F.*, nobility
obses, **obsidis**, *M.* + *F.*, hostage
obtimeō (ob + teneō), obtain
occupō (l), occupy
perdūcō (per + dūcō), lead to, win over, persuade
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, promise
possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, seize, possess
potentia, -ae, *F.*, power
prīnceps, **prīncipis**, *M.*, leader, chief
prīncipātus, -ūs, *M.*, leadership
proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle
pūblicē (*adv.*), in public
reddō, -ere, **reddidī**, **redditus**, return
restituō, -ere, **restitui**, **restitūtus**, set up again, restore
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
senātus, -ūs, *M.*, senate
trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), lead over, win over
valeō, -ēre, -uī, **valitus**, be well, be strong, be influential

⁶ Aeduī, Sēquani: Gallic tribes

⁷ Ariovistus: a German king

⁸ tantum: here, as adverb, 'so much, to such a degree'

⁹ cōnsiliū: the partitive genitive is dependent on nihil

¹⁰ Diviciācus: a chief of the Aedui who was a friend of Caesar

meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani⁶ principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī¹¹ successerant; quōs¹² quod adaequāre apud Caesarem¹³ grātiā intellegēbātur, ii qui propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Aeduīs⁶ coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs¹¹ in clientēlam dicābant.¹⁴ Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Aeduī⁶ habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī¹¹ obtinērent.

adaequō (l), be equal (to)

aequus, -a, -um, equal; level; equitable, just

amplificō (l), make bigger, amplify

clientēla, -ae, *F.*, dependent, dependency

colligō (com- + legō), gather, collect

condiciō, -ōnis, *F.*, condition, terms

coniungō (com- + iungō), join, join together

dicō (l), declare, proclaim

dignitās, -tātis, *F.*, dignity

diligenter (*adv.*), diligently

dimitto (dis- + mitto), dismiss, give up

grātiā, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor

obtineō (ob + teneō), obtain

princeps, principis, *M.*, leader, chief

principātus, -ūs, *M.*, leadership

repente (*adv.*), suddenly

secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable

status, -ūs, *M.*, state, condition, situation

succēdō (sub + cēdō), go beneath, approach, advance

tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, watch, protect

¹¹ Rēmī: a Gallic tribe

¹² quōs: subject accusative of the infinitive adaequāre

¹³ apud Caesarem: 'in Caesar's eyes'

¹⁴ Sē... in clientēlam dicābant: i.e., 'they attached themselves (to)'

This construction is also used to stand for an *active* idea in future time when the verb in question has no fourth principal part and therefore can have no future active infinitive.

Putat **fore ut** ille vir carmen scribere **possit**. He thinks *that it will be that* that man *be able* to write a poem; he thinks *that* that man *will be able* to write a poem.

Possum, posse, potui has no fourth principal part and so no future active infinitive; the periphrasis is essential in this case to express the future idea.

C. The Historical Infinitive

Occasionally an infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb where the English demands a finite verb. Such infinitives are called *historical infinitives* and emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action.

In viis urbis heri **currere, clāmāre, fortiter pūgnāre**. In the streets of the city yesterday (there were) *running, shouting, fighting* bravely; in the streets of the city yesterday (men/they) were *running, shouting, fighting* bravely.

The historical infinitive, in which one can most clearly see the function of the infinitive as a pure verbal noun, is one of the earliest uses of the infinitive.

Yesterday in the streets of the city *running* (occurred), *shouting* (occurred), brave *fighting* (occurred).

The subject of an historical infinitive is in the *nominative* case.

Homō ācritēr pūgnāre. *The man* fought fiercely.

D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs

Forms of the perfect tenses which have **-vi-** or **-ve-** in them are sometimes shortened or syncopated by dropping the **-vi-** or **-ve-**. Observe:

amāsti	FOR	amāvisti
amārunt		amāvērunt
amārim		amāverim
audisse		audivisse
audissem		audivissem
dēlērunt		dēlēvērunt
dēlēssem		dēlēvissem
laudāssēmus		laudāvissēmus
amāstis		amāvistis

E. -ēre for -ērunt in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative

The ending -ēre is sometimes used in poetry and high style prose as an alternate for -ērunt:

amāvēre FOR amāvērunt
dixēre dixērunt

F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice

The ablative case is regularly used in Latin to express *respect* or *specification* (see Unit Eight, section D). Occasionally in poetry and in late Latin the accusative is found with this function. This is really a Greek construction which has been borrowed by the Latin.

Ferrum cingitur. He is girded *with respect to a sword*; he girds on a sword.

The Greek verb has three voices: active, passive, and middle. The middle voice often has the same forms as the passive, but it is used in a reflexive sense; that is, the subject at the same time performs the action and experiences its effect(s). In the example above, **cingitur** may be explained as the equivalent of a Greek middle, meaning literally 'he girds (a sword) on himself'. If we interpret **cingitur** in this way, then **ferrum** may be explained alternatively as the *object* of the middle verb **cingitur**. Whichever way we choose to interpret the grammar, the construction involved is a Greek one.

The accusative of respect is frequently used to express the *part affected*:

Caput vulnerātus est. He was wounded *with respect to his head*; he was wounded *in the head*.

Ōs pallōre suffūsa est. She was suffused *with respect to her face* with pallor; she was suffused with pallor *in her face*.

G. Adverbial Accusative

Closely allied to the accusative of respect is the so-called *adverbial accusative*. What is in fact an accusative of respect functions adverbially:

Maximam partem ille vir sapientissimus est. *With respect to the greatest part*, that man is very wise; *for the most part* that man is very wise.

Id temporis magnus numerus lēgātōrum ad urbem vēnit. *With respect to that* of time, a great number of legates came to the city; *at that* time a great number of legates came to the city.

Multum labōrat ut ā civibus laudētur. He works *with respect to much* in order that he may be praised by the citizens; he works *a lot* in order that he may be praised by the citizens.

H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

Mātris et patris bene meminī. I remember *my mother and father* well.

Dolōris nūper oblītus eram. I had recently forgotten *my grief*.

Virtūtis eōrum nōn obliviscor. I do not forget their *courage*.

Note that the accusative is also found with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

I. Genitive of Indefinite Value

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as **as**, **assis**, M., 'as' (a small denomination of money), **floccus**, -ī, M., 'a lock of wool', and **nihilum**, -ī, N., 'nothing', are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

Magnī mē hābet. He considers me *of great (value)*.

Parvī suam civitātem facit. He reckons (makes) his state *of little (value)*.

Familiam suam **floccī** dūcit. He considers his family *of a lock of wool*; he doesn't care *at all* for his family; he doesn't give *a damn* for his family.

J. Ablative of Price

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to express the price of something.

Villam suam **magnō (pretiō)** vendidit. He sold his country house *by means of a great price*; he sold his country house *at a great price*.

Nēmō est qui **pāce** bellum mūtet. There is no one who would (ex)change war *by means of peace*; there is no one who would exchange war *for peace*.

K. *quod*, 'the fact that'

A substantive clause introduced by **quod**, 'the fact that', and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.

Quod ille coniugem tantum amat mē movet.	<i>The fact that</i> that man loves (his) wife so much moves me. (subject of main verb)
Alterum est periculum, quod iste plūs imperii vult.	The other danger is <i>the fact that</i> that man (of yours) wants more power. (in apposition to subject of main verb)
Neglēxērunt quod ego civitāti multōs annōs prōsum.	They have neglected <i>the fact that</i> I have been useful to the state for many years. (object of main verb)

UNIT EIGHTEEN — VOCABULARY

aestimō (1)	estimate, reckon
as, assis, -ium, M.	as (a small denomination of money)
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīctus	surround, gird
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus	buy
honor, honōris, M.	honor, distinction, office
meminī, meminisse (defective verb)	remember
nihilum, -ī, N.	nothing
numerus, -ī, M.	number
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum	forget
pretium, -ī, N.	price; value
pūgna, -ae, F.	battle, fight
quod sī	but if
vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus	sell
vulnerō (1)	wound

UNIT EIGHTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus, ‘surround, gird’, lengthens the -i- in the perfect active stem since it is followed by -nx- and in the perfect passive stem since it is followed by -nct-.

In the perfect forms of **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus**, ‘buy’, the e- is long. **Ēmptor**, ‘buyer’, is a well-known word because of the famous expression, **Caveat Ēmptor**, ‘Let the buyer beware’ (**caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus**, ‘be on guard, take care, beware’).

Meminī, ‘remember’, is a defective verb like **ōdī**; it is found only in the perfect tenses and the perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as past, and the future perfect as future. Often this verb governs the genitive: **Patriae meministī?** ‘Do you remember your native land?’

Numerus, numerī, M., is not only 'number' but can also mean 'a group': **Iste in numerō nostrō nōn est**, 'That (awful) man is not in our group (crowd)'.

Obliviscor, obliviscī, oblītus sum, 'forget', often governs the genitive case: **In mediō bellō metūs oblītus est**, 'In the midst of the war he forgot his fear'.

Pūgna, pūgnae, F., 'battle, fight', is related to **pūgnō**; they both have the same root.

Quod sī means 'but if'. Remember that **quod** has several different meanings: 'because', 'which' (the neuter relative pronoun), 'which?, what?' (interrogative adjective), and 'the fact that'.

Vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus, is a contraction of **vēnum dō**, 'give a sale', and so it means 'sell'.

Vulnerō, a first conjugation verb, 'wound' is a denominative verb from **vulnus, vulneris, N.**, 'wound'.

COMPOUND WORDS

In addition to using prefixes and suffixes to compound words, Latin may combine a noun stem with a verb or verb stem, an adverb with a verb, or an adjective with a noun. Other combinations also exist.

manumittō, -ere, -misī, -missus, 'set at liberty, free a slave'

armiger, -a, -um, 'bearing weapons, armed, warlike'

(used substantively, **armiger, -ī, M.**, 'armor-bearer, shield-bearer')

benedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, 'commend, praise'

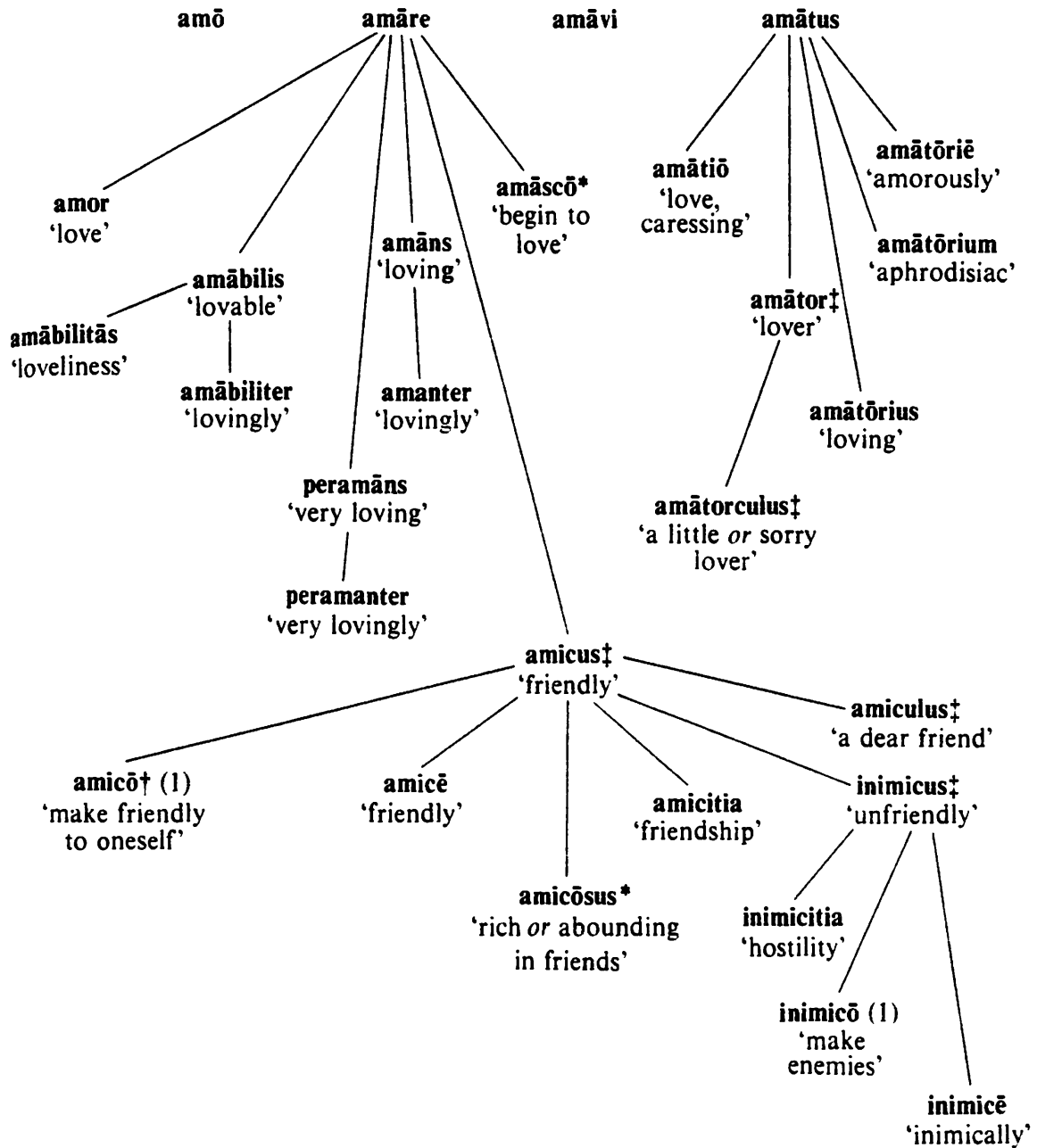
caelicola, -ae, M. (**caelum + colō, ere, coluī, cultus**, 'dwell'), 'god'

magnanimus, -a, -um 'great-souled, magnanimous'

avipēs, -pedis (avis, avis, F., 'bird'), 'bird-footed, swift-footed'

Some of the principles of Latin word formation are illustrated in the accompanying diagram of the verb **amō**.

Latin Word Formation



* Word found only in an old grammarian.

† Word found once.

‡ Feminine forms are also possible, with the addition of feminine suffixes (-a, -trix).

UNIT EIGHTEEN — DRILL

1. Multi hominēs familiam parvī habuēre.
2. Cottidiē multum studēmus ut multa discāmus.
3. Dixit futūrum esse ut dux ā militibus nōn metuerētur.
4. Populus tōtus spērat fore ut hostēs vincantur.
5. Memorēs periculi magnā cum cūrā in nemus ingressi sunt.
6. Remānsit Aenēas clārāque in lūce refulsit ('gleamed') ōs umerōsque ('shoulders') deō similis.
7. Signum Iūnō mōnstrārat; sic nam fore bellō ēgregiam et facilem victū per aetātēs gentem. [ēgregius, -a, -um, 'outstanding']
8. Quod populus tōtus eum timet duci saevō magnopere placet.
9. Ōdit quod populus tōtus eum timet.
10. Cum villam amicī relinquere properārent, statuās tamen plūrimā pecūniā ēptās ('bought') animadvertēre.
11. Cum multum laudāssent fortiōra facta ducis, omnēs dixērunt eum nōn diū victūrum.
12. Cēlāta corpus umbrīs, fēmina saeva cui nōn erat fidēs per ardēns oppidum errāvit.
13. Postquam in tēctum ingressi sunt, aliī rēgem quaerere; aliī aliōs visōs interficere; quaerere loca cēlāta; clausa ('closed') aperire; strepitū ('noise') et tumultū ('confusion') omnia miscēre dum rēx invenirētur.
14. Nēmō est cui quotquot ('however much') sit pecūniae placeat.
15. Relinquāmus omnēs terram quam incolāmus ut libertātem vitamque novam petāmus.

UNIT EIGHTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Ille amicitiam parvī habet, quī pecūniam amicis semper praepōnat.
2. Illud cōsiliū boni faciō.
3. Quinque librōs duōbus ferris ēmi.
4. Postquam domum multā cum pecūniā rediēre, meministine quantum istae ā civibus suis laudātae sint? Pecūniane eis tantī (pretiū) erat?
5. Fāma Caesaris erat plūris civibus Rōmānis quam aliōrum ducum. Virium ac virtūtis eius numquam obliti sunt. Eārum etiam nunc meminērunt.
6. Cum vidērem fore ut cum nūntiō colloqui nōn possem, cōstitui mē quam celerrimē domum recipere ubi cognōscerem quid in campō nūper accidisset.
7. Metū mortis neglētō, cōpiae pericula pūgnae nihili aestimārunt.
8. Ille miser virtūtem honōremque pecūniā vendidit. Civēs eum nunc parvī dūcunt. Quod iste sē ita gessit hominēs mōrum bonōrum in omnī orbe terrarum taedet.

9. Quis fāmam divitiis mūtārit? Nēmō est quī crēdat futūrum esse ut tālis esse miser umquam dēsinat.
10. Putant fore ut nēmō ē civibus metuat nē plūs imperiī capere velit.
11. Sī carmina illius poētae audisset, ea magnī habuisset.
12. Pollicitus est sē Rōmam properātūrum esse; aliōs illūc iam properāsse.
13. Carmina Paulus emit, recitat sua carmina Paulus.
Nam quod emās possis iūre vocāre tuum.

(Martial 2.20)

[Paulus, -ī, M., proper name; recitō (1), 'recite']

14. Quis autem eum magnī dūcat quem multum metuat vel ā quō sē metui putet?
15. Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēceris.
16. Mors tam mihi grāta est ut, quō propius ad eam accēdam, quasi terram vidēre videar post longum in nāve iter.
17. Quod sī quem socium caput vulnerātum in urbe vidisti, mōnstrā eum mihi sine morā! [caput, capitis, N., 'head']
18. Mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, obliviscere timōris atque dubiī!
19. Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis.

(Catullus 5.1-3)

[sevērus, -a, -um, 'stern, severe']

20. Istōs hominēs, ferra cinctōs, populus maximē timet. Nam imperātor omnēs rēs horridās per eōs agere, in amīcis habēre, eōs maximī aestimat.

II.

1. Although the man was wounded in the foot, he forgot his pain and, for the most part, fought courageously.
2. He said that he would not be able to sell his sword for much money; in times of peace, others don't value such weapons highly.
3. The fact that he bought his own safety at the price of the freedom of his people disgusts me.
4. I wanted to gird myself with a sword in order that I might drive back the soldiers who were rushing into the city.

UNIT EIGHTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.14 (For an adaptation of the content of *Gallic War* vi.13, which provides the link between the connected reading in Unit Seventeen and that which follows, see the exercises of Unit Thirteen.)

Druidēs¹ ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantis excitāti praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī XX in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis īstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discunt litteris cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre² — quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārū diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās,³ sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī⁴ putant, metū mortis neglētō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārū magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, trust fully (+ *dat.*)
 cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, be accustomed
 conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together
 disciplina, -ae, *F.*, training
 disputō (l), dispute
 ēdiscō (ē + discō), learn thoroughly, learn by heart
 excitō (l), arouse, excite
 existimō (l), think, judge, deem
 fās, *N.* (*indeclinable*), right, divine right
 ferē (*adv.*), almost
 intereō (inter + eō), die
 iuventūs, -tūtis, *F.*, young manhood, youth
 magnitudō, -tūdinis, *F.*, size, magnitude
 mandō (l), entrust
 mundus, -ī, *M.*, world
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, not none, *i.e.*, some
 pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh out, pay
 perdiscō (per + discō), learn thoroughly

permaneō (per + maneō), stay through, continue, persist
 plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, most (of), the larger part (of)
 potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power
 praesidium, -ī, *N.*, help, aid
 praetereā (*adv.*), besides
 primus, -a, -um, first
 in primīs, especially, first of all
 privātus, -a, -um, private
 propinquus, -a, -um, near, close by
 propinquus, -ī, *M.*, relative
 ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, reason, plan; account
 remittō (re- + mittō), send back; relax, weaken
 sponte (*abl. F.*), of one's own will, voluntarily
 trānsēō (trāns + eō), cross over
 tributum, -ī, *N.*, tribute, tax
 versus, -ūs, *M.*, a line of poetry, verse
 vulgus, -ī, *N.*, common people, crowd

¹ Druidēs, -um, *M.*: the Druids, the priests and wise men of Gaul

² studēre: *here*, 'pay attention to'

³ nōn interire animās, sed . . . ad aliōs . . . : The entire clause is in apposition to *hoc*.

⁴ excitārī: Supply *hominēs* as the subject.

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.15

Alterum genus⁵ est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita⁶ plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.16

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affecti graviōribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad⁷ ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur,⁸ nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

administer, administrī, *M.*, attendant
 admodum (*adv.*), in a high degree, very much
 adventus, -ūs, *M.*, arrival
 afficiō (*ad* + *faciō*), do to, affect
 ambactus, -ī, *M.*, dependent, vassal
 amplus, -a, -um, great, ample
 circumveniō (*circum* + *veniō*), surround
 cliēns, clientis, *M.*, dependent
 compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill completely
 comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, seize, catch, arrest
 contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus, weave together; plait
 dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, give up, surrender
 dēficiō (*dē* + *faciō*), fail, give out
 dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, go down, descend; resort
 eques, equitis, *M.*, horseman, knight
 exanimō (*l*), exhaust; take breath from, kill
 ferē (*adv.*), almost
 fūrtum, -ī, *N.*, theft
 grātia, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor
 immānis, -e, great, huge, large
 immolō (*l*), sacrifice, immolate
 incidō (*in* + *cadō*), fall upon; happen
 iniūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, wrong; outrage
 innocēns, innocentis, innocent

latrōcinium, -ī, *N.*, robbery
 magnitūdō, -tūdinis, *F.*, size, magnitude
 membrum, -ī, *N.*, limb
 morbus, -ī, *M.*, disease
 nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation
 plācō (*l*), placate, appease
 potentia, -ae, *F.*, power, influence
 proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle
 prōpulsō (*l*), drive off
 pūblicē (*adv.*), in public
 quotannis (*adv.*), yearly
 reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, return, give back, give in return
 religiō, -ōnis, *F.*, here, religion
 sacrificium, -ī, *N.*, sacrifice
 simulācrum, -ī, *N.*, image, statue
 succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, ignite from below, burn
 supplicium, -ī, *N.*, punishment
 utī, = *ut*
 versō (*l*), keep turning; *in passive*, be engaged, be busy
 victima, -ae, *F.*, victim, sacrificial animal
 vimen, -inis, *N.*, pliant twig
 vivus, -a, -um, living, alive
 voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow

⁵ *alterum genus*: The first class of people mentioned in Gaul was the Druids; now Caesar turns his attention to the knights. See sentence 51 in Unit Thirteen.

⁶ *ut . . . ita*: used correlatively (e.g., 'As' Maine goes, 'so' goes the nation.)

⁷ *ad*: here, 'for'

⁸ *reddātur*: present subjunctive representing the indicative in a present general condition in indirect statement. See *Appendix*, pp. 397-399.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.17

Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,⁹ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad¹⁰ quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.18

Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte¹¹ patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

adeō (ad + eō), approach
 adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultus, grow up
 artificium, -ī, *N.*, handicraft
 assistō, -ere, -stītī, --, stand near
 caelestis, -e, heavenly
 colō, -ere, -tū, cultus, cultivate, worship
 cōsecrō (l), consecrate
 cōspectus, -ūs, *M.*, view, sight
 cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, observe, see
 cruciātus, -ūs, *M.*, torture
 dēpellō (dē + pellō), drive away
 dēvoeō, -ēre, -vōvī, vōtus, vow, dedicate
 dīmīcō (l), fight
 exstruō, -ere, -trūxī, -trūctus, pile up
 ferē (*adv.*), almost
 finiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, set limits to
 immolō (l), sacrifice, immolate
 initium, -ī, *N.*, beginning
 institūtum, -ī, *N.*, practice, custom
 inventor, -ōris, *M.*, inventor, founder
 liberi, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, children
 mēnsis, -is, -ium, *F.*, month
 mercātūra, -ae, *F.*, trade
 militiā, -ae, *F.*, warfare, military service

morbis, -ī, *M.*, disease
 mūnus, -eris, *N.*, gift; duty, task
 nātālis, -e, pertaining to birth, of birth
 observō (l), observe
 occultō (l), hide
 palam (*adv.*), openly
 plērumque (*adv.*), generally, for the most part
 praedicō (l), proclaim
 prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give forth; hand
 down
 proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle
 prōgnātus, -a, -um, descended
 puerilis, -e, of a boy, boyish, childish
 quaestus, -ūs, *M.*, profit, gain
 quispiam, quidpiam (*indef. pron.*), anyone,
 anything
 simulācrum, -ī, *N.*, image, statue
 spatium, -ī, *N.*, space, distance, period
 subsequor (sub + sequor), follow closely
 supplicium, -ī, *N.*, punishment
 sustineō (sub + teneō), sustain, endure
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, take away,
 remove
 tumulus, -ī, *M.*, mound, tomb

⁹ ferunt: *here*, 'they say, they call'

¹⁰ ad: *here*, 'for, in regard to'

¹¹ Dis, Ditis, *M.*: Dis, Pluto, Hades (god of the underworld)

Caesar, *Galic War* vi.19

Viri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque¹² servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit,¹³ ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus¹² superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viri in¹⁴ uxōrēs, sicuti in¹⁴ liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum¹⁵ quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,¹⁶ ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō¹⁷ cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivis cordi fuisse¹⁸ arbitrātur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā¹⁹ servi et clientēs quōs ab iis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōfectis, ūnā cremābantur.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, value, appraisal
 cliēns, clientis, *M.*, dependent
 commūnicō (l), join to an equal part, unite
 comperiō, -ire, comperi, compertus, find out, discover
 coniūctim (*adv.*), jointly
 cōnstat (*impersonal verb*), it is evident, it is agreed (+ *subject acc. and inf.*)
 conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together
 cor, cordis, *N.*, heart
 cremō (l), burn, cremate
 cultus, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation, refinement
 dēcēdō (dē + cēdō), go away from, withdraw; die
 diligō, -ere, dilēxi, dilēctus, esteem highly, love
 dōs, dōtis, *F.*, dowry
 excrucio (l), torment, afflict, vex
 fūnebris, -e, pertaining to a funeral (*neuter plural as noun*, funeral rites)
 fūnus, -eris, *N.*, funeral
 illūstris, -e, illustrious, distinguished
 iūstus, -a, -um, just

liberī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, children
 magnificus, -a, -um, magnificent
 nex, necis, *F.*, death
 perveniō (per + veniō), arrive at, reach
 potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power, influence
 prō (*prep. + abl.*), in consideration of, in accordance with
 propinquus, -a, -um, near, close by
 propinquus, -ī, *M.*, relative
 quaestiō, -ōnis, *F.*, inquiry
 ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, account
 servilis, -e, pertaining to a slave, servile
 sicuti (*adv.*), just as
 sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, sumptuous
 superior, superius, former, past
 suprā (*prep. + acc.*), above, beyond
 suspiciō, -ōnis, *F.*, suspicion
 tormentum, -ī, *N.*, torment, torture, anguish, pain
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, both
 uxor, uxōris, *F.*, wife
 vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

¹² frūctūs: 'profit, interest'

¹³ uter eōrum vitā superāvit: i.e., whichever one survives the other

¹⁴ in: *here*, 'over'

¹⁵ in servilem modum: 'as in the case of slaves'. According to Roman custom, freeborn people could not be tortured; slaves could.

¹⁶ sī compertum est: i.e., that the death of the father of the household was not natural

¹⁷ prō: *here*, 'in keeping with'

¹⁸ vivis cordi fuisse: double dative construction; translate 'to have been dear to the heart of the living'

¹⁹ suprā . . . memoriā: 'shortly before our own time'

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.20

Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,²⁰ sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō²¹ aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt²² occultant, quae esse ex ūsū²³ iūdicāvērunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.21

Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student.²⁴ Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.²⁵ Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis²⁶ labōri ac dūritiae student.

administrō (l), serve, provide for; execute
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, see, perceive
commodus, -a, -um, suitable
commūnicō (l), communicate
concēdō (com- + cēdō), yield, allow
conciliū, -i, N., assembly
cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī, --, depend upon
cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis, F., custom
divinus, -a, -um, divine
dūritia, -ae, F., harshness
existimō (l), estimate, judge, deem
facinus, -oris, N., crime
falsus, -a, -um, false
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by
impellō (in + pellō), drive on, impel
imperitus, -a, -um, inexperienced
iūdicō (l), judge

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help; delight
labor, -ōris, M., labor, toil, hardship
magistrātus, -ūs, M., magistracy; public officer
militāris, -e, pertaining to the military, military
multitūdō, -tūdinis, F., crowd, multitude
nēve (conj.), and not, and lest
occultō (l), hide
prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditus, give forth; hand down; reveal
sacrificiū, -i, N., sacrifice
sanciō, -ire, sānxī, sānctus, guarantee, arrange
temerārius, -a, -um, rash, reckless
utī, = ut
vēnātiō, -ōnis, F., hunting

²⁰ sānctum: explained by utī...commūnicet

²¹ quō = aliquō

²² vīsa sunt: here, 'seemed best'

²³ ex ūsū: 'of advantage'

²⁴ student: here, 'attach importance to'

²⁵ accēpērunt: accipiō here has the force 'hear of'

²⁶ ā parvis: 'from childhood'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.22

Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs²⁷ gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum,²⁸ quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est²⁹ agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendī agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius quam ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animi aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequāri videat.

accūrātē (*adv.*), carefully

aedificō (I), build

aequitās, -tātis, F., fairness, equality

aequō (I), make equal

aestus, -ūs, M., heat

agricultūra, -ae, F., agriculture

aliō (*adv.*), to another place

assiduus, -a, -um, continual

attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, allot

carō, carnis, F., meat

cāseus, -ī, M., cheese

coeō (com- + eō), go together, unite

cognātiō, -ōnis, F., blood relationship, association, affinity

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, bring together; compel

commūtō (com- + mūtō), cf. mūtō (I)

cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstiti, --, depend upon

cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, F., custom, habit

contineō (com- + teneō), keep together, hem in; restrain

cupiditās, -tātis, F., desire

dissēsiō, -ōnis, F., dissension

factiō, -ōnis, F., faction, (political) party

frīgus, -oris, N., cold

lac, lactis, N., milk

lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide

magistrātus, -ūs, M., magistracy, public officer

possessiō, possessiōnis, F., possession

potēns, potentis, powerful

prīnceps, principis, M., leader, chief

proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, proper; one's own

singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, single

trānseō (trāns + eō), go across, cross

vīctus, -ūs, M., food, nourishment

vītō (I), avoid

²⁷ in annōs singulōs: 'each year'

²⁸ cognātiōnibus hominum: 'groups of relatives'

²⁹ vīsum est: 'it seemed best'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.23

Civitatibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit³⁰ aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiasque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis³¹ ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint³² profiteantur,³³ cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūti nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī³⁴ quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

collaudō (com- + laudō), cf. laudō
 commūnicō (l), share, communicate
 commūnis, -e, common
 concilium, -i, N., assembly
 cōsistō, -ere, cōstiti, --, take a stand, halt
 cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctus, rise up together
 contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy
 dērogō (l), take away from
 dēsertor, -ōris, M., deserter
 dēsidia, -ae, F., sloth, laziness
 exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, train, exercise
 existimō (l), estimate, judge, deem
 extrā (prep. + acc.), outside of
 fās, N. (indeclinable), right, divinely right
 finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by
 incursiō, -ōnis, F., incursion, attack
 infāmia, -ae, F., ill repute
 iniūria, -ae, F., wrong, injury; injustice
 iuventūs, -tūtis, F., youth, young manhood
 latrōcinium, -i, N., robbery
 lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide
 magistrātus, -ūs, M., public office; public officer; magistrate
 minuō, -ere, minui, minūtus, lessen, diminish

multitudō, -tūdinis, F., crowd, multitude
 nex, necis, F., death
 pāgus, -i, M., district
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, --, lie open
 postea (adv.), afterwards
 potestās, -tātis, F., power
 praedicō (l), proclaim
 princeps, principis, M., leader, chief
 probō (l), approve
 prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor
 profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, declare publicly, acknowledge
 prope (prep. + acc.), near, close to
 proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, one's own
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indefinite pron.), whoever, whatever
 regiō, -ōnis, F., region
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden
 sāctus, -a, -um, holy, sacred
 simul (adv.), at the same time
 sōlitūdō, -tūdinis, F., solitude; empty space
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, remove
 vāstō (l), devastate, lay waste
 victus, -ūs, M., food

³⁰ dēfendit: here, 'ward off'

³¹ quis = aliquis

³² velint: subjunctive by attraction

³³ profiteantur: subjunctive in an indirect command, dependent on dixit; assume the ellipsis of et ut after fore.

³⁴ quī: assume the ellipsis of eōs as the antecedent of qui

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.24

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultrò bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum³⁵ coloniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam,³⁶ quam Eratostheni³⁷ et quibusdam Graecis famā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae³⁸ Tectosagēs³⁹ occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēderunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opiniōnem. Nunc, quod in eadem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germani permanent, eodem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum⁴⁰ propinquitās et trāsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa⁴¹ ad⁴² cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim assuēfacti superārī multisque victi proeliis nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

anteā (*adv.*), beforehand, formerly
 appellō (l), call, name
 assuēfactiō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, accustom
 bellicus, -a, -um, warlike, pertaining to war
 colōnia, -ae, *F.*, settlement
 comparō (l), compare
 cōsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, sit, settle
 continueō (com- + teneō), keep together, keep
 in, contain
 cultus, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation
 egestās, -tātis, *F.*, lack, poverty
 fertilis, -e, fertile
 inopia, -ae, *F.*, lack, need
 iūstitia, -ae, *F.*, justice
 largior, -irī, -ītus sum, bestow generously

multitūdō, -tūdinis, *F.*, crowd, multitude
 nōtitia, -ae, *F.*, knowledge
 occupō (l), seize
 patientia, -ae, *F.*, patience, endurance
 paulātim (*adv.*), little by little
 permaneō (per + maneō), cf. maneō
 proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle
 propinquitās, -tātis, *F.*, nearness, proximity
 sēdēs, -is, *F.*, seat; settlement
 sēsē, = sē
 silva, -ae, *F.*, forest
 trāsmarinus, -a, -um, pertaining to across
 the sea; overseas
 ultrò (*adv.*), of one's own accord
 victus, -ūs, *M.*, living, way of life

³⁵ Rhēnus, -ī, *M.*: the Rhine river

³⁶ Hercyniam silvam: the Hercynian forest, a forest in southern Germany

³⁷ Eratosthenēs, -is, *M.*: a Greek scholar in the Hellenistic period

³⁸ Volcae: a tribe in southern Gaul

³⁹ Tectosagēs, -um, *M.*: a branch of the Volcae tribe in southern Gaul

⁴⁰ prōvinciārum: the Roman provinces which were considered civilizing factors in Gaul

⁴¹ multa: object of largitur

⁴² ad: here, 'for the purpose of'

REVIEW—UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN

Review of Syntax

1. Nē offerāmus nōs periculis sine causā.
(hortatory subjunctive; dative with compound verb)
2. Cōgitat quantum in illō sceleris fuerit.
(indirect question)
3. Accēdente senectūte, quidam irātiōrēs fiunt quod multis ante annis plūra agere potuerint: plūs est adulēscētibz virium quam senibus. [**senectūs, -tūtis**, F., 'old age']
(**quod** clause of alleged reason)
4. Nescit plēbs quō modō comitēs servet; numquam ūlli pauperi ab imperātōre parsum est.
(indirect question; impersonal passive with an intransitive verb governing the dative)
5. Eis diēbus nēmō erat qui divitiās virtūtī praeferret.
(relative clause of characteristic; dative with compound verb)
6. Quid dē ūsū pācis cōstituāmus? Utrum aliquid nunc cōstituāmus an morēmur dum lēgātus adveniat?
(deliberative subjunctives; double direct question; **dum** with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
7. Magnī est iūdicis cōstituere quid quemque cuique praestāre oporteat. [**praestō, -āre, -stifī, -stītus**, 'excel, be superior to']
(adverbial accusative; dative with compound verb; impersonal verb; indirect question)
8. Faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant.
(substantive clause of result after **faciam ut**; indirect question)
9. Exiguū enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vivendum.
(**ad** + gerund expressing purpose)
10. Quō dē genere mortis difficile dictū est.
(ablative of supine — ablative of respect)

11. Exclūsi eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. [**exclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, 'shut out'; **salūtō** (1), 'greet']
(accusative of supine expressing purpose)
12. Vivis, et vivis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam. [**cōfirmō** (1), 'confirm, strengthen'; **dēpōnō** (**dē** + **pōnō**), 'set aside']
(**ad** + accusative + gerundive expressing purpose)
13. Ō deōs immortalēs! Multōs dolōrēs ipse sufferam, dum modo ā vōbīs huius horridī belli periculum dēpellātur. [**dēpellō** (**dē** + **pellō**), 'drive away, off, from']
(accusative of exclamation; subjunctive clause of proviso)
14. Nūllum est dubium quīn nōs omnēs multa prius mala sufferāmus quam iste ex urbe dēnique pellātur.
(negative clause of doubting with **quīn**; **priusquam** with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
15. Timēmus ut multī ē pūgnantibus superfutūrī sint. Nēmō autem dēterrēri poterit quōminus agat quid putet rei pūblicaē prōfutūrum esse.
(clause of fearing introduced by **ut**; clause of prevention introduced by **quōminus**; indirect question; dative with compound verb)
16. Rogantī melius quam imperantī pāreās.
(dative with intransitive verb; potential subjunctive)
17. Lēgātum mittit quī petat ut vōbīscum loquī liceat.
(relative clause of purpose; impersonal verb)
18. Tamne parvī animī videāmur omnēs quī rei pūblicaē atque hīs vitāe periculis intersumus ut nōbīscum peritūra omnia arbitrēmur? Anima enim immortalis est; numquam peribit. [**intersum** (**inter** + **sum**), 'be engaged in, be involved in']
(deliberative subjunctive; dative with compound verb; clause of result)
19. Cum vitā sine amicis multōs metūs habeat, amicitias maximī aestimāre dēbēmus. Verbōrum illius sapientis nōli oblivisci: Tālis igitur inter virōs amicitia tantās opportunitātēs habet, quantās vix possum dicere. [**opportunitās**, -tātis, F., 'opportunity']
(**cum** causal clause; genitive of indefinite value; genitive with expressions of remembering or forgetting)
20. Cum illi ipsi vēnissent quōs ego ad mē id temporis ventūrōs esse praedixeram, maximē timēbam. [**praedicō** (**prae** + **dicō**), 'foretell, predict'] (**cum** circumstantial clause; adverbial accusative)
21. Nōn dubitat quīn sit māter peritūra.
(**quīn** in clause of negative doubting)
22. Ipse negat fore ut villam multā pecūniā vendere possit.
(the periphrasis **fore** (**futūrum**) **ut** + subjunctive to make up for the lack of the future active infinitive in some verbs; ablative of price)

23. Quamdiū quisquam erit qui tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, et vivēs ita ut nunc vivis, multis custōdibus circumdatus, nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam possis. [**circumdō** (**circum** + **dō**), 'surround'; **commoveō** (**com-** + **moveō**), 'move thoroughly, excite']
(relative clause of characteristic or purpose)
24. Quid enim malī vel sceleris fieri vel cōgitāri potest?
25. His et tālibus pūgnīs inter nōs discessum est.
(impersonal use of the passive)
26. Beneficium dandō accēpit, quī dignō dedit. [**beneficium**, -ī, N., 'good deed']
(ablative of gerund)
27. Sed quam multōs fuisse putātis quī quae ego dēferrem nōn crēderent!
[**quam**, adv., 'how' — in exclamations]
(relative clause of characteristic; subjunctive by attraction)
28. Quamvis turpis quī monet nullī nocet. [**quamvis** [adv.], 'no matter how']
(dative with special intransitive verb)
29. Haec habuī dē amicitia quae dicerem.
(relative clause of purpose)
30. Num quid malī aut sceleris cōgitāri potest quod nōn iste fēcerit?
(direct question with **num**; relative clause of characteristic)
31. Quis rēx umquam fuit, quis populus, quī nōn ūterētur signis ā dis datis? neque solum in pāce, sed in bellō multō etiam magis, quō maius erat periculum.
(relative clause of characteristic)
32. Fac ut veniās.
(substantive clause of result)
33. Ō tempora mala! Ō rem pūblicam perditam!
(accusatives of exclamation)
34. Illō tempore omnia in peius ruere, omnēs hominēs maiōribus peiōrēs fieri.
(historical infinitives)
35. Quid nunc rogem tē ut veniās? Nōn rogem! Sine tē igitur sim!
(adverbial accusative; deliberative subjunctive; potential subjunctive; hortatory subjunctive)
36. Postquam labōrantēs mūnivēre moenia oppidi, ūnus pedem vulnerātus est.
(accusative of respect)
37. Cum incolae cōnsulem laudāssent, nihil tamen prō eōrum salūte cōstituere potuit.
(**cum** concessive clause)
38. Cucurrit quō celerius Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit quō Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit Caesaris videndī causā.
(relative clause of purpose; purpose clause introduced by an adverb; genitive plus gerundive followed by **causā** to express purpose)
39. Hoc amō, quod possum quā mihi placet ire viā.
(**quod**, 'the fact that')

40. Quīn loquar haec, numquam mē potest dēterrēre.
(negative clause of prevention introduced by **quīn**)
41. Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud.
(adverbial accusative; substantive clause of result after **tantum abest ut**; clause of result; positive clause of fearing introduced by **nē**)
42. Cum loquī incēpī, vereor nē dum dēfendam meōs, nōn parcam tuīs.
(**cum** meaning 'whenever'; negative clause of fearing introduced by **nē... nōn**; subjunctive by attraction)
43. Dubitāvī hōs hominēs multā pecūniā emerem an nōn emerem.
(positive clause of doubting with alternative indirect question; ablative of price)
44. Maximō sum gaudiō affectus cum audivi cōnsulem tē factum esse. [**afficiō (ad + faciō)**, 'affect']
(**cum** temporal clause)
45. Nōnne verētur nē rogātūrī simus cūr iūdex sē dāmnāverit?
(direct question with **nōnne**; positive clause of fearing; indirect question; indirect reflexive)
46. Meā rēfert ut idem duo hominēs veniant.
(impersonal verb)
47. Utinam ille omnīs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!
(optative subjunctive)
48. Aeneas replies to Dido's reproaches for leaving her by expressing his concern for her and, afterwards, by stating that he is not leaving of his own accord but out of necessity. (Vergil, *Aeneid* iv.333–6)

Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō

ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgīna, negābō
prōmeritam,¹ nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae
dum memor² ipse mei, dum spīritus hōs regit artūs.

¹ supply **esse** ² supply **sum**

[**artus**, -ūs, M., 'joint, limb'; **Elissa**, -ae, F., 'Dido'; **ēnumerō** (1), 'e-count'; **for**, **fārī**, **fātus sum**, 'speak, tell'; **prōmereor**, -ērī, -itus sum, 'deserve, earn'; **spīritus**, -ūs, M., 'breath, soul, life'; **valeō**, -ēre, **valuī**, **valitus**, 'be able']

(ablative of gerund; impersonal verb; genitives with verb and expression of remembering, **dum** + indicative)

49. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. [**occupō** (1), 'occupy']
(**dum** with present indicative to denote continued action in past time)

UNITS 12–18: Self-Review

I.

Translate the following passage; the words in boldface type relate to questions in part II.

NOTE: While serving as provincial governor in Cilicia (Asia Minor), Cicero wrote this letter to Marcus Caelius Rufus, an orator and friend who was in Rome serving as an **aedile**, a public official in charge of public works and recreation. Caelius had written repeatedly to Cicero, keeping him abreast of political news from Rome and also requesting that Cicero be on the lookout for exotic animals that he could import and use for sports events. (It has been slightly adapted.)

Putaresne umquam fieri posse ut mihi verba omnino **deessent**? Non careo solum istā tuā¹ oratoriā,² sed illo etiam ingenio exiguo quo nuper ad litteras **scribendas** utebar. Cum senatus³ **muneris**⁴ mei oblitus sit, vereor ut Romam multos annos rediturus sim et — quod peius est — ne te absente in hāc terrā alienā **peream**.

Magnum desiderium⁵ — mirabile **dictu** — urbis me tenet, desiderium meorum atque in primis⁶ tui. Rogitant legati comitesque, quoniam provinciae me tantopere taedet, quam ob rem diutius hic **maneam**. Tanta onera⁷ in re publicā sustinere potui et solitus sum ut totum negotium⁸ in hoc ultimo⁹ loco viribus meis indignum omnibus arbitrandum sit.

Desine quaerere de pantheris;¹⁰ iussu meo diligenter **agitatur** ab eis qui venari solent; sed permagna paucitas est, et eae, quae vere sunt, dicuntur queri¹¹ quod nihil cuiquam insidiarum in meā provinciā nisi sibi fiat. Itaque plurimae, ut quidam credunt, in Carian¹² ex hac regione¹³ horridā se recipere constituerunt. Quicquid¹⁴ erit, tibi erit, sed quot futurae sint plane¹⁵ nescio.

Mihi meherclē¹⁶ magnae curae est aedilitas¹⁷ tua. Meā maxime refert ut ludos¹⁸ quam gratissimos facias.¹⁸ Tu velim ad me de omni rei publicae casu quam celerrime perscribas; ea enim certissima putabo quae ex te **cognoro**.

¹ **istā tuā**: **tuā** added for emphasis ² **ōrātōria**, -ae, F., 'oratory, oratorical skill'
³ **senātus**, -ūs, M., 'the senate' ⁴ **mūnus**, **mūneris**, N., 'duty, office, service' ⁵ **dēsī-**
derium, **dēsīderiū**, N., 'ardent desire, longing' ⁶ **in primis**, 'especially' ⁷ **onus**, **oneris**,
N., 'load, burden' ⁸ **negōtium**, **negōtīū**, N., 'business' ⁹ **ultimus**, -a, -um, 'farthest,
most distant' ¹⁰ **panthēra**, -ae, F., 'panther' ¹¹ **queror**, **queri**, **questus sum**, 'lament,
complain' ¹² **Cārian** (acc. sing. of **Cāria**, -ae, F.), 'Caria', a province in Asia Minor
¹³ **regiō**, **regiōnis**, F., 'district, territory' ¹⁴ **quisquis**, **quidquid** or **quicquid** (indefinite
pron.), 'whoever, whatever' ¹⁵ **plānē** (adv.), 'plainly, clearly' ¹⁶ **mehercle** (an oath),
'by Hercules!' ¹⁷ **aedilitās**, **aedilitātis**, F., 'the office of an aedile, aedileship' ¹⁸ **lūdus**,
lūdi, M., 'game, exhibition'; **lūdōs facere**, 'to stage games'

II.

The questions below refer to the words and phrases in boldface type in the passage you have just translated.

1. Identify the tense and mood of **putares**. How is it used here?
2. Explain the reason for the mood of **deessent**.
3. a) What part of speech is **scribendas**?
b) What idea does the phrase **ad litteras scribendas** express?
4. What is the case and reason for the case of **muneris**?
5. What is the syntax of **peream**?
6. Identify the form and give the syntax of **dictu**.
7. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **maneam**.
8. Comment on the use of the word **agitatur**.
9. **Cognoro** is a syncopated form. What would the full form be?

III.

Translate the following sentences. The words in boldface type relate to questions on syntax and form in Part IV.

1. Num metus tibi obstitit quominus **meminisses** quid fieret?
2. Pollicemur fore ut foedus quam primum fiat.
3. Aliquis **videat** utrum consilium de civitatibus instituendis invenire possimus necne.
4. Odioso imperatum est ne **cui** armigerorum in urbe viventium parcatur.
5. His intellectis, erant tamen qui pugnare **desinerent** priusquam amicis **proderant**.
6. Ipsi non dubitemus quin domum vendendo multam pecuniam capere **possit**.
7. Non dubitare expectare dum dux **adveniret**. **Idem** vero **omnibus** praefectus erat quo manus militum **esset** tutior.
8. Cum nuntiassent quid vellent, legati tamen efficere non poterant ut omnes **sibi** parerent.
9. Quod quidam cupidi divitiarum sunt nos non **movet**; speramus autem eos divitiarum tam cupidos non fore ut honoris obliviscantur.
10. **Nihil** metuerunt ne iudices salutem **parvi** aestimaturi sint.

IV.

The questions below refer to the words in boldface type in the sentences in part III.

1. Explain the tense and mood of **meminisses** (sentence 1).
2. Identify the mood and use of **videat** (sentence 3).

3. What does the form **cui** stand for in sentence 4?
4. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **desinerent** (sentence 5)?
5. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **proderant** (sentence 5)?
6. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **possit** (sentence 6).
7. What is the syntax of **adveniret** (sentence 7)?
8. Give the case and the reason for the case of **omnibus** (sentence 7).
9. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **esset** (sentence 7).
10. Write a brief commentary on the use of the reflexive **sibi** in sentence 8.
11. What is the subject of **movet** (sentence 9)?
12. What is the syntax of **nihil** (sentence 10)?
13. Identify the case and give the reason for the case of **parvi** (sentence 10).

Answer Key — UNITS 12–18: Self-Review

I.

Would you have thought that it was ever possible that words entirely failed me? I lack not only that oratorical skill of yours, but also that small talent which I recently used (enjoyed) for writing a letter. Since the senate has forgotten my service, I fear that I will not return to Rome for many years and — what is worse — that, in your absence, I will perish in this foreign land.

A great longing for the city holds me — remarkable (wonderful, able to be wondered at) to say — a longing for my friends and family (my people) and especially for you. Legates and companions keep on asking why I remain here (any) longer, since the province bores me so greatly. I have been able to endure (support) and have been accustomed to so many responsibilities (burdens) in the state that the whole business in this most distant place must be judged by everyone (all) unworthy of my strength.

Stop asking about the panthers; by my order, there is diligent activity (there is a stirring up diligently) by those men who are accustomed to hunt; but there is a very great scarcity (fewness) [of panthers] and those which are actually here (which truly exist) are said to be complaining because (allegedly) no treachery happens to anyone in my province except (if not) to them. And so most, as certain men believe, have decided to withdraw into Caria from this horrible district. Whatever there is (will be), will be for you, but I clearly don't know how many there will be.

By Hercules, your aedileship is a great concern to me. It especially interests me that you stage as pleasing games as possible. I should wish that you write to me thoroughly about every occurrence with reference to the state as quickly as possible; indeed, I shall consider (think) those things which I know (I'll have learned) from you most reliable (most certain).

II.

1. Imperfect subjunctive as the main verb in the sentence (an independent usage of the subjunctive) expressing a potential idea in past time
2. Subjunctive in a substantive clause of result
3. a) Gerundive (adjective)
b) *ad* is used with a noun and a gerundive to express purpose
4. Genitive case with an expression of forgetting
5. Present subjunctive in primary sequence in a clause expressing positive fearing
6. Ablative form of the supine of *dīcere* functioning as an ablative of respect
7. Subjunctive in an indirect question in primary sequence
8. Impersonal passive usage stressing verbal action
9. *cognōverō*

III.

1. Fear did not keep (hinder, stand in your way) you (did it) from remembering what was happening (did it)?
 2. We promise that a treaty will be made as soon as possible (that it will be that a treaty be made. . .).
 3. Let someone see whether we can find (discover) a plan about establishing states or not.
 4. The hateful man has been ordered (It has been ordered to the hateful man) that no one of the arm bearers living (who live) in the city be spared (that it not be spared to anyone of the arm bearers. . .).
 5. With these things understood (although these things had been understood), there were nevertheless those who (men of the sort who) stopped fighting before they profited (did good to) (their) friends.
 6. We ourselves would (could, might) not doubt (but) that by selling (his) home he is able to take (get) much money.
 7. They did not hesitate to wait $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{until the leader (guide) should (could) arrive.} \\ \text{for the leader (guide) to arrive.} \\ \text{provided that the leader (guide) arrive.} \end{array} \right\}$
- The same one (man), truly (indeed), had been put in command of all (the men) by which (in order that) the band of soldiers might be safer (rather safe).
8. Although they had reported (announced) what they were wanting (wanted), the legates nevertheless were not able to (could not) bring it about (effect) that all (men) obey(ed) them.
 9. (The fact) that certain men are desirous of wealth (riches) does not move us; we hope, moreover (however), that they (these/those men) will not be so desirous of wealth (riches) that they are forgetful of (forget) honor (distinction).

10. They have feared not at all that the judges (jurymen) will (are going to) estimate (reckon) health (safety) of small value (worth).

IV.

1. Pluperfect subjunctive of a defective verb; thus the pluperfect = imperfect. It is in a relative clause of prevention in secondary sequence.
2. Subjunctive; independent use, either jussive, potential, or optative
3. *alicui*
4. Subjunctive; relative clause of characteristic (secondary sequence)
5. Indicative; to state a fact (temporal clause referring strictly to time)
6. Subjunctive in a negative clause of doubting (primary sequence)
7. Imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence in a **dum** clause expressing anticipation (The king hasn't arrived yet; there is no certainty that he will ever arrive.) Also possible as a proviso clause
8. Dative with a compound verb
9. Subjunctive; relative clause of purpose (secondary sequence)
10. **Sibi** is dative case because the intransitive verb **pāreō** governs the dative. It is an indirect reflexive since it does not refer to the subject of the clause in which it occurs (**omnēs**), but rather to the subject of the main verb of the sentence (**lēgātī**).
11. The whole clause **quod . . . sunt**
12. Adverbial accusative
13. Genitive of indefinite value

APPENDIX

This appendix will be useful as a reference for complete paradigms, explanations, and examples of syntactical structures and as a comprehensive review of the forms and syntax of Latin. In many cases, a greater number of illustrative sentences is provided in the appendix than in the actual text.

In order to enhance the value of the book as a tool for the reading of a wide variety of Latin authors, the appendix also contains some syntactical explanations which have not been included in the main body of the text.

Refer to the alphabetical index for cross-referencing between the text and the appendix.

NOUNS

Declension Endings

SINGULAR								
	I	II		III		IV		V
	F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F. †
Nom.	-a	-us (-er, -r)	-um	--	--	-us	-ū	-ēs
Gen.	-ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-ūs	-ūs	-eī
Dat.	-ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-uī	-ū	-eī
Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-em	--	-um	-ū	-em
Abl.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e (-ī)	-ū	-ū	-ē

PLURAL								
	I	II		III		IV		V
	F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F. †
Nom.	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Gen.	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um(-ium)	-um(-ium)	-uum	-uum	-ērum
Dat.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
Acc.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs(-īs)	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Abl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

* Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except for those that denote males, such as *nauta*, 'sailor'.

† Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except for *diēs*, which is generally masculine.

Note that the *vocative* case is the same as the nominative except in nouns of the second declension whose nominative singular ends in **-us**; their vocative ends in **-e**. If such a noun has a stem ending in **-i** (before the **-us** ending), the vocative form ends in a single **-ī**: **Marcus**, vocative **Marce**; **Rōmānus**, vocative **Rōmāne**; **fīlius**, vocative **fīlī**; **gladius**, vocative **gladī**.

The *locative* case endings for the first two declensions are the same as the genitive singular if the word is singular, or the ablative plural if the word is plural: **Rōma**, locative **Rōmae**; **Athēnae**, locative **Athēnīs**. For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in **-e** or **-ī** in the singular: **Carthāgō**, locative **Carthāgine**; **rūs**, locative **rūrī**. In the plural the ending **-ibus** is used.

First Declension

SINGULAR

Nom.	fēmina	(the/a) woman (subject)
Gen.	fēminae	of the (a) woman, (the/a) woman's
Dat.	fēminae	to/for (the/a) woman
Acc.	fēminam	(the/a) woman (object)
Abl.	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the/a) woman

PLURAL

Nom.	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Gen.	fēminārum	of (the) women, women's
Dat.	fēminīs	to/for (the) women
Acc.	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Abl.	fēminīs	from/with/in/by (the) women

Masculine nouns in the first declension are declined like **fēmina**.

Second Declension

SINGULAR

	M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātus	puer	liber	saxum
Gen.	nātī	puerī	librī	saxī
Dat.	nātō	puerō	librō	saxō
Acc.	nātum	puerum	librum	saxum
Abl.	nātō	puerō	librō	saxō

PLURAL

	M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātī	puerī	librī	saxa
Gen.	nātōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	saxōrum
Dat.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs	saxīs
Acc.	nātōs	puerōs	librōs	saxa
Abl.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs	saxīs

Although none are included in this book, feminine nouns ending in **-us** in the second declension are declined like **nātus** (except for **domus** which, although primarily fourth declension, has alternate second declension endings in cases other than the nominative, dative, and ablative plural).

Third Declension

SINGULAR					
	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmor	homō	mīles	servitūs	sīdus
Gen.	rūmōris	hominis	mīlitis	servitūtis	sīderis
Dat.	rūmōrī	hominī	mīlitī	servitūtī	sīderī
Acc.	rūmōrem	hominem	mīlitem	servitūtem	sīdus
Abl.	rūmōre	homine	mīlite	servitūte	sīdere
PLURAL					
	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	mīlitēs	servitūtēs	sīdera
Gen.	rūmōrum	hominum	mīlitum	servitūtum	sīderum
Dat.	rūmōribus	hominibus	mīlitibus	servitūtibus	sīderibus
Acc.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	mīlitēs	servitūtēs	sīdera
Abl.	rūmōribus	hominibus	mīlitibus	servitūtibus	sīderibus

Nouns of this declension are i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables.
2. the stem ends in a double consonant or **-x** (exceptions: **māter**, **frāter**, **pater**, even though the first rule also applies).
3. they are neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

Third Declension: i-Stems

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignis	nox	mare
Gen.	ignis	noctis	maris
Dat.	ignī	noctī	marī
Acc.	ignem	noctem	mare
Abl.	igne (or ignī)	nocte	marī
PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignēs	noctēs	maria
Gen.	ignium	noctium	[marium]
Dat.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus
Acc.	ignēs,	noctēs,	maria
	ignīs	noctīs	
Abl.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus

SINGULAR			
	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animal	[moene	exemplar
Gen.	animālis	moenis	exemplāris
Dat.	animālī	moenī	exemplāri
Acc.	animal	moene	exemplar
Abl.	animālī	moenī]	exemplāri
PLURAL			
	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Gen.	animālium	moenium	exemplārium
Dat.	animālībus	moenibus	exemplāribus
Acc.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Abl.	animālībus	moenibus	exemplāribus

Third Declension: Irregular Noun *vis*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	F.	F.
Nom.	<i>vis</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
Gen.	--	<i>vīrium</i>
Dat.	--	<i>vīribus</i>
Acc.	<i>vim</i>	<i>vīrēs, vīris</i>
Abl.	<i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>

Fourth Declension

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M.	N.	M.	N.
Nom.	<i>frūctus</i>	<i>genū*</i>	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
Gen.	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genūs</i>	<i>frūctuum</i>	<i>genuum</i>
Dat.	<i>frūctui</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctibus</i>	<i>genibus</i>
Acc.	<i>frūctum</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
Abl.	<i>frūctū</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctibus</i>	<i>genibus</i>

* *genū*, 'knee' (not included in this book).

Although none are included in this book (with the exception of **domus**), fem nouns in the fourth declension are declined like **frūctus**.

Fifth Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	F.	F.
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	rei	rērum
Dat.	rei	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES**First-Second Declension**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextrī	dextrae	dextrī
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
Acc.	dextrum	dextram	dextrum
Abl.	dextrō	dextrā	dextrō
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dextrī	dextrae	dextra
Gen.	dextrōrum	dextrārum	dextrōrum
Dat.	dextrīs	dextrīs	dextrīs
Acc.	dextrōs	dextrās	dextra
Abl.	dextrīs	dextrīs	dextrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE SINGULAR IN **-ius**

SINGULAR						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	alius	alia	aliud
Gen.	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	alterius*	alterius*	alterius*
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	aliī	aliī	aliū
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	aliūm	aliām	aliud
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	aliō	aliā	aliō

* The genitive of **alter** is generally used for the genitive of **alius** in order to avoid confusion between **alius** (nominative) and **aliū** (genitive).

PLURAL						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtī	tōtae	tōta	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	tōtōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	tōtōs	tōtās	tōta	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	tōtis	tōtis	tōtis	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

The other adjectives in this category are: **alter**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **uter**, **neuter**, **sōlus**, **ūnus**.

Third Declension

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (ācrīs)	ācrēs (ācrīs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO
TERMINATIONS

	SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnis	omne
Gen.	omnis	omnis
Dat.	omnī	omnī
Acc.	omnem	omne
Abl.	omnī	omnī

ADJECTIVES OF
ONE TERMINATION

	SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.
Nom.		ingēns
Gen.		ingentis
Dat.		ingentī
Acc.	ingentem	ingēns
Abl.		ingentī

	PLURAL		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnēs	omnia	ingentēs	ingentia
Gen.	omnium	omnium	ingentium	
Dat.	omnibus	omnibus	ingentibus	
Acc.	omnēs (-is)	omnia	ingentēs (-īs)	ingentia
Abl.	omnibus	omnibus	ingentibus	

Present Participles

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	optāns		optantēs	optantia
Gen.	optantis		optantium	
Dat.	optanti		optantibus	
Acc.	optantem	optāns	optantēs (-īs)	optantia
Abl.	optantī (-e)		optantibus	

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs (-is)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre (-i)	fortiōre (-i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

Other Adjectives**THE NUMERICAL ADJECTIVE duo**

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs (-o)	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

**THE DEMONSTRATIVE
ADJECTIVE hic****THE DEMONSTRATIVE
ADJECTIVE ille**

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	his	his	his	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	his	his	his	illis	illis	illis

THE INTENSIVE
ADJECTIVE **ipse**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

THE DEMONSTRATIVE
ADJECTIVE **iste**

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	iste	ista	istud
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	istiūs	istiūs	istiūs
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	isti	isti	isti
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	istum	istam	istud
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	istō	istā	istō

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa	isti	istae	ista
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	istīs	istīs	istīs

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **is**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, ii	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

THE ADJECTIVE **idem**

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	eīdem (idem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

THE INTERROGATIVE
ADJECTIVE **quī**

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

THE INDEFINITE
ADJECTIVE **aliquī**

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
	SINGULAR	
Nom. ego, I	tū, you	The adjective is , ea ,
Gen. meī, of me	tui, of you	id is used for the

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
	SINGULAR	
Dat. mihi, to/for me	tibi, to/for you	personal pronoun of the third person.
Acc. mē, me	tē, you	
Abl. mē, from/with/in/by me	tē, from/with/in/by you	
	PLURAL	
Nom. nōs, we	vōs, you	
Gen. nostrum, nostrī*, of us	vestrum, vestri*, of you	
Dat. nōbis, to/for us	vōbis, to/for you	
Acc. nōs, us	vōs, you	
Abl. nōbis, from/with/in/by us	vōbis, from/with/in/by you	

* **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives, **nostrī** and **vestri** as objective genitives.

Reflexive Pronoun

Nom. —

Gen. suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

Dat. sibi, to/for himself, herself, itself, themselves

Acc. sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves

Abl. sē (sēsē), from/with/in/by himself, herself, itself, themselves

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN **quis**

SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cui	cui	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quem	quid	quendam	quandam	quiddam
Abl.	quō	quō	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN **quīdam**

SINGULAR

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

VERBS

Personal Endings

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1st -ō or -m	1st -or or -r	1st -ī
2nd -s	2nd -ris and -re	2nd -istī
3rd -t	3rd -tur	3rd -it
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL
1st -mus	1st -mur	1st -imus
2nd -tis	2nd -minī	2nd -istis
3rd -nt	3rd -ntur	3rd -ērunt (-ēre)

First Conjugation: optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus, 'desire, wish (for), choose'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optō, I desire, I am desiring, I do desire, I always desire	optor, I am (being) desired
optās, you desire, etc.	optāris, optāre, you are (being) desired
optat, he/she/it desires, etc.	optātur, he/she/it is (being) desired
optāmus, we desire, etc.	optāmur, we are (being) desired
optātis, you desire, etc.	optāminī, you are (being) desired
optant, they desire, etc.	optantur, they are (being) desired
IMPERFECT	
optābam, I was desiring, I used to desire, I kept on desiring, I desired (habitually)	optābar, I was (being) desired
optābās, you were desiring, etc.	optābāris, optābāre, you were (being) desired
optābat, he/she/it was desiring, etc.	optābātur, he/she/it was (being) desired
optābāmus, we were desiring, etc.	optābāmur, we were (being) desired
optābātis, you were desiring, etc.	optābāminī, you were (being) desired
optābant, they were desiring, etc.	optābantur, they were (being) desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE

optābō, I shall desire, I shall be desiring

optābor, I shall be desired

optābis, you will desire, etc.

optāberis, optābere, you will be desired

optābit, he/she/it will desire, etc.

optābitur, he/she/it will be desired

optābimus, we shall desire, etc.

optābimur, we shall be desired

optābitis, you will desire, etc.

optābiminī, you will be desired

optābunt, they will desire, etc.

optābuntur, they will be desired

PERFECT

optāvī, I have desired, I desired, I did desire

optātus (-a, -um) sum, I have been desired, I was desired

optāvistī, you have desired, etc.

optātus (-a, -um) es, you have been desired, etc.

optāvit, he/she/it has desired, etc.

optātus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it has been desired, etc.

optāvimus, we have desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) sumus, we have been desired, etc.

optāvistis, you have desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) estis, you have been desired, etc.

optāvērunt, optāvēre, they have desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) sunt, they have been desired, etc.

PLUPERFECT

optāveram, I had desired

optātus (-a, -um) eram, I had been desired

optāverās, you had desired

optātus (-a, -um) erās, you had been desired

optāverat, he/she/it had desired

optātus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it had been desired

optāverāmus, we had desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had been desired

optāverātis, you had desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erātis, you had been desired

optāverant, they had desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erant, they had been desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

optāverō, I shall have desired	optātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have been desired
optāveris, you will have desired	optātus (-a, -um) eris, you will have been desired
optāverit, he/she/it will have desired	optātus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it will have been desired
optāverimus, we shall have desired	optātī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall have been desired
optāveritis, you will have desired	optātī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have been desired
optāverint, they will have desired	optātī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will have been desired

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optem	opter
optēs	optēris, optēre
optet	optētur
optēmus	optēmur
optētis	optēmini
optent	optentur

IMPERFECT

optārem	optārer
optārēs	optārēris, optārēre
optāret	optārētur
optārēmus	optārēmur
optārētis	optārēmini
optārent	optārentur

PERFECT

optāverim	optātus (-a, -um) sim
optāveris	optātus (-a, -um) sis
optāverit	optātus (-a, -um) sit
optāverimus	optātī (-ae, -a) simus
optāveritis	optātī (-ae, -a) sitis
optāverint	optātī (-ae, -a) sint

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PLUPERFECT	
optāvissem	optātus (-a, -um) essem
optāvissēs	optātus (-a, -um) essēs
optāvisset	optātus (-a, -um) esset
optāvissēmus	optāti (-ae, -a) essēmus
optāvissētis	optāti (-ae, -a) essētis
optāvissent	optāti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optāns, desiring	--
PERFECT	
--	optātus, -a, -um, (having been) desired
FUTURE	
optātūrus, -a, -um, about to desire, going to desire, ready to desire	optandus, -a, -um, to be desired, having to be desired

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optāre, to desire	optāri, to be desired
PERFECT	
optāvisse, to have desired	optātus, -a, -um esse, to have been desired
FUTURE	
optātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to desire, to be going to desire, to be ready to desire	optātum iri, to be about to be desired, to be going to be desired, to be ready to be desired

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
optā, desire!	optāte, desire!	optāre, be desired!	optāminī, be desired!

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
FUTURE*			
2nd optātō, you shall desire!	optātōte, you shall desire!	optātor, you shall be desired!	--
3rd optatō, he/she/it shall desire!	optāntō, they shall desire!	optātor, he/she/it shall be desired!	optantor, they shall be desired!

* The formation and use of the future imperative are discussed on pages 362 and 381–382.

Periphrastic Conjugations

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to desire, I am going to desire, I am ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) sum, I am having-to-be desired, I should be desired, I ought to be desired, I must be desired, I have to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) es, you are about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) es, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) sumus, we are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) sumus, we are having-to-be desired. etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) estis, you are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) estis, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) sunt, they are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) sunt, they are having-to-be desired, etc.

IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) eram, I was about to desire, I was going to desire, I was ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erās, you were about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it was about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we were about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had to be desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

IMPERFECT

optātūrī (-ae, -a) erātis, you were
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) erātis, you had to
be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) erant, they were
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) erant, they had to
be desired

FUTURE

optātūrus (-a, -um) erō, I shall be
about to desire, I shall be going to
desire, I shall be ready to desire

optandus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have to
be desired

optātūrus (-a, -um) eris, you will be
about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) eris, you will
have to be desired

optātūrus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it
will be about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it
will have to be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall be
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall
have to be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will be
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have
to be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will be
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will
have to be desired

PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fui, I have been
(I was) about to desire, going to
desire, ready to desire

optandus (-a, -um) fui, I had to be
desired

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisti, you have
been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuisti, you had to
be desired

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it has
been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it
had to be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuimus, we have
been about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) fuimus, we had to
be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuistis, you have
been about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) fuistis, you had to
be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they
have been about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they
had to be desired

PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram, I had
been about to desire, I had been
going to desire, I had been ready
to desire

optandus (-a, -um) fueram, I had
had to be desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it
had been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had
been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had
had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it
had had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had
had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had
had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had
had to be desired

FUTURE PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall
have been about to desire, I shall
have been going to desire, I shall
have been ready to desire

optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris, you will
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it
will have been about to desire,
etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will
have been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fueris, you will
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it
will have had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall
have had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will
have had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will
have had to be desired

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) sim

optātūrus (-a, -um) sis

optātūrus (-a, -um) sit

optātūrī (-ae, -a) simus

optātūrī (-ae, -a) sitis

optātūrī (-ae, -a) sint

optandus (-a, -um) sim

optandus (-a, -um) sis

optandus (-a, -um) sit

optandī (-ae, -a) simus

optandī (-ae, -a) sitis

optandī (-ae, -a) sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) essem
 optātūrus (-a, -um) essēs
 optātūrus (-a, -um) esset
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essēmus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essētis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essent

optandus (-a, -um) essem
 optandus (-a, -um) essēs
 optandus (-a, -um) esset
 optandī (-ae, -a) essēmus
 optandī (-ae, -a) essētis
 optandī (-ae, -a) essent

PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerimus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fueritis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerint

optandus (-a, -um) fuerim
 optandus (-a, -um) fueris
 optandus (-a, -um) fuerit
 optandī (-ae, -a) fuerimus
 optandī (-ae, -a) fueritis
 optandī (-ae, -a) fuerint

PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuissēs
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissēmus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissētis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissent

optandus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optandus (-a, -um) fuissēs
 optandus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optandī (-ae, -a) fuissēmus
 optandī (-ae, -a) fuissētis
 optandī (-ae, -a) fuissent

(Periphrastics have no participles.)

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about
 to desire, to be going to desire,
 to be ready to desire

optandus (-a, -um) esse, to have to
 be desired

PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have
 been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have
 had to be desired

FUTURE

--

--

(Periphrastics have no imperatives.)

Second Conjugation: impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, 'fill, fill up'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

impleō	impleor
implēs	implēris, implēre
implet	implētur
implēmus	implēmur
implētis	implēmini
implent	implentur

IMPERFECT

implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris, implēbāre
implēbat	implēbātur
implēbāmus	implēbāmur
implēbātis	implēbāmini
implēbant	implēbantur

FUTURE

implēbō	implēbor
implēbis	implēberis, implēbere
implēbit	implēbitur
implēbimus	implēbimur
implēbitis	implēbimini
implēbunt	implēbuntur

PERFECT

implēvī	implētus (-a, -um) sum
implēvistī	implētus (-a, -um) es
implēvit	implētus (-a, -um) est
implēvimus	implētī (-ae, -a) sumus
implēvistis	implētī (-ae, -a) estis
implēvērunt, implēvēre	implētī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

implēveram	implētus (-a, -um) eram
implēverās	implētus (-a, -um) erās
implēverat	implētus (-a, -um) erat
implēverāmus	implētī (-ae, -a) erāmus
implēverātis	implētī (-ae, -a) erātis
implēverant	implētī (-ae, -a) erant

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

implēverō	implētus (-a, -um) erō
implēveris	implētus (-a, -um) eris
implēverit	implētus (-a, -um) erit
implēverimus	implēti (-ae, -a) erimus
implēveritis	implēti (-ae, -a) eritis
implēverint	implēti (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

impleam	implear
impleās	impleāris, impleāre
impleat	impleātur
impleāmus	impleāmur
impleātis	impleāmini
impleant	impleantur

IMPERFECT

implērem	implērer
implērēs	implērēris, implērēre
implēret	implērētur
implērēmus	implērēmur
implērētis	implērēmini
implērent	implērentur

PERFECT

implēverim	implētus (-a, -um) sim
implēveris	implētus (-a, -um) sis
implēverit	implētus (-a, -um) sit
implēverimus	implēti (-ae, -a) simus
implēveritis	implēti (-ae, -a) sitis
implēverint	implēti (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

implēvissem	implētus (-a, -um) essem
implēvissēs	implētus (-a, -um) essēs
implēvisset	implētus (-a, -um) esset
implēvissēmus	implēti (-ae, -a) essēmus
implēvissētis	implēti (-ae, -a) essētis
implēvissent	implēti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
implēns		--	
PERFECT			
--		implētus, -a, -um	
FUTURE			
implētūrus, -a, -um		implendus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
implēre		implēri	
PERFECT			
implēvisse		implētus, -a, -um esse	
FUTURE			
implētūrus, -a, -um esse		implētum iri	

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
implē	implēte	implēre	implēmini
FUTURE			
2nd	implētō	implētōte	implētor --
3rd	implētō	implentō	implentor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

Third Conjugation: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead; consider'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
dūcō		dūcor	
dūcis		dūceris, dūcere	
dūcit		dūcitur	

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
dūcimus	dūcimur
dūcitis	dūcimini
dūcunt	dūcuntur
	IMPERFECT
dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris, dūcēbāre
dūcēbat	dūcēbātur
dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbātis	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbant	dūcēbantur
	FUTURE
dūcam	dūcar
dūcēs	dūcēris, dūcēre
dūcet	dūcētur
dūcēmus	dūcēmur
dūcētis	dūcēmini
dūcent	dūcentur
	PERFECT
dūxī	ductus (-a, -um) sum
dūxistī	ductus (-a, -um) es
dūxit	ductus (-a, -um) est
dūximus	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
dūxistis	ductī (-ae, -a) estis
dūxērunt, dūxēre	ductī (-ae, -a) sunt
	PLUPERFECT
dūxeram	ductus (-a, -um) eram
dūxerās	ductus (-a, -um) erās
dūxerat	ductus (-a, -um) erat
dūxerāmus	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
dūxerātis	ductī (-ae, -a) erātis
dūxerant	ductī (-ae, -a) erant
	FUTURE PERFECT
dūxerō	ductus (-a, -um) erō
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) eris
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) erit

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FUTURE PERFECT	
dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus
dūxeritis	ductī (-ae, -a) eritis
dūxerint	ductī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
dūcam	dūcar
dūcās	dūcāris, dūcāre
dūcat	dūcātur
dūcāmus	dūcāmur
dūcātis	dūcāmini
dūcant	dūcantur
IMPERFECT	
dūcerem	dūcerer
dūcerēs	dūcerēris, dūcerēre
dūceret	dūcerētur
dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
dūcerētis	dūcerēmini
dūcerent	dūcerentur
PERFECT	
dūxerim	ductus (-a, -um) sim
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) sis
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) sit
dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) simus
dūxeritis	ductī (-ae, -a) sitis
dūxerint	ductī (-ae, -a) sint
PLUPERFECT	
dūxissem	ductus (-a, -um) essem
dūxissēs	ductus (-a, -um) essēs
dūxisset	ductus (-a, -um) esset
dūxissēmus	ductī (-ae, -a) essēmus
dūxissētis	ductī (-ae, -a) essētis
dūxissent	ductī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
dūcēns	--
	PERFECT
--	ductus, -a, -um
	FUTURE
ductūrus, -a, -um	dūcendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
dūcere	dūci
	PERFECT
dūxisse	ductus, -a, -um esse
	FUTURE
ductūrus, -a, -um esse	ductum iri

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
			PRESENT
dūc*	dūcite	dūcere	dūcimini
			FUTURE
2nd	dūcitō	dūcitōte	dūcitor
3rd	dūcitō	dūcuntō	dūcuntor

* dūcō, dīcō, faciō, and ferō drop the final -e.

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See *optō* for examples.

Third Conjugation i-Stems: incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, 'begin'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
incipiō	incipior
incipis	inciperis, incipere
incipit	incipitur

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
incipimus	incipimur
incipitis	incipimini
incipiunt	incipiuntur
IMPERFECT	
incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris, incipiēbāre
incipiēbat	incipiēbātur
incipiēbāmus	incipiēbāmur
incipiēbātis	incipiēbāmini
incipiēbant	incipiēbantur
FUTURE	
incipiam	incipiar
incipiēs	incipiēris, incipiēre
incipiet	incipiētur
incipiēmus	incipiēmur
incipiētis	incipiēmini
incipient	incipientur
PERFECT	
incēpī	inceptus (-a, -um) sum
incēpisti	inceptus (-a, -um) es
incēpit	inceptus (-a, -um) est
incēpimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) sumus
incēpistis	inceptī (-ae, -a) estis
incēpērunt, incēpēre	inceptī (-ae, -a) sunt
PLUPERFECT	
incēperam	inceptus (-a, -um) eram
incēperās	inceptus (-a, -um) erās
incēperat	inceptus (-a, -um) erat
incēperāmus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erāmus
incēperātis	inceptī (-ae, -a) erātis
incēperant	inceptī (-ae, -a) erant
FUTURE PERFECT	
incēperō	inceptus (-a, -um) erō
incēperis	inceptus (-a, -um) eris
incēperit	inceptus (-a, -um) erit
incēperimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erimus
incēperitis	inceptī (-ae, -a) eritis
incēperint	inceptī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
incipiam	incipiar
incipiās	incipiāris, incipiāre
incipiat	incipiātur
incipiāmus	incipiāmur
incipiātis	incipiāmini
incipiant	incipiantur
IMPERFECT	
inciperem	inciperer
inciperēs	inciperēris, inciperēre
inciperet	inciperētur
inciperēmus	inciperēmur
inciperētis	inciperēmini
inciperent	inciperentur
PERFECT	
incēperim	inceptus (-a, -um) sim
incēperis	inceptus (-a, -um) sis
incēperit	inceptus (-a, -um) sit
incēperimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) simus
incēperitis	inceptī (-ae, -a) sitis
incēperint	inceptī (-ae, -a) sint
PLUPERFECT	
incēpissēm	inceptus (-a, -um) essem
incēpissēs	inceptus (-a, -um) essēs
incēpisset	inceptus (-a, -um) esset
incēpissēmus	inceptī (-ae, -a) essēmus
incēpissētis	inceptī (-ae, -a) essētis
incēpissent	inceptī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
incipiēns	---
PERFECT	
---	inceptus, -a, -um
FUTURE	
inceptūrus, -a, -um	incipiendus, -a -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
incipere		incipī	
PERFECT			
incēpisse		inceptus, -a, -um esse	
FUTURE			
inceptūrus, -a, -um esse		inceptum iri	

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
incipere	incipite	incipere	incipimini
FUTURE			
2nd	incipitō	incipitōte	incipitor --
3rd	incipitō	incipiuntō	incipitor incipiuntor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb “to be” make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

Fourth Conjugation: sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, ‘feel, perceive’

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
sentiō		sentior	
sentis		sentiris, sentīre	
sentit		sentitur	
sentimus		sentimur	
sentitis		sentimini	
sentiant		sentiantur	
IMPERFECT			
sentiēbam		sentiēbar	
sentiēbās		sentiēbāris, sentiēbāre	
sentiēbat		sentiēbātur	

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	IMPERFECT
sentiēbāmus	sentiēbāmur
sentiēbātis	sentiēbāmini
sentiēbant	sentiēbantur
	FUTURE
sentiam	sentiar
sentiēs	sentiēris, sentiēre
sentiet	sentiētur
sentiēmus	sentiēmur
sentiētis	sentiēmini
sentient	sentientur
	PERFECT
sēnsi	sēnsus (-a, -um) sum
sēnsisti	sēnsus (-a, -um) es
sēnsit	sēnsus (-a, -um) est
sēnsimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sumus
sēnsistis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) estis
sēnsērunt, sēnsēre	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sunt
	PLUPERFECT
sēnseram	sēnsus (-a, -um) eram
sēnsērās	sēnsus (-a, -um) erās
sēnserat	sēnsus (-a, -um) erat
sēnsērāmus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erāmus
sēnsērātis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erātis
sēnserant	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erant
	FUTURE PERFECT
sēnsērō	sēnsus (-a, -um) erō
sēnsēris	sēnsus (-a, -um) eris
sēnsērit	sēnsus (-a, -um) erit
sēnsērimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erimus
sēnsēritis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) eritis
sēnsērint	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erunt
	SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT
ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiam	sentiar
sentiās	sentiāris, sentiāre
sentiat	sentiātur

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
sentiāmus	sentiāmur
sentiātis	sentiāmini
sentiant	sentiantur
	IMPERFECT
sentīrem	sentīrer
sentīrēs	sentīrēris, sentīrēre
sentīret	sentīrētur
sentīrēmus	sentīrēmur
sentīrētis	sentīrēmini
sentīrent	sentīrentur
	PERFECT
sēnsirim	sēnsus (-a, -um) sim
sēnsiris	sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
sēnsirit	sēnsus (-a, -um) sit
sēnsirimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) simus
sēnsiritis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sitis
sēnsirint	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sint
	PLUPERFECT
sēnsissem	sēnsus (-a, -um) essem
sēnsissēs	sēnsus (-a, -um) essēs
sēnsisset	sēnsus (-a, -um) esset
sēnsissēmus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essēmus
sēnsissētis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essētis
sēnsissent	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

	PRESENT
ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiēns	---
	PERFECT
---	sēnsus, -a, -um
	FUTURE
sēnsūrus, -a, -um	sentiendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
sentire		sentiri	
PERFECT			
sēnsisse		sēnsus, -a, -um esse	
FUTURE			
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse		sēnsūm iri	

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
sentī	sentite	sentire	sentimini
FUTURE			
2nd	sentitō	sentitōte	sentitor --
3rd	sentitō	sentiantō	sentiantor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb “to be” make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

Deponent Verbs

precor, precārī, precātus sum, ‘beg, request’

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, ‘fear’

ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum, ‘enter, proceed’

experior, experirī, expertus sum, ‘try, experience’

First Conjugation

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT
precor, I beg, I am begging, I do beg, I (always) beg	precābar, I was begging, etc.
precāris, precāre, you beg, etc.	precābāris, precābāre, you were begging, etc.
precātur, he/she/it begs, etc.	precābātur, he/she/it was begging, etc.

PRESENT

precāmur, we beg, etc.
 precāminī, you beg, etc.
 precantur, they beg, etc.

FUTURE

precābor, I shall beg, etc.

 precāberis, precābere, you will
 beg, etc.
 precābitur, he/she/it will beg, etc.

 precābimur, we shall beg, etc.
 precābiminī, you will beg, etc.
 precābuntur, they will beg, etc.

PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) eram, I had begged

 precātus (-a, -um) erās
 precātus (-a, -um) erat
 precāti (-ae, -a) erāmus
 precāti (-ae, -a) erātis
 precāti (-ae, -a) erant

IMPERFECT

precābāmur, we were begging, etc.
 precābāminī, you were begging, etc.
 precābantur, they were begging,
 etc.

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sum, I have
 begged, etc.
 precātus (-a, -um) es

 precātus (-a, -um) est

 precāti (-ae, -a) sumus
 precāti (-ae, -a) estis
 precāti (-ae, -a) sunt

FUTURE PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have
 begged
 precātus (-a, -um) eris
 precātus (-a, -um) erit
 precāti (-ae, -a) erimus
 precāti (-ae, -a) eritis
 precāti (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE**PRESENT**

precer
 precēris, precēre
 precētur

 precēmur
 precēminī
 precentur

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sim
 precātus (-a, -um) sis
 precātus (-a, -um) sit

 precāti (-ae, -a) simus
 precāti (-ae, -a) sitis
 precāti (-ae, -a) sint

IMPERFECT

precārer
 precārēris, precārēre
 precārētur

 precārēmur
 precārēminī
 precārentur

PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) essem
 precātus (-a, -um) essēs
 precātus (-a, -um) esset

 precāti (-ae, -a) essemus
 precāti (-ae, -a) essētis
 precāti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

precāns, begging

PERFECT

precātus, -a, -um, having begged

FUTURE ACTIVE

precātūrus, -a, -um, about to beg, going to beg, ready to beg

FUTURE PASSIVE

precandus, -a, -um, to be begged, having to be begged

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

precārī, to beg

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) esse, to have begged

FUTURE

precātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about to beg, to be going to beg, to be ready to beg

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

precāre, beg!

precāmini, beg!

FUTURE

2nd precātor, you shall beg!

--

3rd precātor, he/she/it shall beg!

precantor, they shall beg!

Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

vereor

ingredior

experior

verēris, verēre

ingrederis, ingredere

experīris, experīre

verētur

ingreditur

experītur

verēmur

ingredimur

experīmur

verēmini

ingredimini

experīmini

verentur

ingrediuntur

experīuntur

IMPERFECT

verēbar	ingrediēbar	experiēbar
verēbāris, verēbāre	ingrediēbāris, ingrediēbāre	experiēbāris, experiēbāre
verēbātur	ingrediēbātur	experiēbātur
verēbāmur	ingrediēbāmur	experiēbāmur
verēbāminī	ingrediēbāminī	experiēbāminī
verēbantur	ingrediēbantur	experiēbantur

FUTURE

verēbor	ingrediar	experiar
verēberis, verēbere	ingrediēris, ingrediēre	experiēris, experiēre
verēbitur	ingrediētur	experiētur
verēbimur	ingrediēmur	experiēmur
verēbiminī	ingrediēminī	experiēminī
verēbuntur	ingredientur	experientur

PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sum	ingressus (-a, -um) sum	expertus (-a, -um) sum
veritus (-a, -um) es	ingressus (-a, -um) es	expertus (-a, -um) es
veritus (-a, -um) est	ingressus (-a, -um) est	expertus (-a, -um) est
veritī (-ae, -a) sumus	ingressī (-ae, -a) sumus	expertī (-ae, -a) sumus
veritī (-ae, -a) estis	ingressī (-ae, -a) estis	expertī (-ae, -a) estis
veritī (-ae, -a) sunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) sunt	expertī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) eram	ingressus (-a, -um) eram	expertus (-a, -um) eram
veritus (-a, -um) erās	ingressus (-a, -um) erās	expertus (-a, -um) erās
veritus (-a, -um) erat	ingressus (-a, -um) erat	expertus (-a, -um) erat
veritī (-ae, -a) erāmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erāmus	expertī (-ae, -a) erāmus
veritī (-ae, -a) erātis	ingressī (-ae, -a) erātis	expertī (-ae, -a) erātis
veritī (-ae, -a) erant	ingressī (-ae, -a) erant	expertī (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) erō	ingressus (-a, -um) erō	expertus (-a, -um) erō
veritus (-a, -um) eris	ingressus (-a, -um) eris	expertus (-a, -um) eris
veritus (-a, -um) erit	ingressus (-a, -um) erit	expertus (-a, -um) erit
veritī (-ae, -a) erimus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erimus	expertī (-ae, -a) erimus
veritī (-ae, -a) eritis	ingressī (-ae, -a) eritis	expertī (-ae, -a) eritis
veritī (-ae, -a) erunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) erunt	expertī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

verear	ingrediar	experiar
vereāris, vereāre	ingrediāris, ingrediāre	experiāris, experiāre
vereātur	ingrediātur	experiātur
vereāmur	ingrediāmur	experiāmur
vereāminī	ingrediāminī	experiāminī
vereantur	ingrediantur	experiantur

IMPERFECT

verērer	ingrederer	experirer
verērēris, verērēre	ingrederēris, ingrederēre	experirēris, experirēre
verērētur	ingrederētur	experirētur
verērēmur	ingrederēmur	experirēmur
verērēminī	ingrederēminī	experirēminī
verērentur	ingrederentur	experirentur

PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sim	ingressus (-a, -um) sim	expertus (-a, -um) sim
veritus (-a, -um) sīs	ingressus (-a, -um) sīs	expertus (-a, -um) sīs
veritus (-a, -um) sit	ingressus (-a, -um) sit	expertus (-a, -um) sit
veritī (-ae, -a) sīmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) sīmus	expertī (-ae, -a) sīmus
veritī (-ae, -a) sītis	ingressī (-ae, -a) sītis	expertī (-ae, -a) sītis
veritī (-ae, -a) sint	ingressī (-ae, -a) sint	expertī (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) essem	ingressus (-a, -um) essem	expertus (-a, -um) essem
veritus (-a, -um) essēs	ingressus (-a, -um) essēs	expertus (-a, -um) essēs
veritus (-a, -um) esset	ingressus (-a, -um) esset	expertus (-a, -um) esset
veritī (-ae, -a) essēmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) essēmus	expertī (-ae, -a) essēmus
veritī (-ae, -a) essētis	ingressī (-ae, -a) essētis	expertī (-ae, -a) essētis
veritī (-ae, -a) essent	ingressī (-ae, -a) essent	expertī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

verēns	ingrediēns	experiēns
--------	------------	-----------

PERFECT

veritus, -a, -um	ingressus, -a, -um	expertus, -a, -um
------------------	--------------------	-------------------

FUTURE ACTIVE

veritūrus, -a, -um	ingressūrus, -a, -um	expertūrus, -a, -um
--------------------	----------------------	---------------------

FUTURE PASSIVE

verendus, -a, -um	ingrediendus, -a, -um	experiendus, -a, -um
-------------------	-----------------------	----------------------

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

verēri ingredi experiri

PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) esse ingressus (-a, -um) esse expertus (-a, -um) esse

FUTURE

veritūrus (-a, -um) ingressūrus (-a, -um) expertūrus (-a, -um)
esse esse esse

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRESENT

verēre verēminī ingredi ingrediminī experire experiminī

FUTURE

2nd verētor -- ingreditor -- experitor --
3rd verētor verentor ingreditor ingrediuntor experitor experiuntor

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 'be'

possum, posse, potui, --, 'be able'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

sum, I am	possum, I am able, I can
es, you are	potes, you are able, etc.
est, he/she/it/there is	potest, he/she/it is able, etc.
sumus, we are	possumus, we are able, etc.
estis, you are	potestis, you are able, etc.
sunt, they/there are	possunt, they are able, etc.

IMPERFECT

eram, I was	poteram, I was able, I could
erās, you were	poterās, you were able, etc.
erat, he/she/it/there was	poterat, he/she/it was able, etc.
erāmus, we were	poterāmus, we were able, etc.
erātis, you were	poterātis, you were able, etc.
erant, they/there were	poterant, they were able, etc.

FUTURE

erō, I shall be	poterō, I shall be able
eris, you will be	poteris, you will be able
erit, he/she/it/there will be	poterit, he/she/it will be able

FUTURE

erimus, we shall be	poterimus, we shall be able
eritis, you will be	poteritis, you will be able
erunt, they/there will be	poterunt, they will be able

PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was	potui, I have been (was) able, I could
fuisti, you have been, etc.	potuisti, you have been (were) able, etc.
fuit, he/she/it/there has been, etc.	potuit, he/she/it has been (was) able, etc.
fuimus, we have been, etc.	potuimus, we have been (were) able, etc.
fuistis, you have been, etc.	potuistis, you have been (were) able, etc.
fuērunt, fuēre, they/there have been, etc.	potuērunt, potuēre, they have been (were) able, etc.

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been	potueram I had been able
fuerās, you had been	potuerās, you had been able
fuerat, he/she/it/there had been	potuerat, he/she/it had been able
fuerāmus, we had been	potuerāmus, we had been able
fuerātis, you had been	potuerātis, you had been able
fuerant, they/there had been	potuerant, they had been able

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been	potuerō, I shall have been able
fueris, you will have been	potueris, you will have been able
fuerit, he/she/it/there will have been	potuerit, he/she/it will have been able
fuerimus, we shall have been	potuerimus, we shall have been able
fueritis, you will have been	potueritis, you will have been able
fuerint, they/there will have been	potuerint, they will have been able

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possis	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

PERFECT

fuerim	fuerimus	potuerim	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissemus	potuissem	potuissemus
fuisēs	fuisētis	potuisēs	potuisētis
fuisset	fuisset	potuisset	potuisset

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

--	potēns, (being) able, powerful
----	--------------------------------

PERFECT

--	---
----	-----

FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be, going to be, ready to be	--
------------------------------------------------------------	----

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

esse, to be	posse, to be able
-------------	-------------------

PERFECT

fuisse, to have been	potuisse, to have been able
----------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um esse (fore), to be about to be, to be going to be, to be ready to be	--
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
es, be!	este, be!	--	--
FUTURE			
2nd estō, you shall be!	estōte, you shall be!	--	--
3rd estō, he/she/it shall be!	suntō, they shall be!	--	--

eō, ire, īi (īvī), itus, 'go'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
eō	ibam	ibō
is	ibās	ibis
it	ibat	ibit
imus	ibāmus	ibimus
itis	ibātis	ibitis
eunt	ibant	ibunt
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
īi (īvī)	ieram (īveram)	ierō (īverō)
istī (īvistī)	ierās (īverās)	ieris (īveris)
īit (īvit)	ierat (īverat)	ierit (īverit)
iimus (īvimus)	ierāmus (īverāmus)	ierimus (īverimus)
istis (īvistis)	ierātis (īverātis)	ieritis (īveritis)
iērunt, iēre (īvērunt, īvēre)	ierant (īverant)	ierint (īverint)

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
eam	īrem	ierim (īverim)	īssem (īvissem)
eās	īrēs	ieris (īveris)	issēs (īvissēs)
eat	īret	ierit (īverit)	isset (īvisset)
eāmus	īrēmus	ierimus (īverimus)	issēmus (īvissēmus)
eātis	īrētis	ieritis (īveritis)	issētis (īvissētis)
eant	īrent	ierint (īverint)	issent (īvissent)

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
iēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis	--
PERFECT	
--	itum
FUTURE	
itūrus, -a, -um	eundum

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
ire	--
PERFECT	
isse (īvisse)	--
FUTURE	
itūrus (-a, -um) esse	--

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT	
ī	ite
FUTURE	
2nd itō	itōte
3rd itō	euntō

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, 'bring, carry, bear, endure'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
ferō	feror
fers	ferris, ferre
fert	fertur
ferimus	ferimur
fertis	ferimini
ferunt	feruntur
IMPERFECT	
ferēbam	ferēbar
ferēbās	ferēbāris, ferēbāre
ferēbat	ferēbātur
ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur
ferēbātis	ferēbāmini
ferēbant	ferēbantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
	FUTURE	
feram		ferar
ferēs		ferēris, ferēre
feret		ferētur
ferēmus		ferēmur
ferētis		ferēmini
ferent		ferentur
	PERFECT	
tuli		lātus (-a, -um) sum
tulisti		lātus (-a, -um) es
tulit		lātus (-a, -um) est
tulimus		lāti (-ae, -a) sumus
tulistis		lāti (-ae, -a) estis
tulērunt, tulēre		lāti (-ae, -a) sunt
	PLUPERFECT	
tuleram		lātus (-a, -um) eram
tulerās		lātus (-a, -um) erās
tulerat		lātus (-a, -um) erat
tulerāmus		lāti (-ae, -a) erāmus
tulerātis		lāti (-ae, -a) erātis
tulerant		lāti (-ae, -a) erant
	FUTURE PERFECT	
tulerō		lātus (-a, -um) erō
tuleris		lātus (-a, -um) eris
tulerit		lātus (-a, -um) erit
tulerimus		lāti (-ae, -a) erimus
tuleritis		lāti (-ae, -a) eritis
tulerint		lāti (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
	PRESENT	
feram		ferar
ferās		ferāris, ferāre
ferat		ferātur
ferāmus		ferāmur
ferātis		ferāmini
ferant		ferantur

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
ferrem	ferrer
ferrēs	ferrēris, ferrēre
ferret	ferrētur
ferrēmus	ferrēmur
ferrētis	ferrēminī
ferrent	ferrentur
PERFECT	
tulerim	lātus (-a, -um) sim
tuleris	lātus (-a, -um) sis
tulerit	lātus (-a, -um) sit
tulerimus	lāti (-ae, -a) sīmus
tuleritis	lāti (-ae, -a) sitis
tulerint	lāti (-ae, -a) sint
PLUPERFECT	
tulisse	lātus (-a, -um) essem
tulissēs	lātus (-a, -um) essēs
tulisset	lātus (-a, -um) esset
tulissēmus	lāti (-ae, -a) essēmus
tulissētis	lāti (-ae, -a) essētis
tulissent	lāti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
ferēns	--
PERFECT	
--	lātus, -a, -um
FUTURE	
lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
ferre	ferri

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PERFECT		
tulisse	lātus (-a, -um) esse	
FUTURE		
lāturus (-a, -um) esse	lātum iri	

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
FUTURE			
2nd	fertō	fertōte	fertor
3rd	fertō	feruntō	feruntor

volō, velle, voluī, --, 'wish, want, be willing'

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --, 'be unwilling'

mālō, mālle, mālūī, --, 'prefer'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		
volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERFECT		
volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant
FUTURE		
volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet

volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlent	mālent

PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
voluisti	nōluisti	māluisti
voluit	nōluit	māluit
voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
voluērunt, voluēre	nōluērunt, nōluēre	māluērunt, māluēre

PLUPERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT

vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent

PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

PLUPERFECT

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

volēns	nōlēns	--
--------	--------	----

PERFECT

--	--	--
----	----	----

FUTURE

--	--	--
----	----	----

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

velle	nōlle	mālle
-------	-------	-------

PERFECT

voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
----------	----------	----------

FUTURE

--	--	--
----	----	----

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

--	nōli	nōlite	--
----	------	--------	----

FUTURE

--	2nd nōlitō	nōlitōte	--
	3rd nōlitō	nōluntō	

fīō, fierī, factus sum, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
fīō, I am made, I become	fīēbam, I was made, I became	fiam, I shall be made, I shall become
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs
fit	fīēbat	fiet
fimus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus
fitis	fīēbātis	fīētis
fiunt	fīēbant	fient
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
factus (-a, -um) sum	factus (-a, -um) eram	factus (-a, -um) erō
factus (-a, -um) es	factus (-a, -um) erās	factus (-a, -um) eris
factus (-a, -um) est	factus (-a, -um) erat	factus (-a, -um) erit
factī (-ae, -a) sumus	factī (-ae, -a) erāmus	factī (-ae, -a) erimus
factī (-ae, -a) estis	factī (-ae, -a) erātis	factī (-ae, -a) eritis
factī (-ae, -a) sunt	factī (-ae, -a) erant	factī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
fiam	fierem	factus (-a, -um) sim	factus (-a, -um) essem
fīās	fierēs	factus (-a, -um) sis	factus (-a, -um) essēs
fiat	fieret	factus (-a, -um) sit	factus (-a, -um) esset
fīāmus	fierēmus	factī (-ae, -a) sīmus	factī (-ae, -a) essēmus
fīātis	fierētis	factī (-ae, -a) sītis	factī (-ae, -a) essētis
fiant	fierent	factī (-ae, -a) sint	factī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

--

PERFECT

factus, -a, -um, having been made, having become

FUTURE

faciendus, -a, -um, having to be made, having to become

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

fieri, to be made, to become

PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) esse, to have been made, to have become

FUTURE

factum iri, to be about (going, ready) to be made, to be about (going, ready) to become

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

fi, be made, become!

fite, be made, become!

FUTURE

2nd fitō, you shall be made,
you shall become! --

3rd fitō, he/she/it shall be made,
he/she/it shall become! --

Formation of the Future Imperative

The future imperative is a rare form in Latin. It exists in the second and third persons, singular and plural. To form the future *active* imperative, take the present stem and for the second and third persons singular, add the ending **-tō**. For the second person plural, add **-tōte** to the present stem, and for the third person plural, add **-ntō** to the stem.

The future *passive* imperative lacks a second person plural. The endings which are added to the present stem are **-tor** for the second and third persons singular and **-ntor** for the third person plural.

In the third conjugation, the **-e-** of the present stem is changed to **-i-**, but in the third person plural to **-u-**. In *i*-stems of the third conjugation and in the fourth conjugation, an **-i-** appears before the **-u-**.

Thus:

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātō	implētō	dūcitō	incipitō	sentitō
	3rd	optātō	implētō	dūcitō	incipitō	sentitō
PLURAL	2nd	optātōte	implētōte	dūcitōte	incipitōte	sentitōte
	3rd	optantō	implentō	dūcuntō	incipiuntō	sentiantō

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
	3rd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
PLURAL	2nd	--	--	--	--	--
	3rd	optantor	implentor	dūcuntor	incipiuntor	sentiantor

REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Apposition

Apposition may occur in all cases in Latin.

- NOMINATIVE: 1. Marcus, **bonus vir**, in agris labōrat. Marcus, *a good man*, is working in the fields.
 2. **Nūntiī** ad insulam ivimus. We went *as messengers* to the island; We, *messengers*, went to the island.
 3. **Amicus tuus** tibi loquor. I speak to you *as your friend*; I, *your friend*, speak to you.
- GENITIVE: Memorēs invidiae tuae, **culpae magnae**, ex urbe ibimus. Mindful of your envy, *a great fault*, we shall go out of the city.
- DATIVE: Sorōri **Annae** dōnum dedit. He gave a gift to his sister *Anna*.
- ACCUSATIVE: Marcum **ducem** cōpiārum in Italiam misērunt. They sent Marcus, *the leader* of the troops, into Italy; They sent Marcus into Italy *as leader* of the troops.
- ABLATIVE: Socii in patriā **Asiā** visi sunt. The allies were seen in their native land *of Asia* (literally, their native land, *Asia*).

Nominative Case

The nominative case is used for the subject of a finite verb and for the predicate nominative.

1. **Nautae** vēla ad insulam dedērunt. *The sailors* set sail to the island.
2. Marcus est **vir** honestus. Marcus is a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
3. Marcus **vir** honestus vidētur. Marcus seems a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
4. Marcus **honestus** vidēbātur. Marcus seemed *distinguished*. (predicate adjective)
5. **Pueri puellae**que in tēctum missi sunt. *The boys and girls* were sent into the house. (For the masculine verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)
6. **Mare, sidera, animālia, terra**que ā dis immortalibus facta est. *The sea, stars, animals and land* were made by the immortal gods. (For the singular verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)

Genitive Case

The genitive case, in general, is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun. In addition, it may depend upon a verb or an adjective. Thus:

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION (not discussed in the text)

1. Tēctum **mei amici** igni delētum est. *My friend's* house was destroyed by fire.

2. **Māter ducis** ab incolis laudāta est. The mother *of the leader* was praised by the inhabitants.
3. Iuvenis frātre[m] gladiō **patris** interfēcit. The young man killed his brother with his *father's* sword.
4. Poēta **cuius** liber est nōtus auxilium ā rēge petivit. The poet *whose* book is well known sought aid from the king.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE) (Unit 9G)

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*.

1. Quid **malī** in nostrō oppidō est? What *evil* is in our town?
2. Pars **oppidī** flammis dēlēta erat. Part *of the town* had been destroyed by flames.
3. Nihil **bonī** in hāc urbe vidēre possumus. We are able to see nothing *good* in this city.
4. Plūs **pecūniae** nōs habēmus quam vōs. We have more *money* than you (do).

BUT:

1. Ūnus ē **librīs** ad nōs missus est. One *of the books* was sent to us.
2. Quīnque ē **mīlitibus** interfectī sunt. Five *of the soldiers* were killed.
3. Quīdam ex **hominibus** in viā ambulābat. A certain one *of the men* was walking in the street.

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION (QUALITY) (Unit 10D)

A noun in the genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. Vir **magnae sapientiae** ab omnibus laudātur. A man *of great wisdom* is praised by all.
2. Verba **eius modi** ā populō omnī audīta sunt. Words *of this kind* have been heard by all the people.
3. Cicerō fuit homō **magnae fāmae**. Cicero was a man *of great reputation*.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is used to express the material of which something is composed.

1. Urna **aurī** ā nātis inventa est. An urn *of gold* was found by the children.
2. Tēlane **ferrī** habēs? Do you have weapons *of iron*?
3. Magnum agrum **frūmentī** vīdimus. We have seen a large field *of grain*.
[frūmentum, -ī, N., 'grain']
4. Turba **fēminārum** in viā visa est. A crowd *of women* was seen in the street.

APPOSITIONAL GENITIVE (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition.

1. Nōmen **rēgis** ā populō Rōmānō nōn dilēctum est. The name *of king* was not esteemed by the Roman people. [dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, 'esteem']
2. Difficile est artem **rei militāris** docēre. It is difficult to teach the art *of warfare*. [rēs militāris, rei militāris, F., 'warfare']
3. Opportūnitās **libri legendi** nōbis nōn offertur. The opportunity *of reading a book* is not offered to us. [opportūnitās, -tātis, F., 'opportunity']

PREDICATE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC) (Unit 11D)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

1. Est **boni imperātōris** bene dūcere. It is *the mark of a good commander* to lead well.
2. **Digni civis** est dē cūris patriae cōgitāre. It is *the mark of a worthy citizen* to think about the cares of his native land.
3. Sapienter regere est **honesti rēgis**. Ruling wisely is *the mark of a respected king*.

The genitive serves as the object of a verbal idea of nouns, adjectives, and is used with some verbs. Thus:

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF ACCUSING AND CONDEMNING (Unit 2F)

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or penalty.

1. Hostēs **gravium scelerum** dāmnāvērunt. They condemned the enemy *for serious crimes*.
2. Fēminās **irae** dāmnāmus. We condemn the women *for their anger*.
3. Nautās **insidiarum** dāmnābitis. You will condemn the sailors *for their treachery*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C)

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *object* of this verbal idea is called the objective genitive.

1. Dux **belli** hortātus est ut militēs quam fortissimē pūgnārent. The leader *of the war* urged that the soldiers fight as bravely as possible.
2. Incolae **oppidi** ruīnam tēctōrum timuērunt. The inhabitants *of the town* feared the destruction *of the houses*.
3. Erant multī rūmōrēs dē spē **pācis**. There were many rumors about the hope *of peace*.
4. Multa pecūnia saepe est **invidiae** causa. A lot of money is often the cause of *envy*.
5. Iūnō dē Iovis amōre **pulchrarum fēminarum** monēbātur. Juno was warned about Jupiter's love *of beautiful women*.

6. Iuvenis studiōsus **legendī** multa didicit. The young man, fond of reading, learned many things.

BUT NOTE also, in contrast, the SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C):

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *subject* of this verbal idea is called the subjective genitive.

1. Iūnō dē **Iovis** amōre pulchrārum fēminārum monēbātur. Juno was warned about *Jupiter's* love of beautiful women.
2. **Ira rēginae** populum terret. The *queen's* anger is frightening the people.
3. Militēs insidiis **hostium** superātī sunt. The soldiers were conquered by the treachery of *the enemy*.
4. Ob **rēgis** cūram dē salūte populi urbs quam optimē mūnita est. On account of the *king's* concern about the safety of the people, the city has been fortified as well as possible.
5. Facta fortissima **militum** ā ducibus laudāta sunt. The very brave deeds of *the soldiers* were praised by the leaders.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (Unit 16D4)

Some impersonal verbs take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

1. Mē **invidiae** pudet. I am ashamed of *my jealousy*.
2. Vōs **bellī longī** piget? Are you disgusted with *the long war*?
3. Quōs **superātōrum** miseret? Who pities *the conquered*?
4. **Ducis** interest inimicōs interficī. It is in *the leader's* interest that his enemies be killed.

GENITIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING (Unit 18F)

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

1. **Factōrum fortium** ducum nostrōrum semper meminerimus. We shall always remember *the brave deeds* of our leaders.
2. **Veniae nostrae** oblivisceris? Are you forgetting *our kindness*?
3. Memorēs **patriae** magnō cum studiō pūgnābimus. Mindful of *our native land* we shall fight with great zeal.

Note that the accusative may also be used in these constructions.

GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE (Unit 18I)

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as **as**, **floccus**, and **nihilum**, are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

1. Tēctum **magnī** habeō. I have a house *of great value*.
2. Inimicōs **parvī** facimus. We reckon our enemies *of little worth*.
3. Quid **tantī** aestimāmus? What do we estimate *of such great value*?
4. Tē **flocī** dūcō. I don't give *a damn* for you.

GENITIVE OF FULLNESS AND WANT (not discussed in the text)

Words expressing fullness and emptiness often govern the genitive.

1. Servi urnam $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plēnam aquae} \\ \text{inānem aquae} \end{array} \right\}$ in mēnsā posuērunt. The slaves placed on the table the urn $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{full of water} \\ \text{empty of water} \end{array} \right\}$. [**plēnus**, -a, -um, 'full'; **inānis**, -e, 'empty']
2. Militēs fortēs **timōris** semper nōn egent. Brave soldiers do not always lack *fear*. [**egeō**, -ēre, -uī, --, 'lack, be without']
3. Marcus agrum pauperem **aquae** coluit. Marcus tilled a field poor *in water*. [**colō**, -ere, -uī, cultus, 'till']

GREEK GENITIVE (EPEXEGETICAL GENITIVE) (not discussed in the text)

Following Greek usage, adjectives meaning 'skilled in, having knowledge of' may govern the genitive.

1. Puerum peritum **legendī** laudābāmus. We kept on praising the boy skilled *in reading*. [**perītus**, -a, -um, 'skilled in']
2. Vir doctus **litterārum** fuit. He was a man learned *in literature*. [**doctus**, -a, -um, 'learned']
3. Dux **bellī gerendī** scītus ā cīvibus factus est. A leader skilled *in waging war* was chosen (*literally*, 'made') by the citizens. [**scītus**, -a, -um, 'skilled in']

The genitive is sometimes governed by other words, e.g., **causā** and **grātiā**. Thus:

GENITIVE WITH **causā** AND **grātiā**

Causā and **grātiā**, both meaning 'for the sake of', govern the genitive and are placed *after* it.

1. **Glōriae causā (grātiā)**, bellum gessimus. We waged war *for the sake of glory*.
2. Gēns hostilis bella gerēbat **vincendī causā (grātiā)**. The hostile people used to wage wars *for the sake of conquering* (i.e., *in order to conquer*).
3. Nātōs ad prōvinciam misērunt **auxiliū petendī causā (grātiā)**. They sent their sons to the province *for the sake of seeking* (i.e., *in order to seek*) aid.

Dative Case

The basic use of the dative case is referential. The person or thing to whom or which the action or idea refers, is of advantage, or disadvantage, is put into the dative case. Thus:

1. **Vōbīs** Rōmam ire licet. *You* are permitted to go to Rome.
2. Librum **nautae** ēmi. I bought a book *for the sailor*.
3. Dōnum **mātrī nostrae** invēnimus. We have found a gift *for our mother*.
4. Tua facta fortia in **mihi** mentem vēnērunt. Your brave deeds came into mind *for my advantage*; Your brave deeds came into *my* mind.
5. Hoc **mihi** āctum est. This was done *for me* (i.e., *for my advantage* or *for my disadvantage*).
6. Cōnsulem **tibi** laudāvisti. You praised the consul *for your advantage*.
7. Pontem **hostibus** dēlēvimus. We destroyed the bridge *for the enemy's disadvantage*. [**pōns**, **pontis**, M., 'bridge']

The following specialized uses of the referential dative also occur:

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H3)

The indirect object occurs with verbs of *giving*, *telling*, and *showing*. The person to whom something is given, told, or shown is put into the dative case.

1. Librum **magistrō** mōnstrāvimus. We showed the book *to the teacher*.
2. Liber **magistrō** datus est. The book was given *to the teacher*.
3. Rēgina **poētae** multa respondit. The queen answered many things *to the poet*.
Or: The queen gave many answers *to the poet*.
4. Quid **rēginae** dictum est? What was said *to the queen*?
5. Nōli **timōri** cēdere. Don't yield *to fear*.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN ADJECTIVES (not discussed in the text)

Adjectives meaning 'near (to), fit (for), friendly (to), pleasing (to), similar (to)', etc., and their opposites take the dative case.

1. Servus **dominō** cārus fuit. The slave was dear *to his master*.
2. Hostēs proximi **oppidō** iam erunt. The enemy by this time will be very near *the town*.
3. Cōsul amicus **plēbī** factus est. A consul friendly *to the common people* was chosen.
4. Filius simillimus **patri** vidētur. The son seems very like *his father*.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS (Unit 13B)

Certain intransitive verbs in Latin govern the dative case. Some common examples are: **crēdō**, **faveō**, **ignōscō**, **imperō**, **noceō**, **parcō**, **pāreō**, **placeō**, **persuādeō**, **studeō**.

1. **Quibus** crēdis? *Whom* do you believe?
2. Magister **puellis** fāvit. The teacher favored *the girls*.
3. Dōnum **frātrī** placuit? Did the gift please *your brother*?
4. Servi **dominō** pārent. The slaves obey *their master*.

5. Imperātor **cōpiīs** imperāvit ut pūgnārent. The commander ordered *the troops* to fight.

DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR (Unit 5E)

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

1. **Incolīs** multa tēcta erant. *The inhabitants* had many houses.
2. Cōnsilium bonum fuerat **ducibus**. *The leaders* had had a good plan.
3. **Vōbīs**ne est magna cōpia pecūniae? Do *you* have a large supply of money?

DATIVE OF AGENT (Unit 5D)

With the passive periphrastic the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition.

1. Quid **puellae** agendum est? What must *the girl* do? (*Literally*, What must be done *by the girl*?)
2. Oppidum **militibus** oppūgnandum erat. The town had to be attacked *by the soldiers*.
3. Aliquid magni **civibus** agendum erit. *The citizens* will have to do something great.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS (Unit 13D)

Many verbs compounded with such prefixes as **ad-**, **ante-**, **circum-**, **con-**, **in-**, **inter-**, **ob-**, **post-**, **prae-**, **prō-**, **sub-**, **super-** govern the dative case. When the original verb is transitive, the compounded form governs an accusative as well.

1. Hostēs bellum **prōvinciae** inferunt. The enemies inflict a war on *the province*.
2. Vir **amicō** in viā occurrit. The man met *his friend* in the street. [**occurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursus, 'meet']
3. Dux optimōs **nāvibus** praefēcit. The leader put the best men in command of *the ships*.
4. Marcus **cōpiīs** praeerit. Marcus will be in command of *the troops*.

ETHICAL DATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The ethical dative is a personal pronoun in the dative case not closely connected with the rest of the sentence; it does not depend on any one word.

1. Nihil boni **mihi** hīc inveniri potest. Nothing good can be found here *in my opinion*.
2. Illud **mihi** scelus non est. That is not a crime *as far as I'm concerned*.
3. Quod cōnsilium **tibi** ā ducibus legētur? What plan will be chosen by the leaders *in your opinion*?
4. Illud **tibi** est fortis viri factum! That is the deed of a brave man *for you*!
5. Vīta **mihi** sine spē est mors. Life without hope, *for me* (i.e., *as far as I'm concerned*), is death.

In addition to these basic referential uses, a noun in the dative case can express the purpose for which an action is performed or for which something exists. This is often used in conjunction with another noun in the dative case which is purely referential in nature. Thus:

DATIVE OF PURPOSE (SERVICE) (Unit 8H)

1. Aurum **auxiliō** oppidō missum est. The gold was sent *as an aid* to the town.
2. Magna cōpia pecūniae est **magnae cūrae**. A large supply of money is *a great concern* (i.e., it serves *as a great concern*).
3. Hostēs fuērunt **timōri** populō. The enemy were *a fear* to the people (i.e., they served *as a source of fear* for the people).
4. Amicō librum **dōnō** dedit. He gave his friend a book *for a gift* (i.e., to serve *as a gift*).
5. **Magnō auxiliō** nostris amicis fuimus. We were *a great aid* to our friends.

Accusative Case

The accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H4)

1. **Multōsne maiōrēs frātrēs** habēs? Do you have *many older brothers*?
2. **Impiōs** nōn laudābimus. We shall not praise *wicked men*.
3. **Mōtūs** siderum nōn intellēxit. He did not understand *the movements* of the stars.

COGNATE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The direct object whose meaning is very closely related to that of the verb is called a cognate accusative (e.g., to dream a dream, dance a dance, sing a song).

1. **Vitam** bonam et fēlicem vivit. He lives a good and happy *life*.
2. **Somnium** longum et grātum somniāvī. I dreamed a long and pleasing *dream*.
[**somnium**, -ī, N., 'dream'; **somniō** (1), 'dream']
3. **Militēs** multa **facta** fortia fēcērunt. The soldiers did many brave *deeds*.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

Some verbs take two accusatives.

1. **Nōs** **litterās** docēre volunt. They want to teach *us literature*.
2. **Amīci** **nōs** **pecūniam** ōrāvērunt. Our friends asked *us* for *money*.
3. **Vōs** **auxilium** rogāmus. We ask *you* for *aid*.
4. **Factum** **tē** cēlāvī. I have hidden the *deed* from *you*.

GREEK ACCUSATIVE: ACCUSATIVE OF RESPECT OR ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS IN THE MIDDLE VOICE (Unit 18F)

Occasionally in poetry and late Latin the accusative is used to express *respect* or *specification*. It is frequently used to express the *part affected*. The accusative is used as the object of a verb which looks passive, but which may be considered the equivalent of a Greek middle voice.

1. Multi **oculōs** vulnerātī sunt. Many men were wounded *in their eyes*.
2. Fēmina **caput** tēcta per viās oppidī sine servīs ambulāvit. The woman having covered *her head* walked through the streets of the town without slaves. [**caput, capitis**, N., 'head']
3. **Caput** cinctus laurō deus magnum amōrem puellae cecinit. Having bound his *head* with laurel, the god sang of his great love for the girl. [**caput, capitis**, N., 'head'; **laurus, -ī**, F., 'laurel']

SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text; but see Unit 6C)

The subject of the infinitive is put into the accusative case.

1. Nōs ire nōlunt. They are unwilling *for us* to go.
2. Fēminās ē tēctīs expulsās esse dicit. He says that *the women* were driven out of the houses.
3. Dux **militēs** oppidum oppūgnāre iussit. The leader ordered *the soldiers* to attack the town.

BUT: the subject of an historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

4. **Servī** libenter fugere. *The slaves* fled gladly.

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE (Unit 7I)

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question "for how long?", whether it be of time or distance.

1. In insulā **quīnque diēs** manēbimus. We shall remain on the island *for five days*.
2. Nōs **duās hōrās** exspectāvērunt. They waited for us *for two hours*.
3. Rōmam **multōs annōs** incoluērunt. They lived in Rome *for many years*.
4. Puerī parvī saxum magnum **quīnque pedēs** portāvērunt. The small boys carried the large rock *for five feet*.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION (Unit 15F)

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

1. Ō impiās fēminās! Oh wicked women!
2. Mē miserum! Unhappy me!
3. Infēlicem diem! Unfortunate day!

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE (Unit 18G)

A word in the accusative case may be used adverbially.

1. **Quid** hoc tibi vidētur? *In what way* does this seem best to you? [**videor**, ‘seem (best)’]
2. **Nihil** hoc meā interest. This is *in no way* of interest to me.
3. **Maximam partem** id mihi nōn placet. *For the most part* this does not please me.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (Unit 1H4)

The prepositions **per**, **trāns**, **inter**, **post**, **intrā** (‘within’), **apud**, **contrā**, **super** (‘above’), etc., govern the accusative case.

1. **Ob/Propter nostram culpam** patria dēlēta est. *Because of our fault* our native land has been destroyed.
2. **Militēs post bellum** ad patriam redibunt. The soldiers will return to their native land *after the war*.
3. **Pueri per multās viās** oppidi cucurrerunt. The boys ran *through many streets* of the town.
4. **Trāns flūmen** fūgimus. We fled *across the river*.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH (Unit 6F)

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of cities, small islands, towns, and the words **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used.

1. **Nautae vēla ad īnsulam** dabunt. The sailors will set sail *to the island*.
2. **Ad Italiam** imus. We are going *to Italy*.

BUT:

3. **Rōmam** imus. We are going *to Rome*.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE INTO WHICH (not discussed in the text)

Place into which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **in**, ‘into’.

1. **Fēminae in viam** ambulat. The women are walking *into the street*.
2. **Incolae in patriam** rediērunt. The inhabitants went back *into their native land*.
3. **Nautae in aquam** ibunt. The sailors will go *into the water*.

BUT:

4. **In viā** ambulat. They are walking *in the street*. (place where)

Ablative Case

The basic function of the ablative case is to answer the questions “from?, where?, how?, when?, by?”; it can frequently be rendered literally by the

prepositions “from, with, in, by”. For convenience, the uses are arranged below according to whether or not they require prepositions in Latin.

WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF MEANS (INSTRUMENT) (Unit 3E)

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

1. Tēcta prōvinciae **igni** dēlēta sunt. The houses of the province were destroyed *by fire*.
2. Nātī **gladiīs** militum territi erant. The children had been frightened *by the swords* of the soldiers.
3. Urna pulchra **aquā** implētur. The beautiful urn is being filled *with water*.
4. Cōnsul populum **spē** salutis hortātus est. The consul encouraged the people *with the hope* of safety.

Some additional uses of the ablative of means are:

ABLATIVE OF ROUTE (not discussed in the text)

Ībam forte **Viā Sacrā**. I was walking by chance *along the Sacred Way*.
[sacer, sacra, sacrum, ‘sacred’]

ABLATIVE OF PRICE (Unit 18J)

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to indicate the price of something.

1. Domum **multā pecūniā** ēmimus. We bought a house *for a lot of money*.
2. Patriam **aurō** trādīdit. He handed over his native land *for gold*.
3. Iuvenem **duce seniōre** mūtāre nōlumus. We do not want to exchange a young leader *for an older one*.
4. Servōs **magnō pretiō** vendidit. He sold the slaves *for a great price*.

ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENT VERBS (not discussed in the text)

Ūtor ‘use’, fruor ‘enjoy’, fungor ‘perform’, potior ‘gain possession of’, and vēscor ‘eat’ take the ablative case.

1. **Auxiliō** amicōrum ūtitur. He makes use of his friends’ *aid*.
2. **Dōnō** frātris frūctus es? Did you enjoy your brother’s *gift*? [fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, ‘enjoy’]
3. Miserī **animālibus mortuīs** vēscuntur. The wretched men are eating *dead animals*. [vēscor, -ī, --, ‘eat’]

opus est + ABLATIVE (Vocabulary, Unit 7)

1. Nōbis **bonō amicō** opus est. We need *a good friend*.

This idea may also be expressed:

2. **Bonus amicus** nōbis opus est. (i.e., with the nominative)

or less frequently:

3. Nōbis **bonī amīcī** opus est. (i.e., with the genitive)

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (Unit 10D)

A noun in the ablative case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. Virum **ūnō oculō** vīdimus. We saw a man *with one eye*.
2. Fēmina **manibus pulchrīs** litterās longās scripsit. The woman *with the beautiful hands* wrote a long letter.
3. Patria **maximā fāmā** erat pulcherrima. The country *with a very great reputation* was very beautiful.

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (Unit 7H)

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

1. **Paucīs annīs** patriam novam incolēmus. We shall inhabit a new land *in a few years*.
2. **Eō tempore** multōs amicōs vīdimus. We saw many friends *at that time*.
3. **Proximō mēse** socii ad tēctum ducis venient. *Next month* the allies will come to the leader's house. [**mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M.**, 'month']
4. **Proximā nocte** socii ad tēctum ducis vērērunt. *Last night* the allies came to the leader's house. [**proximus, -a, -um, here, 'last'**]

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (Unit 9C)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree to denote comparison.

1. Iuvenēs facta fortiōra **patribus** fēcērunt. The young men did braver deeds *than their fathers* (did).
2. Tū fēlicior **mē** es. You are happier *than I*.
3. Puella pulchrior **mātre pulchrā** est. The girl is more beautiful *than her beautiful mother*.

Note that the same idea may be expressed using **quam**:

4. Iuvenēs facta fortiōra **quam patrēs** fēcērunt.
5. Tū fēlicior **quam ego** es.
6. Puella pulchrior **quam māter pulchra** est.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (Unit 9D)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this

kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

1. Puella **multō** pulchrior mātrem pulchrā est. The girl is *much* more beautiful than her beautiful mother.
2. Marcus **duōbus pedibus** altior quam frāter est. Marcus is *two feet* taller than his brother.
3. Hic nūntius Rōmam **quīnque diēbus** post missus est. This messenger was sent to Rome *five days* later.
4. Is **multō** pulcherrimus hic est. He is *by far* the most handsome man here.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (Unit 10C)

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

1. Rēginam **irā crūdēli** timēmus. We fear the queen *because of her cruel anger*.
2. Militēs **metū** pūgnāre nōn potuerunt. The soldiers were not able to fight *because of fear*.
3. Imperātor lēgātum **virtūte** laudāvit. The commander praised the legate *because of his courage*.

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT (SPECIFICATION) (Unit 8D)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

1. Puella erat pulchra **visū**. The girl was beautiful *to see*.
2. Illa erat pulchra **corpore et animō**. She was beautiful *in body and mind*.
3. Hostēs nōs **virtūte** vicērunt. The enemy excelled us *in courage*.

ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE (not discussed in the text)

The ablative case, without a preposition, may be used to express the circumstances in which the action of the sentence occurs.

1. **Ventis secundis** multōs diēs nāvīgāvimus. We sailed for many days *with favorable winds*. [**secundus**, -a, -um, 'favorable'; **nāvīgō** (1), 'sail']
2. Sacrificium **bonis ominibus** fit. The sacrifice is being made *under good omens*. [**sacrificium**, -ī, N., 'sacrifice'; **ōmen**, **ōminis**, N., 'omen']
3. Flūmen ad litus **magnō strepitū** ruit. The river rushes to the shore *with a great noise*. [**strepitus**, -ūs, M., 'noise']

Note that the ablative absolute may be used to express attendant circumstance:

4. Dis grātiās **manibus** ad caelum **sublātis** agēmus. We shall give thanks to the gods *with hands raised* to heaven. [**grātiās agere**, 'to give thanks' + dative; **tollō**, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, 'lift, raise']
5. Ōrātor turbae **fulgōre** ad dextram **visō** locūtus est. The speaker spoke to the crowd *with lightning seen* toward the right.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (Unit 10A)

The ablative absolute composed of a noun and participle in the ablative case (or two nouns, or a noun and adjective, or pronoun and adjective with the participle of the verb “to be” understood) has no close syntactical connection with the rest of the sentence. It functions as an adverb giving the circumstances, time, cause, condition, or concession in which the action of the main verb occurs.

1. **Lēgātō** auxilium **ferente**, cōpiae hostēs superant. *With the legate bringing aid, the troops overcome the enemy.*
2. **Cicerōne** cōsule, multi fuērunt laetī. *When Cicero was consul, many men were happy.* [Cicerō, -ōnis, M., ‘Cicero’]
3. **Fulgōre** visō plēbs territa fūgit. *When the lightning had been seen, the terrified (common) people fled.*
4. **Multīs** nāvibus **dēlētīs**, hostēs victī sunt. *The enemy were conquered after many of their ships had been destroyed.*
5. **Hōc** factō, laetī tamen fuimus. *Although this had happened, nevertheless we were happy.*
6. **Marcō** laetō, laetī tamen nōn fuimus. *Although Marcus was happy, nevertheless we were not happy.*

ADJECTIVES WITH THE ABLATIVE (not discussed in the text)

Frētus, -a, -um, ‘relying upon, dependent upon’, and **dīgnus**, -a, -um, ‘worthy’, govern the ablative.

1. Senex frētus **nātīs** vivit. *The old man lives dependent upon his sons.*
2. Frētī **fidē tuā** nōn timēbimus. *Relying upon your trustworthiness, we shall not fear.*
3. Ille est dīgnus **multīs bonīs**. *That man is worthy of many good things.*

WITH PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (Unit 4E)

The *agent* or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**, ‘by’.

1. Illi **ab omnibus** in oppidō vīsi sunt. *Those men were seen by everyone in town.*
2. Rēx **ā populō** timētur. *The king is feared by the people.*
3. Bellum **ab incolīs** prōvinciae gestum est. *War was waged by the inhabitants of the province.*

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

The prepositions **cum**, **in**, **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), **dē**, **sine**, **prō**, **sub**, **super** (‘above’). etc., govern the ablative case.

1. Socii **cum** hostibus pūgnāvērunt. The allies fought *with the enemy*.
2. Ducēs dē multīs cōgitābant. The leaders thought *about many things*.
3. Nihil sine pecūniā emere potest. He can buy nothing *without money*.
4. Hostēs prō moenibus pūgnāvērunt. The enemy fought *in front of the city walls*.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT (Unit 7G)

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

1. Fēminae **cum** nautīs ambulābant. The women were walking *with the sailors*.
2. Nautae **cum** multīs sociīs vēla dabunt. The sailors will set sail *with many allies*.
3. Incolae prōvinciae **cum** amicīs ex oppidō discessērunt. The inhabitants of the province left the town *with their friends*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH (PLACE WHERE) (Unit 6G)

Place where is expressed by **in** with the ablative, except for the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. Erant multi montēs **in** insulā. There were many mountains *on the island*.
2. Pecūnia **in** cellīs cēlāta est. The money was hidden *in the storerooms*.
3. Plūrīmī **in** pāce vivere volunt. Most men want to live *in peace*.

BUT:

4. Rōmae esse volunt. They want to be *in Rome*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE AWAY FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Ā (**ab**) with the ablative expresses the direction away from a place; however, no preposition is used with the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. Ab insulā quam celerrimē discessimus. We went *away from the island* as quickly as possible.
2. Animālia ab āris pepulimus. We drove the animals *away from the altars*.
3. Turbamne ā tēctō cōnsulis dūcēs? Will you lead the crowd *away from the consul's house*?

BUT:

4. Rōmā ad Asiam vēnimus. We came *from Rome* to Asia.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE OUT OF WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Ē (**ex**) with the ablative expresses the direction out of a place.

1. Parva animālia ē marī in terram vēnērunt. Small animals came *out of the sea* onto land.
2. Servi qui ex Āfricā vēnerant in multis urbibus visi sunt. Slaves who had come *out of Africa* were seen in many cities.

3. Puerōs ē tēctō in viam mittis? Are you sending the boys *out of the house* into the street?

ABLATIVE OF PLACE DOWN FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Dē with the ablative expresses the direction down from a place.

1. Incolae saxa **dē moenibus** iēcērunt. The inhabitants threw rocks *down from the city walls*.
2. **Dē monte** magnā cum cūrā ambulāvērunt. They walked *down the mountain* with great care.
3. Quidam **dē monte** ad mortem cecidit. A certain man fell *down the mountain* to his death.

WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF MANNER (MODAL ABLATIVE) (Unit 3F)

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. **Cum** is required when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

1. Militēs **magnō (cum) studiō** pūgnāvērunt. The soldiers fought *with great zeal (very zealously)*.
2. Nātī litterās longās **magnā (cum) cūrā** scripsērunt. The children wrote a long letter *with great care (very carefully)*.
3. Nūntiī **cum virtūte** locūtī sunt. The messengers spoke *with courage (courageously)*.
4. Socii cōnsilia **cum dīligentiā** fēcērunt. The allies made plans *with diligence (diligently)*.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (Unit 6E)

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, or **dē** are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

1. Multi miserī **spē** carent. Many unhappy men lack *hope*.
2. Virī (**ā**) **cūris** liberātī vitam fēlicem ēgērunt. The men freed *from their cares* lived a happy life.
3. Fāma imperātōrem **ā noxā** nōn solvit. His reputation did not free the commander *from harm*.

ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in text)

The ablative case may be used, sometimes with the prepositions **dē** or **ex**, to show the material from which an object is made.

1. Urnam **ex aurō** numquam vidimus. We have never seen an urn *of gold*.

2. Statua **dē marmore** in forō posita est. A statue (made) *of marble* was placed in the forum. [**marmor**, -oris, M., 'marble']
3. Mēnsa minima ex **aurō** facta mihi mōnstrāta est. A very small table made *of gold* was shown to me.
4. Agri **multīs flōribus pulcherrimīs** cōstant. The fields consist of *many very beautiful flowers*. [**flōs**, **flōris**, M., 'flower'; **cōnstō**, -āre, **cōstitī**, -stātus, 'consist of']

ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN (ALLIED WITH ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION) (Unit 6E1)

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

1. Cōsul **gente clārā** nātus est. The consul was descended *from a famous race*.
2. Hic ē **mātre pulchrā** nātus est. This man was born *of a beautiful mother*.
3. Flūmen ā **marī** oritur. The river rises *from the sea*.

Locative Case (Unit 6G)

The names of towns, cities, and small islands and the words **domus** and **rūs** use the locative case to express *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

1. Aenēās **Carthāgine** nōn diū remānsit. Aeneas did not remain *in Carthage* for a long time.
2. Servi vitam fēlicem **Rōmae** nōn semper vixērunt. Slaves did not always live a happy life *in Rome*.
3. Multa aedificia pulchra **Athēnīs** fuērunt. There were many beautiful buildings *in Athens*. [**aedificium**, -ī, N., 'building']

Vocative Case (Unit 8G)

The vocative is the case of *direct address*.

1. **Puerī**, nōlite id facere. *Boys*, don't do this.
2. Librum novum, **scriptor clāre**, mihi lege. Read me your new book, *famous writer*.
3. Venī, **fili mī**, mēcum. Come with me, *my son*.

REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

Infinitives

The infinitive is an abstract verbal noun. (Unit 1C)

COMPLEMENTARY (Unit 5G)

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete

their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like. The infinitive completes the idea of the verb.

1. Ad Italiam **ire** solēmus. We are accustomed *to go* to Italy.
2. Clārissimum virum **vidēre** potes? Can you *see* the very famous man?
3. Honestus vir esse vidētur. He seems *to be* an honorable man.
4. Parentēs et amīcōs nōlī **relinquere**. Don't *abandon* your parents and friends.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT (Unit 11E)

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun and thus can be the subject of a verb.

1. **Vidēre** est crēdere. *Seeing* is believing. (*Literally, 'To see is to believe'. Crēdere is a predicate nominative.*)
2. Difficile nōn est vītam bene **agere**. It is not difficult *to conduct* life well.
3. Hoc est bonum: bene **agere** et multōs amīcōs **habēre**. This is good: *to do well and to have* many friends.
4. Facta fortia **perficere** optimum vidētur. *To accomplish* brave deeds seems best.
5. Est nātī omnibus dictīs parentis **crēdere**. It is the mark of a child *to believe* all the sayings of his parent.
6. Bene **vīvere** oportet. It is proper *to live* well. (This also occurs with other impersonal verbs.)

OBJECT INFINITIVE (Unit 5G)

An infinitive (sometimes with subject accusative) may be used as the object of another verb.

1. Rōmam **ire** volumus. We want *to go* to Rome.
2. Dux militēs oppidum **oppūgnāre** iussit. The leader ordered the soldiers *to attack* the town.
3. Vōs hoc **facere** vetat. He forbids you *to do* this.
4. Dux militēs sē **recipere** prohibuit. The leader prevented the soldiers from *withdrawing*.

A further use of the object infinitive is:

THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 6C)

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, statements are made indirectly. The verb of this indirect statement is in the infinitive and the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

1. Nōs fēlicēs mox **futūrōs esse** (**fore**) spērat. He hopes that we *will* soon *be* happy.
2. Tē hoc **fēcisse** pūtāvimus. We thought that you *had done* this.
3. Nōs rūs **ire** scivīt. He knew that we *were going* to the country.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE (Unit 18C)

The infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb to emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action. The subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

1. Multi in oppidō **clāmāre**. Many men in the town *shouted*.
2. Militēs multā cum vī **pūgnāre**. Soldiers *fought* with a lot of force.
3. Alii per viās oppidī **currere**, alii apertē **plōrāre**, alii manūs ad deōs **tollere**. Some *ran* through the streets of the town, others *wept* openly, others *raised* their hands to the gods. [**apertē**, adv., 'openly'; **plōrō** (1), 'weep'; **tollō**, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, 'raise, lift']

EPEXEGETICAL INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text)

An infinitive may be dependent upon an adjective, as happens in Greek.

1. Poēta carmen dignum **legī** fēcit. The poet composed a poem worthy *to be read*.
2. Servus erat peritus **docēre**. The slave was skilled in *teaching*. [**perītus**, -a, -um, 'skilled']
3. Hic vir aptus erat **regere**. This man was fit *to rule*. [**aptus**, -a, -um, 'fit']

INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS (not discussed in the text)

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a main verb in exclamations.

1. Tālem scelerātum imperium **obtuisse**! (To think) that such a scoundrel *has obtained* power!; Such a scoundrel *has obtained* power?! [**scelerātus**, -ī, M., 'scoundrel'; **obtimeō** (ob + teneō), 'get hold of, obtain']
2. Mē ut hunc diem vidērem **vixisse**! (To think) that I *have lived* to see this day!; I *have lived* to see this day?!
3. Mē tē facere hoc nōn **dare**! I not *grant* you to do this?!

Sometimes the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word to lay stress on the interrogative nature of the exclamation:

4. Mēne ā tē **victum esse**! I *beaten* by you?!

Imperatives (Units 1A5, 8F)

The imperative mood expresses the action as a command.

1. Timōrem mortis **superā**! *Overcome* your fear of death!
2. Librum hūc **fer**! *Bring* the book here!
3. Verba sapientis **audite**! *Listen to* the words of the wise man!
4. Noxam **patere**! *Endure* the injury!

The future imperative is used to stress the futurity of the command (particularly when another verb in the sentence is in the future or future perfect tense). It is also used in legal terms.

1. Cum tē vidēbō, respōnsum mihi **dīcītō**. When I see you, *you shall tell me* your answer. [**respōnsum**, -ī, N., 'answer']
2. Mox veniet; poenās **datō**. He will come soon; *he shall pay* the penalty.
3. Rēs pūblica ā duōbus cōnsulibus **regitor**. The republic *shall be ruled by* two consuls.

Some verbs, like **meminī**, 'remember', regularly use the future imperative instead of the present:

4. **Mementōte** hōrum factōrum fortium! *Remember* (pl.) these brave deeds!

Indicative Mood

The indicative mood is the mood of fact and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. (Unit 1A5)

1. Hās litterās ad amicum **mittēs**? *Will you send* this letter to your friend?
2. Liber quī ā clārissimō auctōre **scrīptus erat** omnibus praesentibus **lēctus est**. The book which *had been written* by the very famous author *was read* to all who were present. [**praesēns**, **praesentis**, 'present']
3. Servus ad poenās trādītus scelus **negāvit**. The slave handed over to punishment *denied* his crime.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (**quamquam** and **etsī**) (Unit 15C3)

1. **Quamquam** rūs **incolimus**, fēlicēs nōn sumus. *Although we live* in the country, we are not happy.
2. **Etsī** rūs urbe **māluērunt**, tamen Rōmam incoluērunt. *Although they preferred* the country to the city, nevertheless they lived in Rome.
3. **Quamquam** eōs **vīderāmus**, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.

BUT:

4. **Cum** eōs **vīdissēmus**, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
5. **Quamvis** eōs **vīdissēmus**, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
6. **Eis** ā nōbis **vīsīs**, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although they had been seen* by us, nevertheless we did not want to speak. (Ablative Absolute)

CAUSAL CLAUSES (**quoniam/quandō**, **quod/quia** take the indicative to express actual fact) (Unit 15C2)

1.

}	Quoniam
}	Quandō

sumus amīcī, amīcitiām nōn negābimus. *Since we are* friends, we shall not deny our friendship.

2. **Quoniam** } **labōrāverant**, fēlicēs erant. *Since they had worked*, they were happy.
Quandō }
3. **Quod** } **sumus** amicī, amicitiam nōn negābimus. *Because we (actually) are*
Quia } friends, we shall not deny our friendship.

BUT:

4. **Cum** sīmus amicī, amicitiam nōn negābimus. *Since we are* friends, we shall not deny our friendship.
5. **Quod** } **labōrāvissent**, fēlicēs erant. *Because they (allegedly) had worked*, they
Quia } were happy.
6. **Amicō meō fēlicī**, fēlix sum. *Since my friend is happy*, I am happy. (Ablative Absolute)

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum** parentēs vidēmus, fēlicēs sumus. *When we see* our parents, we are happy.
2. **Cum** parentēs vidēbimus, fēlicēs erimus. *When we (shall) see* our parents, we shall be happy.
3. **Cum** parentēs viderimus, fēlicēs erimus. *When we shall have seen* our parents, we shall be happy.

BUT:

4. **Cum** parentēs vidērēmus, fēlicēs erāmus. *When we saw* our parents, we were happy. (In past time, the subjunctive is used.)

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1 and C1)

1. **Ut** }
Ubi } tē rideō, mē ipsum rideō. *When I laugh at you*, I laugh
Quandō } at my very self.
Cum (*stresses time*) }
2. **Ut** }
Ubi } in viā ambulābam, Marcō occurri. *When I was walking*
Quandō } in the street, I met Marcus. [**occurrō, -ere, occurri,**
Cum (*stresses time*) } **occursus**, 'meet']
3. **Ut** }
Ubi } amicōs vidērunt, fēlicēs visī sunt. *When they saw their*
Quandō } friends, they seemed happy.
Cum (*stresses time*) }
4. **Postquam** amicōs vidērunt, fēlicēs visī sunt. *After they saw* their friends, they seemed happy.

BUT:

5. **Amicis visis, felicēs visi sunt.** *When their friends had been seen, they seemed happy.* (Ablative Absolute)
6. **Cum amicōs vidērent, felicēs visi sunt.** *When they saw their friends, they seemed happy.* (stresses circumstances)

dum, dōnec, ‘while, until’; **simul ac (atque),** ‘as soon as’; **quōad,** ‘as long as, as far as, until’ (Unit 15D2)

1. **Simul ac eum vidī, eum dilēxi.** *As soon as I saw him, I liked him.* [**diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus,** ‘esteem, like’]
2. **Dum** } **Quōad** } ventī secundī **fuērunt,** nautae vēla dedērunt. *While the winds were favorable, the sailors set sail.* [**secundus, -a, -um,** ‘favorable’]
Dōnec }
3. **Dum** } **Quōad** } **rēx vīxit,** populus liber nōn erat. *While the king lived, the people were not free.*
Dōnec }
4. **Dum** paucōs diēs in urbe **morāmur,** amicī nostrī rūs ivērunt. *While we delayed in the city for a few days, our friends went to the country.*

BUT:

5. Cōnsilia nostra perficere nōn possumus, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dum} \\ \text{dōnec} \\ \text{quōad} \end{array} \right\}$ **adveniās.** We are not able to complete our plans *until you arrive.* (subjunctive stresses anticipation)

antequam, priusquam, ‘before’ (Unit 15D3)

1. **Antequam urbem reliquimus,** eum vidimus. *Before we abandoned the city, we saw him.*
2. Multa cōnsilia **prius** fēcērunt **quam** librum **scripsērunt.** They made many plans *before they wrote* the book.
3. Cum cūrā **ante** audī **quam** rīdēs. Listen carefully *before you laugh.*
4. Eum vidēre volō **antequam** perierit. I want to see him *before he dies.*

BUT:

5. Mortuus est **antequam** eum **vidērem.** He died *before I could see* him.

quod, ‘the fact that’ (Unit 18K)

A substantive clause introduced by **quod,** ‘the fact that’, and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.

1. **Quod fēlix es, negāre nōn possumus.** *The fact that you are happy we cannot deny.*
2. **Quod tē amō mē fēlicem facit.** *The fact that I love you makes me happy.*
3. **Alia causa timōris est quod nōs ōdit.** *Another cause of fear is the fact that he hates us.*

cum, 'whenever' (perfect indicative when the main verb is present; pluperfect indicative when the main verb is imperfect) (Unit 15A4)

1. **Cum plēbs ducibus pārui**t, pāx in rē pūblicā est. *Whenever the common people obey their leaders, there is peace in the republic.*
2. **Nautae vēla dabant cum ventī secundi fuerant.** *The sailors used to set sail whenever the winds were favorable. [secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable']*
3. **Cum parentēs viderāmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *Whenever we saw our parents, we were happy.*

BUT:

4. **Cum parentēs vidimus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses time — a single action)*
5. **Cum parentēs vidērēmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses circumstances — a single action)*

CONDITIONS

SIMPLE OR GENERAL CONDITIONS (indicative in both clauses) (Unit 2E1)

1. **Sī in agrō es, labōrās.** *If you are in the field, you are working.*
2. **Sī in agrō fuistī, labōrāvistī.** *If you were in the field, you worked.*
3. **Sī in agrō fuerās, labōrāverās.** *If you had been in the field, you had worked.*

FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONS (future indicative in both clauses; for emphasis, future perfect indicative in protasis) (Unit 2E2a)

1. **Sī in agrō eris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will be) in the field, you will work.*
2. **Sī in agrō fueris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will have been) in the field, you will work. (emphatic)*
3. **Sī domum veniet, statuam vidēbit.** *If he comes (will come) home, he will see the statue.*
4. **Sī deōs precātus erit, impetrābit.** *If he begs (will have begged) the gods, he will gain his request. (emphatic) [impetrō (1), 'gain one's request']*

IMPERSONAL PASSIVES (Unit 13C)

1. **In oppidō agitātum est.** *There was a disturbance in the town.*
2. **Domō discēditur.** *There is a departure from the house: they are leaving the house.*

3. Hostibus ā duce **parcētur**. The enemy *will be spared* by the leader.
4. Puellis ā magistrō **favēbātur**. The girls *were favored* by the teacher.

NOTE that this construction may be used with the subjunctive also:

5. In oppidō **agitētur**. *Let there be a disturbance* in the town.
6. Sī puellis ā magistrō **faveātur**, infēlix sim. If the girls *should be favored* by the teacher, I would be unhappy.

Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is the mood used to express idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, or anticipation. (Unit 1A5)

INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express an exhortation in the first person. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Tēcum **veniam**. *Let me come* with you.
2. Nē rūs **relinquāmus**. *Let us not abandon* the country.
3. Auxilium ad miserōs **ferāmus**. *Let us bring* aid to the wretched men.

JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the second and third persons. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Crūdēlis senem **nē interficiat**. *Let the cruel man not kill* the old man.
2. Īram rēginae **timeant**. *Let them fear* the queen's anger.
3. Pecūniam oblātam **capiās**. *Take* the offered money.
4. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērētis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

In the second person, occasionally, when the verb is negative, the perfect subjunctive is found instead of the present:

5. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērāveritis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A3)

The present and imperfect subjunctive may be used to deliberate about a course of action. This is frequently found in a rhetorical question. The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

1. Rūs **redeam**? *Should I go back* to the country? *Am I to return* to the country?
2. Eum iterum **nōn videam**? *Should I not see* him again? [**iterum**, adv., 'again']
3. Dōnum frātrī eius **darem**? *Should I have given* a gift to his brother?

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A4)

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut**. The negative is introduced by **utinam nē** or **nē**.

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time and the pluperfect for past time.

1. (**Utinam**) meliōrēs rēs mihi sint! *If only affairs will be better for me!*
2. (**Ut**) diūtius vivere possēmus! *If only we could live longer!*
3. (**Utinam**) sapientior fuisset! *If only he had been wiser!*
4. (**Utinam**) nē adesset! *If only he were not present!*

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A2)

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur. For present or future potentiality, the present subjunctive is used. For past potentiality, the imperfect subjunctive is used. The negative is expressed by **nōn**.

1. Hoc **nōn** faciās. *You wouldn't do this.*
2. Servi in bellō **pūgnent**. *The slaves might fight in the war.*
3. Tēcum **irēmus**. *We would have gone with you; we might have gone with you.*

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Primary Tenses	Present	Present (<i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Future	
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	Perfect (<i>prior to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Future Perfect	
Secondary Tenses	Imperfect	Imperfect (<i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Perfect	
	(English past)	Pluperfect (<i>prior to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Pluperfect	

PURPOSE CLAUSES (**ut** + subjunctive; negative **nē**) (Unit 3G)

1. Multō cum vigōre lābōrāvimus **ut** magna praemia acciperēmus. *We worked with much vigor in order that we might receive great rewards.*
2. **Nē** inimicī vidērentur, dōna pulchra accēpērunt. *In order that they might not seem unfriendly, they accepted the beautiful gifts.*
3. Magistrōs laudat **ut** sibi (ipsī) faveant. *He praises his superiors in order that they will favor him.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (Unit 14E)

Quō introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause.

1. **Quō** melius **intellegās**, tōtam rem tibi expōnam. In order *that you may understand* better, I shall explain the whole matter for you.
2. Eum hīs cōsiliīs praefēcimus, **quī** multam fāmam **obtinēret**. We put him in charge of these plans in order *that he might gain* much fame. [**ob** + **teneō**], 'get hold of, obtain']
3. Poēta carmen scrīpsit **quod** rēgīnae **placēret**. The poet wrote a poem *in order that he might please* the queen.

PURPOSE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ADVERBS (Unit 14E)

Purpose clauses may be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quō**).

1. In tēctō sē cēlāvit **ubi** tūtus **esset**. He hid in the house in order *that he might be safe there*.
2. Nāvēs in portū parant **unde** vēla **dent**. They are preparing the ships in the harbor in order *that they may set sail from there*. [**portus**, -ūs, M., 'harbor']
3. Eunt **quō** tūtī **sint**. They are going *where they may be safe*.

By way of review, note the following seven ways of expressing purpose. There is no difference in the meaning of the sentences below:

1. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ut** multa **vidērent**.
2. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **quī** multa **vidērent**.
3. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad** **videndum** multa.
4. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad** multa **videnda**.
5. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **videndī** multa **causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']
6. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **multōrum** **videndōrum** **causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']
7. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus multa **vīsum**.

We sent our friends to Rome to see many things.

KEY: (1) **ut** + subjunctive; (2) relative clause of purpose; (3) **ad** + accusative of the gerund; (4) **ad** + accusative + gerundive; (5) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive of the gerund; (6) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive + gerundive; (7) supine in -um with a verb of motion

INDIRECT COMMANDS (Unit 3H)

1. Servōs monet **nē** verba **rideant**. He is warning the slaves that they not *laugh* at his words.

2. Amīcōs hortātī sumus **nē** opera **neglegant**. We have urged our friends that they *not neglect* their works.
3. Nōbīs imperātum est **ut** vīribus ac virtūte **ūterēmur**. We were ordered that we *use* our strength and courage.

RESULT CLAUSES (Unit 14A)

Clauses expressing the result of an action are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Tam crūdēlis est **ut** ab omnibus **timeātur**. He is so cruel *that he is feared* by all.
2. Tantō vigōre discipulī respondent **ut** magistrō **placeant**. The students answer with such great liveliness *that they please* the teacher. [**discipulus**, -ī, M., 'student']
3. Nōn satis celeriter cucurrērunt **ut** periculum **nōn fugerent** (**fūgerint**). They did not run quickly enough *with the result that they did not flee* the danger.
4. Ventī ita validī erant **ut nēmō** vēla dare **posset** (**potuerit**). The winds were so strong *that no one could* set sail.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14B)

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject.

1. Effēcērunt **ut pāx fieret** (**facta sit**). They brought it about *that peace was made*.
2. Fit **ut nōs simus** amīcī. It happens *that we are* friends.
3. Fac **ut** hoc quam celerrimē **fiat**. See to it *that this is done* as quickly as possible.

With **faciō** and **efficiō**, the negative is often expressed by **nē**, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence:

4. Fac **nē sit** mora. See to it *that there isn't* a delay.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14D)

A relative clause of characteristic may be fused with a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

1. Quod factum tantum fuit **quod** omnēs **mīrārentur**? What deed was so great *that all (people) admired it*?
2. Tam clārus est **quem** omnēs **sciunt**. He is so famous *that all (people) know him*.
3. Tam senex est **quī** morī **velit**. He is so old *that he wants* to die.

fore ut + SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 18B)

Fore ut is used with the subjunctive often in place of a future *passive* infinitive in indirect statement or in place of a future *active* infinitive when the verb lacks a fourth principal part.

1. Spērat fore ut impīi ex urbe expellantur. He hopes that the wicked men *will be driven* out of the city.
2. Scivit fore ut multum ab eis libris discerēmus. He knew that *we would learn* a lot from those books.
3. Tibi diximus fore ut id accideret. We told you that this *would happen*.
4. Putās fore ut eī adsint? Do you think that they *will be present*?

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (GENERIC RELATIVE CLAUSES) (Unit 14C)

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe the antecedent of the pronoun in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs. The negative clause is often introduced by **quīn**.

1. Sunt quī eum laudent. *There are those who praise him; There are those who would praise him.*
2. Nēmō est quī eum tē mālit. *There is no one who prefers him to you; There is no one who would prefer him to you.*
3. Quid erat quod nōbīs timendum esset? *What was there which we had to fear?*
4. Sōlus erit quīn hoc faciat. *He will be the only one who doesn't do this; He will be the only one who won't do this; He will be the only one who wouldn't do this.*

CLAUSES OF FEARING (Unit 17A)

Clauses of fearing are introduced by **nē** for the positive and **ut** (occasionally, **nē. . . nōn**) for the negative.

1. Metuunt ut hostēs urbem reliquerint. They fear *that* the enemy *has not abandoned* the city.
2. Veritī sumus nē nōs ōdissent. We feared *that* they *hated* us.
3. Timet ut cōpiis praesit. He is afraid *that* he *will not be in charge of* the troops.
4. Timent nē nōn vēritātem sibi dictūrus sis. They fear *that* you *will not tell* them the truth.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS (Unit 12C)

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Nōn intellegit quō modō hoc fiat. He does not understand *how* this *is done*.
2. Quid sciat incertum est. It is uncertain *what* he *knows*.
3. Nōn exposuisti cūr hūc venirēs. You did not explain *why* you *were coming* here.

4. **Quā dē causā hoc factūrus sīs** manifestum est. It is clear *for what reason you will do* this. [**manifestus, -a, -um**, 'evident, clear']

CONDITIONS

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (imperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3a)

1. Si rēx **essem**, imperium mihi **esset**. If *I were* king, I *would have* power.
2. Nisi frāter meus **essēs**, poenās **darēs**. If *you were* not my brother, *you would pay* the penalty.
3. Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam **facerent**, cōsul eōs **opprimeret**. If *they were making* a plot against the state, the consul *would suppress* them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3b)

1. Si dē nōbis **cōgitāvissētis**, hoc numquam **fēcissētis**. If *you had thought* about us, *you would never have done* this.
2. Si oppidum moenibus **dēfēsum** esset, hostēs nōn **invāsissent**. If the town *had been defended* by walls, the enemy *would not have invaded* it.
3. Nisi auxilium **tulissētis**, **mortuī** **essēmus**. If *you had not brought* aid, *we would have died*.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONS (present subjunctive in both clauses; occasionally perfect subjunctive in protasis) (Unit 2E2b)

1. Si iuvenem **laudēs**, **fēlix** sit. If *you should praise* the young man, *he would be* happy.
2. Si oppidum ab hostibus **vincātur**, incolae servi **fiant**. If the town *should be conquered* by the enemy, the inhabitants *would become* slaves.
3. Nisi auxilium ad incolās **ferātur**, **patiantur**. If aid *should not be brought* to the inhabitants, *they would suffer*.

Note that conditions can be mixed as logic requires (Unit 2E4):

1. Si eum **vidisset**, **fēlix** **esset**. If *she had seen* him, *she would be* happy.
2. Si periculum **sit**, **clāmābō**. If *there should be* danger. *I shall shout*.
3. Si Rōmae **essem**, iter longum **fēcissem**. If *I were* in Rome, *I would have made* a long journey.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 7J)

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by the verb or phrase of the head introducing the indirect statement.

1. Virum quem **vidērēmus** esse frātrem poētae dixērunt. They said that the man whom *we saw* was the poet's brother.

2. Deōs praemia populō cui **faveant** datūrōs esse sentit. He feels that the gods will give rewards to the people whom *they favor*.
3. Sē ducibus quī rei pūblicae **praessent** crēditūrōs esse arbitrāti sunt. They thought that they would believe the leaders who *were in charge of the state*.

CAUSAL CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A2 and D1)

Quod or **quia** is used with the subjunctive to give an *alleged* reason.

1. **Cum** cōsilia eōrum **ridērēmus**, magistrī nōs ōderant. *Since we laughed at their plans, our superiors hated us.*
2. Haec facere scivimus, **cum** nōbis ā tē **exposita essent**. We knew how to do these things, *since they had been explained to us by you.* [**sciō**, here, 'know how']
3. **Cum** in Italiā **sīmus**, Rōmam ibimus. *Since we are in Italy, we shall go to Rome.*
4. Rōmam vēnērunt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quod} \\ \text{quia} \end{array} \right\}$ nōs vidēre **vellent**. They came to Rome *because they (allegedly) wanted to see us.*

BUT:

5. Quid faciat nescit $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quoniam} \\ \text{quandō} \end{array} \right\}$ haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *since these things have not been explained.*
6. Quid faciat nescit $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quod} \\ \text{quia} \end{array} \right\}$ haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *because these things (actually) have not been explained.*
7. Quid faciat nescit, **hīs** nōn **expositis**. He does not know what to do *since these things have not been explained.* (Ablative Absolute)

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive; **quamvīs** + subjunctive; **ut** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A3 and C3; **ut** + subj. not discussed in the text)

1. **Cum** in Italiā **sīmus**, Rōmam tamen nōn ibimus. *Although we are in Italy, nevertheless we shall not go to Rome.*
2. **Cum** ad rēgem **missī** essent, eum vidēre nōn potuērunt. *Although they had been sent to the king, they were not able to see him.*
3. Tē vidēre volō, **cum** tē hōc tempore nōn **amem**. I want to see you, *although I do not love you at this time.*
4. **Quamvīs** mē ad tē venīre **volueris**, tamen hoc nōn faciam. *Although you wanted me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.*
5. Illūc ivi **ut** nōllem. I went there $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{even though} \\ \text{granted that} \end{array} \right\}$ *I did not want to.*

BUT:

6. **Quamquam** } mē ad tē venire **voluistī**, tamen hoc nōn faciam. *Although you*
Etsi } *wanted* me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.
7. **Hīs expositis**, tamen quid facerēmus nescivimus. *Although these things had been explained*, nevertheless we did not know what to do. (Ablative Absolute)

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive when the action is in past time; **cum** + indicative when the action is in present or future time) (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum fulgor vīsus esset**, multī timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen*, many feared.
2. **Cum tēctum ardēret**, omnēs clāmāvērunt. *When the house was burning*, all (people) shouted.
3. **Cum hunc cōpiīs praefēcissent**, militēs vicērunt. *When they had put this man in charge of the troops*, the soldiers conquered the enemy.

BUT:

4. **Hōc cōpiīs praefectō**, militēs hostēs vicērunt. *When this man had been put in charge of the troops*, the soldiers conquered the enemy. (Ablative Absolute)
5. **Cum fulgor vīsus erat**, multī timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen*, many feared. (The indicative is used to stress time.)

ANTICIPATION (Unit 15D2 and D3)

One of the basic uses of the subjunctive is to express anticipation.

- Dōnec** }
 1. **Dum** } hoc faciās, infēlix erō. *Until you do this*, I shall be unhappy.
Quōad }
2. Labōrem neglēxērunt { **dōnec** } litterās tuās **acciperent**. They neglected their
 { **dum** }
 { **quōad** }
 work *until they could receive* your letter. [**labor**, -ōris, M., 'work']
3. Hoc faciēmus **antequam tē videāmus**. We shall do this *before we see* you.
 4. **Ante aderō quam adveniās**. I shall be present *before you arrive*.
 5. **Prius eum laudāvērunt quam eum scīrent**. They praised him *before they could know* him.

BUT:

1. Labōrem neglēxērunt **dum** litterās tuās **accēpērunt**. They neglected their work *until they received* your letter. (The indicative is used to express fact, not anticipation.)

2. **Prius** eum laudāvērunt **quam** eum scīvērunt. They praised him *before they* (actually) *knew* him.

AND:

3. **Ante** aderō **quam** advenīs (advēneris). I shall be present *before you arrive*. (The present or future perfect indicative frequently is used with **antequam** and **priusquam** in primary sequence even when there is a notion of anticipation.)

CLAUSES OF PROVISO (**dum**, **modo**, and **dummodo** + present or imperfect subjunctive; the negative uses **nē**) (Unit 15E)

1. Hoc faciēmus $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dummodo} \\ \text{dum} \\ \text{modo} \end{array} \right\}$ auxilium offerās. We shall do this *provided that* you offer help.
2. Auxilium offerēmus $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{dum} \\ \text{modo} \\ \text{dummodo} \end{array} \right\}$ quaerātur. We shall offer help *provided it* is sought.
3. Nautae vēla dabunt $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{modo} \\ \text{dum} \\ \text{dummodo} \end{array} \right\}$ venti secundī sint. The sailors will set sail *provided that* the winds are favorable. [**secundus**, -a, -um, 'favorable']
4. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Dum} \\ \text{Dummodo} \\ \text{Modo} \end{array} \right\}$ nē tibi noceam, faciam quid dēbeam. *Provided that I do not harm* you, I shall do what I must.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION (Unit 18A)

Frequently relative and other subordinate clauses within clauses whose verbs are in the subjunctive have verbs which are attracted into the subjunctive provided that the subordinate clause is an integral part of the idea of the main clause.

1. Rōmam ire volō ut tēctum in quō vixerit poēta clārissimus videam. I want to go to Rome to see the house in which the very famous poet *lived*.
2. Tam crūdēlis erat ut omnis populus dum vīveret eum timēret. He was so cruel that all the people while *he lived* feared him.
3. Quis est quī tēctum in quō vīvat poēta clārissimus vidēre velit? Who is there who wants to see the house in which the very famous poet *lives*?

CLAUSES OF DOUBTING (Unit 17B)

Num or **an** + subjunctive is used after a positive expression of doubting; **quīn** + subjunctive after a negative one.

1. Dubitō **num veniat**. I doubt *whether (that) he is coming (he will come)*.
2. Dubitāvērunt **an hoc facerēmus**. They doubted *whether (that) we were doing (would do) this*.
3. Dubitāsne **num diē cōstitutā adventūrī sint?** Do you doubt *whether (that) they will arrive* on the day which has been decided?
4. Nōn est dubium **quīn tē timeat**. There isn't a doubt (*but*) *that he fears* you.
5. Quis dubitet **quīn impius sit?** Who would doubt (*but*) *that he is* wicked?

CLAUSES OF PREVENTION (Unit 17C)

If the verb of prevention is positive, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by **quōminus** or **nē**; if negative, by **quōminus** or **quīn**.

1. Hostēs cōpiās nostrās dētterrūrunt $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quōminus} \\ \text{nē} \end{array} \right\}$ **advenīrent**. The enemy prevented our troops *from arriving*.
2. Ignis nōn impedit $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quīn} \\ \text{quōminus} \end{array} \right\}$ in tēctum **ingrediāmur**. The fire will not hinder *us from entering* the house.
3. Puerī obstant $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nē} \\ \text{quōminus} \end{array} \right\}$ opus tuum **perficiās?** Are the children hindering *you from completing* your work?

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (**ut** or **nē** expressed or implied + subjunctive) (Unit 16D3 and E)

1. Necessē est (**ut**) Marcus nāvibus **praesit**. It is necessary *that* Marcus *be in charge of* the ships.
2. Licet (**ut**) rēgem **videāmus**. It is permitted *for us to see* the king. OR: *We are permitted to see* the king.
3. Patriae interest **ut** hostēs **discēdant**. It is in the interest of the country *that* the enemy *withdraw*.
4. Tuā rēfert **nē** illūc eās. It is to (in) your interest *not to go* there.

Participles (Unit 5B)

A participle is a verbal adjective.

PARTICIPLES AS ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

1. Virum ā periculō **fugientem** vidimus. We saw the man *fleeing* from danger.
2. Oppidum ab hostibus **captum** incēsum est. The town *captured* by the enemy was set on fire. [**incendō**, -ere, -cendī, -cēsus, 'set on fire']
3. Servus ā tēctō domini **fugitūrus** timuit. The slave, *about to flee* from his master's house, was afraid.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

See page 376.

Gerunds (Unit 16A)

The gerund is a verbal noun found only in the singular. It lacks a nominative case which is supplied by the infinitive.

1. Timor **scribendī** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear *of writing* keeps many people from writing.

2. Rūs ivimus **venandī** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$. We went to the country for the sake *of hunting*.

OR: We went to the country to *hunt*. [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

3. Marcum **canendō** praefecimus. We put Marcus in charge of *the singing*.

4. Ad **venandum** rūs ivimus. We went to the country to *hunt*.

5. **Eundō** rūs patri placuimus. *By going* to the country we pleased our father.

BUT: Rūs ivimus **venandōrum animālium** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$. We went to the country to

hunt animals. [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of'] (The gerundive is used instead of a gerund with an object.)

Gerundives (Unit 16B)

The gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is frequently used instead of a gerund which governs an object except when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun.

1. Timor librōrum **scribendōrum** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear *of writing* books keeps many people from writing.

2. Multi linguam antiquam **discendam** odērunt. Many people hate *learning* an ancient language. [**lingua**, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

3. Linguā antiquā **discendā** ūtimur. We enjoy *learning* an ancient language. [**lingua**, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

4. Rōmam ad Caesarem **videndum** ivimus. We went to Rome to *see* Caesar. [**Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar']

5. Rōmam Caesaris **videndī** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$ ivimus. We went to Rome for the sake of

seeing (to *see*) Caesar. [**Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar'; **grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

Supines (Unit 17D)

The supine is a verbal noun which occurs only in the accusative and ablative singular. The accusative case is used, without a preposition, to express purpose after a verb of motion, and the ablative, with certain adjectives, expresses respect.

1. Rōmam Caesarem **vīsum** ivimus. We went to Rome *to see* Caesar. [**Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar']
2. Ā periculō **fugitum** cucurrimus. We ran *to flee* from danger.
3. Librum — mirābile **dictū**! — perfēcimus. We have finished the book — wonderful *to say*! [**mīrābilis**, -e, 'wonderful, marvelous']

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb or expression of the head, the apodosis is recast in the subject accusative and infinitive construction; the protasis will have its verb in the subjunctive, regardless of its mood in the direct statement. Observe the following:

Simple (General) Conditions

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive is relative to that of the main verb of the head.

PROTASIS: The verb is in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciunt, cōnsul eōs opprimit.

If they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciant, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He says (will say) that, if they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He said that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciēbant, cōnsul eōs opprimēbat.

If they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcierint, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He says (will say) that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul had oppressed them.

Future More Vivid Conditions and Future Less Vivid Conditions

Note that no distinction is made between these two kinds of conditions in indirect statement.

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive will always be future.

PROTASIS: The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

MORE VIVID:

Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {faciant
fēcerint}, cōnsul eōs opprimet.

If {they plot
plot (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul will oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {faciant
fēcerint}, cōnsul eōs opprimat.

If {they should plot
should plot (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

MORE VIVID:

Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {faciant
fēcerint}, cōnsulem eōs oppres-
sūrum esse.

He says (will say) that, if {they plot
plot (will have plotted)} against the state, the
consul will oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {faciant
fēcerint}, cōnsulem eōs oppres-
sūrum esse.

He says (will say) that, if {they should plot
should plot (should have plotted)} against the
state, the consul would oppress them.

MORE VIVID:

Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {facerent
fēcissent}, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum
esse.

He said that, if {they plotted
plotted (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul
would oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {facerent
fēcissent}, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum
esse.

He said that, if {they should plot
should plot (should have plotted)} against the state, the
consul would oppress them.

Present and Past Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the infinitive is always composed of the future active participle plus *fuisse*.

PROTASIS: The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is the same as it would have been in the direct statement, *regardless* of the tense sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsul eōs opprimeret.

If they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsul eōs oppressisset.

If they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He says (will say) that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He says (will say) that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He said that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

CONDITIONS IN OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb of commanding, fearing, or the like, the observations made above about the protasis of each type of condition will apply, but the apodosis will be recast in

the appropriate construction dependent on the verb of commanding, fearing, or the like.

Sī Caesar veniet, vincet. If Caesar comes, he will conquer.

Timeō, *sī* Caesar veniat, nē vincat (*victūrus* sit). I fear that, if Caesar comes, he will conquer.

ADDITIONAL RULES

A collective noun usually takes a verb in the singular, but the plural is found when individuals are thought of: **Quisque domum ire voluērunt**, ‘Each one wanted to go home’.

A compound subject, even when the subjects are singular, takes a verb in the plural: **Māterne et pater tuus venient?** ‘Will your mother and father come?’ When the compound subject is in different persons, the verb is usually in the first person rather than the second person and in the second person rather than the third person: **Sī tū et tuus frāter domum ībitis, ego et mea soror illūc ībimus**, ‘If you and your brother go home, my sister and I will go there’. When there is a compound subject in the third person, the verb may agree with the nearest one: **Multi pueri parvi et ūna puella parva aderat**, ‘Many little boys and one little girl were present’.

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: **nōn numquam**, ‘sometimes’; **nōn nulli**, ‘some’; **Nēmō nōn veniet**, ‘Everyone will come’; **Nōn possum nōn venire**, ‘I must come’.

When several nouns of different gender are described by one adjective, the masculine gender predominates over the feminine if *persons* are being described; if *things* of different genders are described by one adjective, the adjective will be neuter: **Meus frāter sororque sunt pii**, ‘My brother and sister are pious’; **Virtūs et vigor sunt bona**, ‘Courage and vigor are good’. Sometimes the adjective will agree with the nearest noun: **Virtūs et vigor sunt bonus**, ‘Courage and vigor are good’.

There is no one word in Latin for “yes” or for “no”. Sometimes the verb is repeated for “yes” or repeated with **nōn** for “no”: **Venisne?**, ‘Are you coming?’ **Veniō**, ‘Yes’. **Nōn veniō**, ‘No’. There are other ways of saying “yes” including: **aiō, etiam, ita, vērō, certē**. Some ways of saying “no” are: **negō, nōn, minimē, nullō modō, nōn quidem**.

Nescio quis is used as an indefinite pronoun meaning ‘someone or other’ and **nescio quid**, ‘something or other’. **Quis** and **quid** are declined, but **nescio** remains the same: **Nescio quis clāmābat**, ‘Someone or other kept shouting’; **Nescio quem dāmnāverunt**, ‘They condemned someone or other’; **Nescio quid dixit**, ‘He said something or other’. Note that this phrase does not introduce an indirect question.

ROMAN NAMES

Roman citizens usually had three names: the **praenōmen** (or personal name), the **nōmen** (or family name), the **cōgnōmen** (the name designating the branch of the family).

e.g. Marcus Tullius Cicero
 Gaius Julius Caesar
 Publius Vergilius Maro

The **praenōmina** were relatively few in number and were customarily abbreviated in the following way:

A.	= Aulus	P.	= Publius
App.	= Appius	Q.	= Quintus
C.	= Gaius	Ser.	= Servius
Cn.	= Gnaeus	Sex.	= Sextus
D.	= Decimus	Sp.	= Spurius
L.	= Lucius	T.	= Titus
M.	= Marcus	Ti.	= Tiberius
M'.	= Manius		

A NOTE ON QUANTITATIVE RHYTHM

Accentual or *qualitative* rhythm in poetry is based on a sequence of stressed and unstressed syllables.

∪ / ∪ / ∪ / ∪
 By brooks too broad for leaping
 ∪ / ∪ / ∪ /
 The light-foot lads are laid.
 ∪ / ∪ / ∪ / ∪
 And rose-lipt girls are sleeping
 ∪ / ∪ / ∪ /
 In fields where roses fade.

(A. E. Housman)

The rhythm of classical Latin poetry is *quantitative*, not *qualitative*. It is based on a sequence of syllables which are *temporally* long or short; that is, a long syllable takes more time to pronounce than a short one. To give a rough illustration, one might say that a long syllable is equivalent to a half note while the short syllable is equivalent to a quarter note. On the most basic level, this rhythmic scheme admits of no stress, although one syllable in each foot does in practice receive a *slight* accent which is called **ictus** [**ictus**, -ūs, M., 'blow, beat'].

In order to *scan* or construct a schematic representation of a line of verse, the quantitative length of each of the syllables in that line must be determined. In working this out, division into words is disregarded and the entire line is considered as one cluster of sounds. The rules for syllabification and for determining the quantitative length of syllables are the same as those given in the Introduction (pp. 2–3): A syllable is *long by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is *long by position* if it contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants. The letter **x** (= **ks**) is said to be a double consonant. The letters **qu** (= **kw**) function as one sound cluster; the **u** is not a separate syllable. The combination **qu** does not make for length by position. **EXCEPTION:** When the two consonants following a vowel are a mute (plosive) (**p, b, t, d, c(k), g**) followed by **l** or **r**, the poet has the license to regard the syllable as either long or short.

According to this scheme, the following verses are scanned as shown:

— — ∪ — — — ∪ — ∪ — — — ∪
 Quem bāsiābis ? Cui labella mordēbis?
 (Catullus 8.19; p. 124)

— ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — — — — ∪ ∪ — ∪
 Quem recitās meus est, Ō Fidentine, libellus:
 — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪
 sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus.
 (Martial 1.38; p. 124)

— — — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪
 Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque finem.
 (Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.199; p. 191)

Note that the symbol — is used for long syllables, and ∪ is used for short syllables. Do not confuse the symbol for long syllables with the macron, which is used to mark long vowels.

Occasionally, *elision*, or the full or partial suppression of a final syllable, occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry. Elision is found in the following instances:

1. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or diphthong:

∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — — — — ∪ ∪ — ∪
 ...revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
 (Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.202; p. 191)

Note that the quantity of the full syllable formed by elision is determined by the length (natural or positional) of the second of the two original syllables. In the example above, the syllable is short because the first syllable of **animōs** is short.

2. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel preceded by **h**:

$\overset{\vee}{\text{A}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{h}} \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{c}} \overset{\vee}{\text{a}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{q}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{u}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{t}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{i}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{s}}$
 Adeste, hendecasyllabi, quot estis

(Catullus 42.1)

3. When a word ending in a vowel followed by **m** is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or a vowel preceded by **h**:

$\text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{N}} \overset{\vee}{\text{u}} \overset{\vee}{\text{l}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{f}} \overset{\vee}{\text{i}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{u}} \overset{\vee}{\text{n}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{i}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{n}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{f}} \overset{\vee}{\text{o}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{d}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{r}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{t}} \text{ — } \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{a}}$
 Nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit unquam in foedere tanta

(Catullus 87.3; p. 174)

There is some dispute as to whether elision means the total omission in pronunciation of the first of the two syllables or a more rapid combination of the two sounds in order to fit them into the reduced temporal allotment. In order to acquaint himself or herself with the rules for elision and also to acquire some sense of Latin rhythm, the beginner would do well to omit the first of the two syllables when reading the line aloud. Once some degree of security has been acquired, the reader may, if desired, experiment with the rapid combination of the sounds.

In addition to scanning the lines as we have done, it is possible to divide them into smaller measures of time called “feet”. A “foot” is a measure composed of a sequence of long and short syllables. The type or types of feet employed in a given line of verse determine the rhythm of that verse. The following feet are basic and appear in some of the selections in this book:

— ∨ ∨	dactyl
— —	spondee
∨ ∨ —	anapest
∨ —	iamb
— ∨	trochee
— ∨ ∨ —	choriamb

The scansion of the following lines of verse shows the quantities of the various syllables as well as the division into feet (indicated by |):

$\text{ — } \text{ — } | \overset{\vee}{\text{q}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — } | \overset{\vee}{\text{c}} \text{ — } | \overset{\vee}{\text{u}} \text{ — } | \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{t}}$
 Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
 $\text{ — } \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{p}} \overset{\vee}{\text{a}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{f}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{d}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{u}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{f}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{i}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{n}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{e}} \text{ — } | \text{ — } \overset{\vee}{\text{m}}$
 Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque finem.

The rhythmic analysis of Latin poetry is both intricate and fascinating. Although the observations offered above have been necessarily simplified, they should

help to give at least an initial impression of the rhythm and the music of the selections of poetry encountered at this early stage in one's study of the Latin language and literature. By applying these rules, it will be possible to read the selections in this book with some attention to their rhythm and so with greater appreciation.

NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
I	ūnus, -a, -um 'one'	prīmus, -a, -um 'first'	singulī, -ae, -a 'one by one, one each'	semel 'once'
II	duo, duae, duo 'two'	secundus, -a, -um (alter, altera, alterum) 'second'	bini, -ae, -a 'two by two, two each'	bis 'twice'
III	trēs, tria 'three'	tertius, -a, -um 'third'	ternī, -ae, -a (trīnī, -ae, -a) 'three by three, three each'	ter 'three times'
IV (IIII)	quattuor ¹ 'four'	quārtus, -a, -um 'fourth'	quaternī, -ae, -a 'four by four, four each'	quater 'four times'
V	quinque	quīntus, -a, -um	quīnī, -ae, -a	quīnquīē(n)s
VI	sex	sextus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a	sexiē(n)s
VII	septem	septimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a	septiē(n)s
VIII	octo	octāvus, -a, -um	octōnī, -ae, -a	octiē(n)s
IX (VIIII)	novem	nōnus, -a, -um	novēnī, -ae, -a	noviē(n)s
X	decem	decimus, -a, -um	dēnī, -ae, -a	deciē(n)s

¹ Unless otherwise specified, the numbers are indeclinable.

NUMERALS—cont.

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
XI	undecim	undecimus, -a, -um	undēnī, -ae, -a	undeciē(n)s
XII	duodecim	duodecimus, -a, -um	duodēnī, -ae, -a	duodeciē(n)s
XIII	tredecim (decem [et] trēs)	tertius, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um (decimus, -a, -um [et] tertius, -a, -um)	ternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	ter deciē(n)s
XIV (XIIII)	quattuordecim	quārtus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quaternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quater deciē(n)s
XV	quindecim	quīntus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quīnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquiē(n)s deciē(n)s (quīndecī[n]s)
XVI	sēdecim	sextus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	sexiē(n)s deciē(n)s (sēdeciē[n]s)
XVII	septendecim	septimus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	septiē(n)s deciē(n)s
XVIII	duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (octāvus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um)	octōnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (duodēvīcēnī, -ae, -a)	duodēvīciē(n)s (octiē[n]s deciē[n]s)

XIX (XVIII)	ūndēvīgintī (noventdecim)	ūndēvīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (nōnus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um)	novēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (ūndēvīcēnī, -ae, -a)	ūndēvīciē(n)s (noviē[n]s deciē[n]s)
XX	vīgintī	vīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (vīgēnsimus, -a, -um)	vīcēnī, -ae, -a	vīciē(n)s
XXI	vīgintī ūnus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vīgintī)	vīcē(n)simus, -a, -um přimus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vīcē[n]simus, -a, -um)	vīcēnī, -ae, -a singulī, -ae, -a	semel et vīciē(n)s (vīciē[n]s semel)
XXX	trīgintā	trīcē(n)simus, -a, -um	trīcēnī, -ae, -a	trīciē(n)s
XL (XXXX)	quadrāgintā	quadrāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a	quadrāgiē(n)s
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquāgiē(n)s
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	sexāgēnī, -ae, -a	sexāgiē(n)s
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	septuāgēnī, -ae, -a	septuāgiē(n)s
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgē(n)simus, -a, -um	octōgēnī, -ae, -a	octōgiē(n)s
XC (LXXXX)	nōnāgintā	nōnāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	nōnāgēnī, -ae, -a	nōnāgiē(n)s
C	centum	centē(n)simus, -a, -um	centēnī, -ae, -a	centiē(n)s

NUMERALS—*cont.*

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentē(n)simus, -a, -um	ducēnī, -ae, -a	ducentiē(n)s
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentē(n)simus, -a, -um	trecēnī, -ae, -a	trecentiē(n)s
CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadringēnī, -ae, -a	quadringentiē(n)s
D	quingentī, -ae, -a	quingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	quingēnī, -ae, -a	quingentiē(n)s
DC	sēscētī, -ae, -a	sēscētē(n)simus, -a, -um	sēscēnī, -ae, -a	sēscentiē(n)s
DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	septingēnī, -ae, -a	septingentiē(n)s
DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	octingēnī, -ae, -a	octingentiē(n)s
DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentē(n)simus, -a, -um	nōngēnī, -ae, -a	nōngentiē(n)s (nōngentiē[n]s)
M	mille ²	millē(n)simus, -a, -um	millēnī, -ae, -a (singula mill[ī]ia) ³	milliē(n)s (milliē[n]s)

² The singular is indeclinable; the plural is *milia*, *-ium* (third declension *i*-stem).

³ Both parts decline.

VOCABULARIES

These lists (Latin-English and English-Latin) contain all the words necessary to do the exercises in this book. Words that are glossed in the main body of the text and that do not appear in the formal Unit Vocabularies are not included.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The entry (1) after a verb form indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*. The numbers in the left-hand column refer to the Unit in which the word or phrase first appears.

UNIT

A

- 2 **ā, ab** (*prep. + abl.*), (away) from; by (*only with living beings*)
16 **abeō, abire, abii** (*abīvī*), **abitus**, go away, depart
15 **absēns, absentis**, absent
15 **absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus**, be away, be absent
6 **ac or atque** (*conj.*), and
5 **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessus**, go to, approach
14 **accidō, accidere, accidī, --**, fall upon; happen, occur
12 **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**, receive, accept; hear
8 **ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, keen, fierce
3 **acerbus, acerba, acerbum**, bitter, harsh
2 **ad** (*prep. + acc.*), to, toward
14 **adeō** (*adv.*), so, so much, so far
13 **admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, F.**, admiration
15 **adsum, adesse, adfuī, --**, be present
13 **adulēscēns, adulēscētis**, young, youthful
14 **adveniō, advenire, advēnī, adventus**, come to, arrive
16 **adversus, adversa, adversum**, opposite, hostile, adverse
18 **aestimō** (1), estimate, reckon
17 **aetās, aetātis, F.**, time of life, age, life
4 **aeternus, aeterna, aeternum**, eternal; **in aeternum**, forever
10 **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus**, bring to, present
3 **ager, agrī, M.**, field
11 **aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum**, go to, approach

UNIT

- 15 **agitō** (1), disturb, stir up
 4 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**, do, drive, discuss, spend (*time*), conduct
 9 **aiō** (*defective verb*), say, affirm (*present aiō, ais, ait, --, --, aiunt; imperfect aiēbam, etc., complete; present subjunctive --, aiās, aiat, --, --, aiant*)
- 16 **aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum**, belonging to another, strange, out of place
 13 **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** (*adj.*), some, any
 13 **aliquis, aliquid** (*pron.*), someone, something; anyone, anything
 10 **alius, alia, aliud**, other, another; **alius...alius**, one...another; **aliī...**
aliī, some...others
- 10 **alter, altera, alterum**, the other (*of two*)
 4 **altus, alta, altum**, high, tall, deep
 1 **ambulō** (1), walk
 9 **amīcītia, amīcītiaē, F.**, friendship
 4 **amicus, amīca, amīcum**, friendly (+ *dat.*)
 16 **āmittō, āmittere, āmisī, āmissus**, let go, lose
 7 **amō** (1), love
 7 **amor, amōris, M.**, love
 12 **an** (*conj.*), or (*introducing the second part of a double question*); whether (*introducing a single indirect question*); --...**an**, whether...or; --...**an nōn**, whether...or not (*in direct double questions*)
- 2 **anima, animae, F.**, soul, spirit, life force
 17 **animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus**, turn one's attention to, notice
- 6 **animal, animālis, animālium, N.**, animal
 14 **animus, animī, M.**, mind, rational spirit, soul
 7 **annus, annī, M.**, year
 5 **ante** (*prep. + acc.; adv.*), before, in front of; *as adverb* before, previously
 15 **antequam** (*conj.*), before
 5 **antīquus, antīqua, antīquum**, ancient
 16 **aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus**, open
 15 **appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus**, appear, come in sight, be apparent
 10 **apud** (*prep. + acc.*), at, near, among; at the house of
 1 **aqua, aquae, F.**, water
 2 **āra, ārae, F.**, altar
 11 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**, think, believe, judge
 5 **ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsus**, burn, be on fire; desire
 5 **arma, armōrum, N. pl.**, arms, weapons
 10 **ars, artis, artium, F.**, skill, art

UNIT

- 18 **as, assis, assium, M.**, as (*a small denomination of money*)
 7 **Asia, Asiae, F.**, Asia
 6 **Athēnae, Athēnārum, F. pl.**, Athens
 6 **atque or ac (conj.)**, and
 7 **auctor, auctōris, M.**, producer, founder, author
 14 **auctōritās, auctōritātis, F.**, authority
 10 **audācia, audāciae, F.**, boldness, courage
 10 **audāx, audācis**, bold, courageous
 11 **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**, dare
 3 **audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus**, hear, listen (to)
 10 **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus**, carry away
 12 **aura, aurae, F.**, breeze, wind, air
 5 **aureus, aurea, aureum**, golden, of gold
 6 **aurōra, aurōrae, F.**, dawn
 5 **aurum, aurī, N.**, gold
 14 **aut (conj.)**, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or
 5 **autem (postpositive conj.)**, however, moreover
 10 **auxilium, auxiliū, N.**, aid

B

- 3 **bellum, bellī, N.**, war
 5 **bene (adv.)**, well
 3 **bonus, bona, bonum**, good

C

- 9 **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus**, fall
 3 **caecus, caeca, caecum**, blind, hidden, secret
 4 **caelum, caelī, N.**, heaven, sky
 15 **calamitās, calamitātis, F.**, disaster, calamity
 3 **campus, campī, M.**, plain, level surface
 5 **canō, canere, cecinī, cantus**, sing (of)
 2 **capio, capere, cēpī, captus**, take, capture
 6 **careō, carēre, caruī, caritus**, lack, be without (+ *abl.*)
 8 **carmen, carminis, N.**, song, poem, incantation
 14 **Carthāgō, Carthāginis, F.**, Carthage (*a city on the coast of North Africa*)
 4 **cārus, cāra, cārum**, dear (+ *dat.*)
 9 **cāsus, cāsūs, M.**, fall, accident, occurrence, chance
 16 **causa, causae, F.**, cause, reason; **causā (preceded by gen.)**, for the sake of

UNIT

- 5 cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus, go, move, yield
 13 celer, celeris, celere, swift
 17 celeritās, celeritātis, *F.*, speed, swiftness
 2 cella, cellae, *F.*, storeroom, (small) room
 2 cēlō (1), hide, conceal
 11 cēna, cēnae, *F.*, dinner
 10 certus, certa, certum, certain, sure
 4 cibus, cibī, *M.*, food
 18 cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, gird
 4 circum (*prep.* + *acc.*), around
 7 cīvis, cīvis, cīvium, *M. or F.*, citizen
 8 cīvitās, cīvitātis, *F.*, citizenship; state
 1 clāmō (1), shout
 3 clārus, clāra, clārum, bright, clear, famous
 10 coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began (*defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system*)
 2 cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider
 5 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn; *in perfect* know
 14 colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, speak, talk, converse with
 12 comes, comitis, *M. or F.*, companion
 10 cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, collect; compare; *reflexive sē cōnferre*, take oneself (*i.e., to a place*), go
 7 cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, complete
 11 cōnfitēor, cōnfitēri, cōnfessus sum, confess
 10 coniūnx, coniugis, *M. or F.*, husband, wife, spouse
 11 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt
 9 cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, *N.*, counsel, plan, advice
 13 cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstitūi, cōnstitūtus, set, establish, decide
 11 cōnsul, cōnsulis, *M.*, consul
 15 contrā (*prep.* + *acc.; adv.*), against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn
 12 cōpia, cōpiae, *F.*, abundance, supply; *pl.* troops
 1 corōna, corōnae, *F.*, crown, wreath
 1 corōnō (1), crown
 6 corpus, corporis, *N.*, body
 16 cottidiē or cotidiē (*adv.*), daily
 11 crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust (*+ dat.*)
 9 crūdēlis, crūdēle, cruel

UNIT

- 2 **culpa, culpae, F.**, guilt, fault
 1 **cum** (*prep. + abl.*), with
 15 **cum** (*conj.*), when, since, although
 11 **cupidus, cupida, cupidum**, desirous, eager, fond of (+ *gen.*)
 12 **cūr** (*adv.*), why, for what reason
 1 **cūra, cūrae, F.**, care, concern, anxiety
 13 **currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus**, run
 10 **custōs, custōdis, M.**, guardian

D

- 2 **dāmnō** (1), condemn, sentence
 1 **dē** (*prep. + abl.*), concerning, about; (down) from
 4 **dea, deae, F.**, goddess
 5 **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus**, owe, ought
 16 **decōrus, decōra, decōrum**, fitting, suitable; handsome
 17 **dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus**, defend
 10 **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**, bring away, bring down, offer; report
 4 **dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus**, destroy
 12 **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**, select, choose, gather
 9 **dēmēns, dēmentis**, mad, raving
 17 **dēnique** (*adv.*), finally, at last
 15 **dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi, --**, stop, cease (*frequently with infinitive or ablative*)
 17 **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstīfī, dēstītus**, stop, desist
 16 **dēsūm, dēesse, dēfuī, --**, be missing, fail (*often + dat.*)
 17 **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrūi, dēterrītus**, deter, prevent, hinder, keep from
 4 **deus, deī, M.**, god, deity (*nom. pl. dī; gen. pl. deōrum or deum; dat. & abl. pl. dīs*)
 3 **dexter, dextra, dextrum**, right (*as opposed to left*), favorable
 3 **dextra, dextrae, F.**, right hand; **ad dextram**, to the right
 6 **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dīctus**, say, tell, speak
 8 **diēs, diēi, M.**, day
 10 **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus**, differ
 9 **difficilis, difficile**, difficult
 14 **dīgnus, dīgna, dīgnum**, worthy, deserving, suitable (+ *abl.*)
 3 **dīligentia, dīligentiae, F.**, diligence
 5 **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus**, go from, depart, leave
 16 **discō, discere, didicī, --**, learn
 9 **dissimilis, dissimile**, dissimilar, unlike (+ *gen. or dat.*)

UNIT

- 6 **diū** (*adv.*), for a long time
diūtius (*adv.*), comparative of **diū**
- 11 **dīvitiae, dīvitiārum**, *F. pl.*, riches, wealth
- 1 **dō, dare, dedī, datus**, give, grant
- 10 **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus**, teach
doctus, -a, -um, learned
- 14 **dolor, dolōris**, *M.*, pain, grief, sorrow
- 5 **dominus, domini**, *M.*, master, lord
- 6; 8 **domus, domūs/domī**, *F.*, house, home
- 15 **dōnec** (*conj.*), while, until, as long as
- 1 **dōnō** (1), give, present, reward
- 3 **dōnum, dōnī**, *N.*, gift
- 2; 18 **dubitō** (1), hesitate (*with infinitive*); doubt (*with indirect question or quīn + subjunctive*)
- 17 **dubium, dubi**, *N.*, doubt, hesitation
- 17 **dubius, dubia, dubium**, doubtful
- 4 **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**, lead; consider
- 8 **dulcis, dulce**, sweet, pleasant
- 15 **dum** (*conj.*), while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
- 15 **dummodo** (*conj.*), if only, provided that
- 13 **duo, duae, duo**, two
- 5 **dūrus, dūra, dūrum**, hard, harsh
- 11 **dux, ducis**, *M. or F.*, leader, guide

E

- 1 **ē, ex** (*prep. + abl.*), out of, from
- 10 **effērō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, carry out; bring forth
- 14 **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus**, effect, bring about
- 7 **ego, mei** (*pron.*), I
- 11 **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum**, go out, go away
- 18 **emō, emere, emī, emptus**, buy
- 1 **enim** (*postpositive conj.*), indeed, of course
- 8 **eō, ire, iī (ivī), itus**, go
- 10 **errō** (1), wander, err
- 1 **et** (*conj.*), and; *adv.* even; **et...et**, both...and
- 14 **etiam** (*adv.*), even
- 15 **etsī** (*conj.*), although, even if (+ *indicative*)
ex, see **ē**
- 6 **exemplar, exemplāris, exemplārium**, *N.*, copy, model, example
- 6 **exemplum, exempli**, *N.*, example

UNIT

- 15 **exiguus, exigua, exiguum**, small
 12 **exorior, exoriri, exortus sum**, rise, arise, appear, start
 2 **expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus**, push out, drive out
 11 **experior, experiri, expertus sum**, try, put to the test, experience
 12 **expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus**, set forth, expose, explain
 15 **exspectō (1)**, wait (for), expect

F

- 9 **facilis, facile (adj.)**, easy; **facile (adv.)**, easily
 4; 18; 14 **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, make, do; *with gen. of indefinite value*
 reckon, consider; **facere ut**, to see to it that (+ *subjunctive*)
 4 **factum, factī, N.**, deed
 1 **fāma, fāmae, F.**, talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation
 11 **familia, familiae, F.**, household, family
 11 **fateor, fatēri, fassus sum**, confess
 13 **faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus**, be favorable, favor (+ *dat.*)
 8 **fēlix, fēlicis**, happy, fortunate
 1 **fēmina, fēminae, F.**, woman
 10 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, bring, carry, bear, endure
 5 **ferrum, ferri, N.**, iron, sword
 8 **fidēs, fidei, F.**, faith, trust, trustworthiness
 10 **figūra, figūrae, F.**, figure, form, shape
 4 **fīlia, fīliae, F.**, daughter
 4 **fīlius, fīlii, M.**, son
 7 **fīnis, finis, finium, M.**, end, boundary, limit
 13 **fīō, fieri, factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become (*serves as the*
 passive for faciō, -ere)
 5 **flamma, flammae, F.**, flame, fire
 11 **flūmen, flūminis, N.**, river, running water
 10 **foedus, foederis, N.**, pact, treaty, agreement
 15 **fore = futūrus (-a, -um) esse** (*future infinitive of sum*)
 1 **fōrma, fōrmae, F.**, form, shape, figure, beauty
 15 **fors, fortis, fortium, F.**, chance
 8 **fortis, forte**, strong, brave
 11 **forum, fori, N.**, open space, market place, public square
 6 **frāter, frātris, M.**, brother
 8 **frīgidus, frīgida, frīgidum**, cold
 8 **frūctus, frūctūs, M.**, enjoyment; fruit; profit; **frūctūi esse** to be (for
 [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset to (+ *dat.*)
 16 **frūstrā (adv.)**, in vain

UNIT

- 10 **fuga, fugae, F.**, flight
 10 **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, flee
 8 **fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, --**, flash, shine
 15 **fulgor, fulgōris, M.**, lightning, flash, brightness

G

- Gallus, Gallī, M.**, a Gaul
 10 **gaudium, gaudiī, N.**, joy
 10 **gēns, gentis, gentium, F.**, race, people
 7 **genus, generis, N.**, descent, origin, race, sort
 3 **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, conduct, manage, wage
 3 **gladius, gladii, M.**, sword
 2 **glōria, glōriae, F.**, glory, renown
 9 **gracilis, gracile**, slender, unadorned, simple
 11 **gradior, gradī, gressus sum**, step, walk
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek
 15 **grātus, grāta, grātum**, pleasing (+ *dat.*)
 8 **gravis**, grave, heavy, severe, important

H

- 1 **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**, have, hold, possess, consider
 13 **heri (adv.)**, yesterday
 13 **hīc (adv.)**, here
 7 **hic, haec, hoc**, this, the latter
 6 **homō, hominis, M.**, human being, man
 4 **honestus, honesta, honestum**, respected, honorable, distinguished
 18 **honor, honōris, M.**, honor, distinction, office
 7 **hōra, hōrae, F.**, hour, season
 12 **horridus, horrida, horridum**, horrible, rough
 11 **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, urge, encourage (+ *ut or nē and subjunctive*)
 9 **hospes, hospitis, M.**, guest, host
 12 **hostīlis, hostīle**, of an enemy, hostile
 7 **hostis, hostis, hostium, M.**, enemy, public enemy (the plural is frequently translated collectively as 'enemy')
 14 **hūc (adv.)**, to this place
 9 **humilis, humile**, humble, lowly

UNIT

I

- 8 **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, throw
- 8 **iacō** (1), throw, scatter, shake; boast
- 10 **iam** (*adv.*), now, by this time, already, soon
- 12 **ibi** (*adv.*), there; then
- 12 **īdem, eadem, idem**, same
- 15 **igitur** (*postpositive conj.*), therefore
- 6 **ignis, ignis, ignium**, *M.*, fire (*abl. sing. igne or ignī*)
- 13 **ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus**, be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ *dat.*)
- 7 **ille, illa, illud**, that, the former
- 13 **illic** (*adv.*), there
- 14 **illūc** (*adv.*), to that place, up to that time
- 12 **immortālis, immortalē**, immortal, everlasting
- 17 **impediō, impedire, impedivī (impediū), impeditus**, deter, impede, prevent
- 11 **imperātor, imperātōris**, *M.*, commander, general
- 5 **imperium, imperiū**, *N.*, authority, power, empire
- 5 **imperō** (1), give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s). (*The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by ut or nē with the subjunctive.*)
- 5 **impius, impia, impium**, irreverent, wicked, impious
- 1 **impleō, implere, implēvī, implētus**, fill, fill up
- 1 **in** (*prep. + acc. or abl.*), into, onto (*motion toward—requires accusative*);
in, on (*place where—requires ablative*)
- 10 **incertus, incerta, incertum**, uncertain, unsure
- 2 **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus**, begin
- 2 **incola, incolae**, *M. (occasionally F.)*, inhabitant
- 2 **incolō, incolere, incolūī, --**, inhabit
- 14 **indignus, indigna, indignum**, unworthy, unsuitable (+ *abl.*)
- 8 **infēlix, infēlicis**, unhappy, unfortunate
- 10 **īferō, īferre, intulī, illātus**, carry into; inflict
- 16 **īfirmus, īfirma, īfirmum**, weak, unhealthy
- 15 **ingenium, ingenii**, *N.*, nature, talent, disposition, natural quality
- 8 **ingēns, ingentis**, huge
- 11 **ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum**, go into, enter, advance, begin
- 15 **inimīcītia, inimīcītae**, *F.*, hostility
- 4 **inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum**, unfriendly, hostile (+ *dat.*)
- 2 **īnsīdiae, īnsīdiārum**, *F. (used only in pl.)*, ambush, plot, treachery
- 16 **īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitutus**, set (up), establish, arrange
- 1 **īnsula, īnsulae**, *F.*, island

UNIT

- 4 **intellegō, intellegere, intelligēxi, intelligētus**, understand
 14 **intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus**, stretch out, extend, aim, exert
 14 **inter** (*prep.* + *acc.*), between, among
 15 **interdum** (*adv.*), sometimes
 16 **interest, interesse, interfuit**, --, it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest
 5 **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus**, kill
 5 **invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus**, go into, invade, attack
 7 **inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus**, come upon, discover, find
 2 **invidia, invidiae, F.**, envy, jealousy
 12 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, self, very
 8 **īra, īrae, F.**, wrath, anger
 13 **īrātus, īrāta, īrātum**, angry
 7 **is, ea, id**, this, that; he, she, it
 12 **iste, ista, istud**, that (of yours), that (*with pejorative sense*)
 14 **ita** (*adv.*), so, in this way
 6 **Italia, Italiae, F.**, Italy
 10 **iter, itineris, N.**, journey, route
 8 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus**, order, command (+ *infinitive*, not with an *ut* clause of indirect command)
 15 **iūdex, iūdicis, M.**, judge, jury
 15 **iūdicium, iūdicū, N.**, trial, judgment, decision
 10 **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus**, join
 6 **Iūnō, Iūnōnis, F.**, Juno (*sister and wife of Jupiter*)
 6 **Iuppiter, Iovis, M.**, Jupiter (*god of the sky*)
 13 **iūs, iūris, N.**, right, law
 12 **iussum, iussī, N.**, command, order (*the abl. sing. is iussū*, by order)
 11 **iuvenis, iuvenis, M. or F.** (*not i-stem*), youth, young person

L

- 16 **lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum**, slip, glide, fall
 2 **labōrō** (1), work
 2 **lacrima, lacrimae, F.**, tear
 3 **laetus, laeta, laetum**, happy
 9 **laudō** (1), praise
 9 **laus, laudis, F.**, praise
 13 **lēgātus, lēgātī, M.**, legate, envoy
 4 **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus**, choose, select; read
 16 **lēx, lēgis, F.**, law

UNIT

- 16 **libenter** (*adv.*), freely, willingly, gladly
 3 **liber, libera, liberum**, free
 4 **liber, libri**, *M.*, book
 6 **liberō** (1), free
 8 **libertās, libertātis**, *F.*, freedom
 16 **licet, licēre, licuit** (*licitum est*), it is permitted
 4 **littera, litterae**, *F.*, letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.* letter (*epistle*)
 8 **lītus, lītoris**, *N.*, shore, beach
 7 **locus, locī**, *M.*, place, spot
 8 **longus, longa, longum**, long; **longē** (*adv.*), far off, at a distance, far and wide
 11 **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**, speak, talk
 6 **lūmen, lūminis**, *N.*, light
 2 **lūna, lūnae**, *F.*, moon, moonlight
 8 **lūx, lūcis**, *F.*, light; **primā lūce**, at the first light, at daybreak

M

- magis**, *comparative of magnopere*
 5 **magister, magistrī**, *M.*, superior, director, master, teacher
 9 **magnopere** (*adv.*), greatly
 3 **magnus, magna, magnum**, large, big, great
 9 **maior, maius**, *comparative of magnus, magna, magnum*; **maiōrēs, maiōrum**, *M. pl.*, ancestors
 9 **male** (*adv.*), badly
 11 **mālō, mālī, mālūī**, --, prefer, choose rather
 3 **malus, mala, malum**, evil, bad, wicked
 12 **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus**, remain
 8 **manus, manūs**, *F.*, hand; band, troop
 3 **Marcus, Marcī**, *M.*, Marcus (*proper name*)
 6 **mare, maris, marium**, *N.*, sea
 9 **Mārs, Mārtis**, *M.*, Mars (*god of war*)
 6 **māter, mātris**, *F.*, mother
maximus, maxima. maximum, *superlative of magnus, magna, magnum*
 5 **medius, media, medium**, middle of, middle
melior, melius, *comparative of bonus, bona, bonum*
 18 **meminī, meminisse** (*defective verb*), remember
 8 **memor, memoris**, mindful, remembering (+ *gen.*)
 15 **memoria, memoriae**, *F.*, memory
 6 **mēns, mentis, mentium**, *F.*, mind, disposition, intellect

UNIT

- 4 **mēnsa, mēnsae, F.**, table
- 17 **metuō, metuere, metuī, --**, fear
- 8 **metus, metūs, M.**, fear, dread
- 7 **meus, mea, meum**, my, mine, my own
- 6 **mīles, mīlītis, M.**, soldier
- minimus, minima, minimum**, *superlative of parvus, parva, parvum*
- 11 **minor, minārī, minātus sum**, jut forth, threaten
- minor, minus**, *comparative of parvus, parva, parvum*
- 13 **mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum**, wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire
- 15 **miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus**, mix, intermingle, blend
- 3 **miser, misera, miserum**, miserable, unhappy, wretched
- 12 **misereor, miserērī, miseritus sum**, pity (+ *gen.*)
- 16 **miseret, miserēre, miseruit (miseritum est)**, it pities, it moves to pity
- 4 **mittō, mittere, misi, missus**, send
- 12 **modus, modī, M.**, way, manner, limit; kind; **quō modō**, in what way, how
- 14; 15 **modo (adv.; conj.)**, only: just, just now, if only, provided that
- 6 **moenia, moenium, N. pl.**, (city) walls
- 2 **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**, warn, remind
- 6 **mōns, montis, montium, M.**, mountain
- 4 **mōnstrō (1)**, show, point out, demonstrate
- 2 **mora, morae, F.**, delay
- 11 **morior, morī, mortuus sum**, die
- 13 **moror, morārī, morātus sum**, delay, stay, hinder
- 7 **mors, mortis, mortium, F.**, death
- 10 **mōs, mōris, M.**, custom; *pl.* character
- 8 **mōtus, mōtūs, M.**, motion, movement
- 5 **moveō, movēre, movī, mōtus**, move
- 5 **mox (adv.)**, soon
- 9 **multum (adv.)**, much, very
- 3 **multus, multa, multum**, much, many
- 9 **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus**, fortify
- 2 **mūtō (1)**, change, exchange

N

- 9 **nam (conj.)**, for
- 11 **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, be born, descend from
- 2 **nātūra, nātūrae, F.**, nature

UNIT

- 3 **nātus, nātī, M.**, son, child
 1 **nauta, nautae, M.**, sailor
 11 **nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, F.**, ship
 3; 18 **nē (conj.)**, in order that . . . not; that (*after expressions of fearing*)
 12; 15 **nē (adv.)**, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or words they emphasize*)
 1 **-ne (enclitic)**, added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question
 12 **-ne . . . an**, whether . . . or
 12 **-ne . . . an nōn**, whether . . . or not (*in direct double questions*)
 12 **-ne . . . necne**, whether . . . or not (*in indirect double questions*)
 16 **necesse (indeclinable adj.)**, necessary
 12 **necne (conj.)**, or not (*generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing an nōn in the direct question*); **-- . . . necne**, whether . . . or not (*in indirect double questions*)
 11 **neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus**, disregard, neglect
 10 **negō (1)**, deny, say no
 13 **nēmō, nēminis, M. or F.**, no one
 17 **nemus, nemoris, N.**, grove, wood
 2 **neque or nec (conj.)**, and not, nor; **neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, neither . . . nor
 12 **nesciō, nescire, nescivī (nesciī), nescītus**, not know, be ignorant
 10 **neuter, neutra, neutrum**, neither
 2 **nihil or nīl (indeclinable noun)**, nothing
 18 **nihilum, nihilī, N.**, nothing
 2 **nisī (conj.)**, unless, if . . . not; except
 13 **noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus**, be harmful, harm (+ *dat.*)
 11 **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --**, be unwilling, wish . . . not
 8 **nōmen, nōminis, N.**, name
 1; 6 **nōn (adv.)**, not; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also
 12 **nōnne (adv.)**, in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes"; if not, whether not (*in an indirect question*)
 5 **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus**, learn; *in perfect* know
 7 **noster, nostra, nostrum**, our, ours, our own
 14 **nōtus, nōta, nōtum**, known, well-known, customary
 5 **novus, nova, novum**, new, strange
 6 **nox, noctis, noctium, F.**, night
 2 **noxa, noxae, F.**, harm, injury
 10 **nūllus, nūlla, nūllum**, no, none

UNIT

- 12 **num** (*adv.*), in a direct question, anticipates the answer "no"; whether (*in an indirect question*)
- 8 **nūmen, nūminis, N.**, divinity, divine spirit
- 18 **numerus, numerī, M.**, number
- 5 **numquam or nunquam** (*adv.*), never
- 2 **nunc** (*adv.*), now
- 14 **nūntiō** (1), report, announce
- 14 **nūntius, nūntiī, M.**, messenger, message
- 14 **nūper** (*adv.*), recently
- 15 **nusquam** (*adv.*), nowhere
- 15 **nūtrix, nūtrīcis, F.**, nurse

O

- 8 **ob** (*prep. + acc.*), on account of
- 17 **obitus, obitūs, M.**, a going down, setting; downfall, ruin
- 18 **oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītus sum**, forget
- 17 **obstō, obstāre, obstifī, obstātus**, stand in the way of, hinder (+ *dat.*)
- 15 **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsus**, fall, set, die
- 12 **occultē** (*adv.*), secretly
- 3 **oculus, oculī, M.**, eye
- 7 **ōdī, ōdisse** (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*), hate
- 9 **odium, odii, N.**, hatred
- 10 **offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus**, bring before; offer; expose
- 15 **omnīnō** (*adv.*), all in all, as a whole, entirely
- 8 **omnis, omne**, every, all
- 8 **opīniō, opīniōnis, F.**, opinion
- 16 **oportet, oportēre, oportuit, --**, it is necessary, it is proper
- 4 **oppidum, oppidī, N.**, town
- 7 **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus**, press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress
- 6 **oppūgnō** (1), attack, fight against
- 12 **ops, opis, F.**, power, strength; *pl.* resources, wealth
- optimus, optima, optimum**, *superlative of bonus, bona, bonum*
- 1 **optō** (1), desire, wish (for), choose
- 7 **opus, operis, N.**, work; **opus est**, there is need of (+ *nom. or abl. [instrumental]*) of thing needed; *less frequently gen.*)
- 13 **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, F.**, oration, speech
- 11 **ōrātor, ōrātōris, M.**, speaker

UNIT

- 10 **orbis, orbis, orbium, M.**, ring, orb, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands; the world
- 17 **orior, orīri, ortus sum**, rise, arise, begin
- 3 **ōrō (1)**, beg (for)
- 17 **ortus, ortūs, M.**, rising, source
- 14 **ōs, ōris, N.**, mouth, expression
- 14 **ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus**, show, expose, make plain

P

- 13 **paene (adv.)**, almost
- 16 **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, --**, it repents
- 13 **parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, be sparing, spare (+ *dat.*)
- 11 **parēns, parentis, M. or F.**, parent
- 13 **pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pārītus**, be obedient, obey (+ *dat.*)
- 14 **parō (1)**, prepare, make ready, provide, get
- 10 **pars, partis, partium, F.**, part
- 9 **parum (adv. and indeclinable adj.)** too little, not enough
- 9 **parvus, parva, parvum**, little, small
- 6 **pater, patris, M.**, father
- 11 **patior, patī, passus sum**, suffer, endure, allow
- 1 **patria, patriae, F.**, native land, country
- 12 **paucī, paucae, pauca**, few
- 14 **paulus, paula, paulum**, little, small (compares irregularly: **minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um**)
- 11 **pauper, pauperis**, poor
- 14 **pāx, pācis, F.**, peace
- 8 **pectus, pectoris, N.**, heart, breast
- 1 **pecūnia, pecūniae, F.**, money
- peior, peius, comparative of malus, mala, malum**
- 2 **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**, push, drive (off)
- 2 **per (prep. + acc.)**, through
- 4 **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus**, destroy, lose, waste
- 15 **pereō, perīre, perīi (perīvī), perītus**, die, perish
- 7 **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus**, accomplish, complete, finish
- 4 **periculum, periculī, N.**, danger
- 13 **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus**, be persuasive, persuade (+ *dat.*)
- 17 **pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus**, arrive (at) (+ *ad*)

UNIT

- 7 **pēs, pedis, *M.***, foot
pessimus, pessima, pessimum, *superlative of malus, mala, malum*, worst
- 3 **petō, petere, petivī, petitus**, seek (*with ā + abl.*), ask (for)
- 15 **piger, pigra, pigrum**, lazy, slow
- 16 **piget, pigēre, piguit (pigitum est)**, it disgusts
- 5 **pius, pia, pium**, loyal, dutiful, pious
- 7 **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus**, be pleasing to, please (+ *dat.*)
- 13 **plēbs, plēbis, *F.***, common people
plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum, *superlative of multus, multa, multum plūs, neuter comparative of multum; pl. plūrēs, plūra*
- 1 **poena, poenae, *F.***, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, to pay a penalty
- 1 **poēta, poētae, *M.***, poet
- 14 **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**, promise
- 4 **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, put, place, set aside
- 5 **populus, populī, *M.***, people
- 1 **porta, portae, *F.***, gate
- 3 **portō (1)**, carry
- 12 **poscō, poscere, poposci, --**, beg, demand
- 5 **possum, posse, potuī, --**, be able, can
- 5 **post (prep. + acc.; adv.)**, after, behind (*prep.*); afterwards, after, behind (*adv.*)
- 5 **postquam (conj.)**, after (+ *indicative*)
- 13 **praeferō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus**, bring (place) before, prefer
- 13 **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus**, make before (at the head of), put in command of
- 11 **praemium, praemii, *N.***, reward
- 13 **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, --**, be before (at the head of), be in command of
- 11 **precor, precārī, precātus sum**, beg, request
- 7 **premō, premere, pressī, pressus**, press, press upon, press hard
- 18 **pretium, pretii, *N.***, price; value
- 9 **prīmus, prīma, prīmum**, first; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
- 9 **prius (adv.)**, before, previously
- 15 **priusquam (conj.)**, before
- 8 **prō (prep. + abl.)**, in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for
- 11 **proficīscor, proficiscī, profectus sum**, set forth, set out, start
- 8 **profugus, profuga, profugum**, fugitive, banished, exiled
- 11 **prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum**, go forth, advance, proceed
- 17 **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus**, keep from, prohibit, prevent

UNIT

- 9 **prope** (*adv.*), near
 14 **properō** (1), hasten
propius (*adv.*), *comparative of prope*
 10 **propter** (*prep. + acc.*), on account of, because of
 15 **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui**, --, be useful, do good, benefit, profit
 (+ *dat.*)
 2 **prōvincia, prōvinciae, F.**, province
 9 **proximus, proxima, proximum**, nearest, next
 8 **pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum**, public
 16 **pudet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est)**, it shames
 2 **puella, puellae, F.**, girl
 3 **puer, puerī, M.**, boy; child
 18 **pūgna, pūgnae, F.**, battle, fight
 3 **pūgnō** (1), fight; (*with cum + abl.*), fight with (*i.e., against*)
 3 **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, beautiful
 15 **putō** (1), think

Q

- 8 **quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus**, look for, search for, seek, ask
 14 **quālis, quāle**, (of) what kind (of)
 9 **quam** (*conj.*), than (*used in comparisons*)
 8 **quam ob rem**, on account of which thing, for what reason, why
 9 **quam primum**, as soon as possible
 12 **quamdiū** (*adv.*), how long
 5 **quamquam** (*conj.*), although (+ *indicative*)
 15 **quamvis** (*conj.*), although (+ *subjunctive*)
 12 **quandō** (*conj. and adv.*), when; since
 10 **quantus, quanta, quantum**, how much, how great
 12 **quārē** (*adv.*), by what means, why; and therefore
 15 **quasi** (*adv.*), as if, as it were
 1 **-que** (*enclitic*), and
 13 **quī, qua, quod** (*adj.*), some, any
 7 **quī, quae, quod** (*relative pron. and interrogative adj.*) who, which, that
 (*relative*); which, what (*interrogative*)
 12 **quia** (*conj.*), because
 12 **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (*pron.*), a certain one or thing
 12 **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (*adj.*), certain
 15 **quidem** (*adv.*), indeed; **nē...quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or words they emphasize*)

UNIT

- 17 **quĭn** (*conj.*), but that, that not (*used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.*)
- 7 **quĭnque** (*indeclinable adj.*), five
- 13 **quĭque, quaeque, quodque** (*adj.*), each, every
- 7; 13 **quis, quid** (*interrogative and indefinite pron.*), who, what; someone, something; anyone, anything
- 13 **quisquam, quidquam or quicquam** (*pron.*), someone, anyone, something, anything (*used with a negative or a virtual negative*)
- 13 **quisque, quidque or quicque** (*pron.*), each one, everyone, each thing, everything
- 13 **quō** (*adv.*), (to) where
- 15 **quōad** (*conj.*), as long as, as far as, until (*takes same construction as dum and dōnec*)
- 4; 18 **quod** (*conj.*), because; the fact that; **quod sĭ**, but if
- 17 **quōminus** (*conj.*), by which the less, that not, from (*used in positive or negative clauses of prevention*)
- 15 **quoniam** (*conj.*), since (+ *indicative*)
- 10 **quot** (*indeclinable adj.*), how many

R

- 17 **radius, radii**, *M.*, rod, ray
- 12 **recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus**, take back, regain, recover; **sē recipere**, withdraw, take oneself
- 15 **redeō, redire, rediī, reditus**, return, go back
- 10 **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, bring back, report
- 16 **rēfert, rēferre, rētulit**, --, it is of importance
- 1 **rēgīna, rēgīnae**, *F.*, queen
- 4 **rēgnum, rēgnī**, *N.*, realm, kingdom
- 6 **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**, rule
- 17 **religiō, religiōnis**, *F.*, religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity
- 17 **relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus**, leave behind, abandon
- 17 **reliquus, reliqua, reliquum**, remaining, rest of
- 12 **remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsus**, remain
- 5 **removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus**, remove, take away, set aside
- 8 **rēs, rei**, *F.*, thing, matter, affair, situation; **rēs pūblica**, state, republic
- 4 **respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus**, answer
- 17 **retegō, retegere, retēxī, retēctus**, uncover, reveal
- 6 **rēx, rēgis**, *M.*, king
- 14 **rideō, ridēre, risī, risus**, laugh (at)

UNIT

- 12 **rogō** (1), ask (for)
 6 **Rōma, Rōmae, F.**, Rome
 3 **Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum**, Roman
 5 **ruīna, ruīnae, F.**, fall, downfall, ruin, destruction
 6 **rūmor, rūmōris, M.**, rumor, gossip
 5 **ruō, ruere, ruī, rutilus**, fall, go to ruin, rush
 6 **rūs, rūris, N.**, country (*as opposed to city*)

S

- 9 **saepe** (*adv.*), often
 8 **saevus, saeva, saevum**, cruel
 7 **salūs, salūtis, F.**, health, safety; **salūtem dīcere**, say hello, greet
 6 **sānus, sāna, sānum**, sound, healthy, sane
 9 **sapiēns, sapientis**, wise
 9 **sapientia, sapientiae, F.**, wisdom
 9 **satis** (*adv. and indeclinable adj.*), enough
 3 **saxum, saxī, N.**, rock, stone
 11 **scelus, sceleris, N.**, wicked deed, crime
 6 **sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**, know
 3 **scrībō, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptus**, write
 16 **scriptor, scriptōris, M.**, writer
 1 **sed** (*conj.*), but
 2 **semper** (*adv.*), always
 14 **senex, senis**, old
 8 **sēnsus, sēnsūs, M.**, sensation, feeling
 2 **sententia, sententiae, F.**, feeling, thought, opinion
 2 **sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, feel, perceive
 11 **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, follow
 9 **serēnus, serēna, serēnum**, serene, calm
 6 **servitūs, servitūtis, F.**, slavery
 11 **servō** (1), save, preserve, rescue, keep
 3 **servus, servī, M.**, slave
 2 **sī** (*conj.*), if
 14 **sīc** (*adv.*), so, in this way
 6 **sīdus, sīderis, N.**, constellation, star; heaven
 10 **signum, signī, N.**, signal, sign
 9 **similis, simile**, like, similar (to) (+ *gen. or dat.*)
 15 **simul ac** (*or atque*) (*conj.*), as soon as (+ *indicative*)
 5 **sine** (*prep. + abl.*), without

UNIT

- 5 **socius, socia, socium**, allied; **socius, socii, M.**, ally
 10 **sōl, sōlis, M.**, sun
 11 **soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, be accustomed; be customary
 13 **sollers, sollertis**, skilled, expert
 10 **sōlus, sōla, solum**, alone, only
 9 **solvō, solvere, solvi, solutus**, loosen, free, untie
 15 **somnus, somni, M.**, sleep, dream
 6 **soror, sororis, F.**, sister
 12 **sors, sortis, sortium, F.**, lot, destiny
 6 **spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus**, scatter, sprinkle, distribute
 8 **speciēs, speciēi, F.**, appearance
 3 **spectō (1)**, look at
 7 **spērō (1)**, hope (for)
 8 **spēs, spei, F.**, hope
 11 **statua, statuae, F.**, statue
 16 **stō, stāre, steti, stātus**, stand
 13 **studeō, studēre, studui, --**, be zealous, study, pay attention to (+ *dat.*)
 16 **studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum**, fond of, partial to, studious (+ *gen.*)
 4 **studium, studii, N.**, enthusiasm, zeal
 2 **sub (prep. + acc.)**, under (i.e., going to a place under); (*prep. + abl.*),
 under (i.e., at or in a place under)
 10 **sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātus**, undergo, endure
 7 **--, sui (reflexive pron.)**, himself, herself, itself, themselves
 1 **sum, esse, fui, futurus**, be, exist
 9 **summus, summa, summum**, highest, top (of)
 2 **superō (1)**, overcome, conquer
 15 **supersum, superesse, superfui, --**, be left over, survive
 8 **superus, supera, superum**, above, upper; **superi, superorum, M. pl.**, the
 gods above
 9 **supplex, supplicis**, suppliant, humble
 16 **sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui. sustentus**, support, maintain
 7 **suus, sua, suum**, his own, her own, its own, their own

T

- 2 **taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus**, be (or keep) silent
 1 **taeda, taedae, F.**, torch
 16 **taedet, taedēre, taedit (taesum est)**, it bores; it disgusts
 14 **tālis, tāle**, such, of such a sort; **tālis . . . quālis**, such . . . as
 9 **tam (adv.)**, so; **tam . . . quam**, so . . . as, as . . . as

UNIT

- 5 **tamen** (*adv.*), nevertheless
 12 **tamquam** (*adv.*), as if, as, as it were
 12 **tandem** (*adv.*), at last, at length
 10 **tantus, tanta, tantum**, so much, so great; **tantus . . . quantus or quantus . . . tantus**, as (so) much . . . as; as (so) great . . . as
 4 **tēctum, tēctī, N.**, roof, house
 4 **tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**, cover, conceal
 14 **tempestās, tempestātis, F.**, weather, storm, season
 9 **templum, templī, N.**, temple
 10 **temptō (1)**, try, attempt
 7 **tempus, temporis, N.**, time, period, season
 2 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus**, hold, keep, possess
 17 **tergum, tergī, N.**, back
 2 **terra, terrae, F.**, earth, land
 1 **terreō, terrere, terruī, territus**, frighten, alarm, terrify
 1 **timeō, timēre, timuī, --**, fear, be afraid (of)
 6 **timor, timōris, M.**, fear, dread
 10 **tot** (*indeclinable adj.*), so many; **tot . . . quot or quot . . . tot**, as many . . . as
 10 **tōtus, tōta, tōtum**, all, whole
 4 **trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus**, hand over, betray
 14 **trāns** (*prep. + acc.*), across, on the other side of
 7 **tū, tuī** (*pron.*), you
 14 **tum** (*adv.*), then, at that time
 14 **tunc** (*adv.*), then, at that time
 1 **turba, turbae, F.**, crowd, uproar
 17 **turpis, turpe**, foul, ugly
 9 **tūtus, tūta, tūtum**, safe
 7 **tuus, tua, tuum**, your, yours, your own (*sing.*)

U

- 12; 15 **ubi** (*adv.; conj.*), where, when
 14 **ubique** (*adv.*), everywhere, anywhere, wherever
 10 **ūllus, ūlla, ūllum**, any
 4 **umbra, umbrae, F.**, shadow
 5 **umquam or unquam** (*adv.*), ever
 17 **ūnā** (*adv.*), together, at the same time
 2 **urda, undae, F.**, wave
 12 **unde** (*adv.*), from where
 10 **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**, one, alone

UNIT

- 6 **urbs, urbis, urbium, F.**, city
 4 **urna, urnae, F.**, urn
 13 **ūsus, ūsus, M.**, use, advantage, enjoyment
 3; 11 **ut (adv.; conj.)**, as, when (+*indicative*); in order that (+*subjunctive in purpose clauses*); that...not (+*subjunctive after expressions of fearing*); that (+*subjunctive in result clauses*)
 10 **uter, utra, utrum**, which (of two)
 16 **ūtilis, ūtile**, useful, beneficial
 12 **utinam (adv.)**, I wish! Would that! If only!
 11 **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, use, enjoy, experience (+*abl.*)
 12 **utrum (conj.)**, whether
 12 **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or
 12 **utrum . . . an nōn**, whether . . . or not (*in direct double questions*)
 12 **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not (*in indirect double questions*)

V

- 3 **validus, valida, validum**, strong, healthy
 16 **vel (conj.)**, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or
 3 **vēlum, vēlī, N.**, cloth, covering, sail; **vēla dare**, to set sail
 18 **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus**, sell
 3 **venia, veniae, F.**, indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition
 2 **veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus**, come
 17 **vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum**, hunt, go hunting
 3 **ventus, ventī, M.**, wind
 3 **verbum, verbī, N.**, word
 11 **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, reverence, fear, dread
 14 **vēritās, vēritātis, F.**, truth
 8 **vertex, verticis, M.**, head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind
 17 **vertō, vertere, vertī, versus**, turn
 4 **vērus, vēra, vērum**, true, real; **vērē or vērō (adv.)**, truly, indeed
 7 **vester, vestra, vestrum**, your, yours, your own (*pl.*)
 17 **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus**, forbid
 16 **vetus, veteris**, old; **veterēs, veterum, M. pl.**, the ancients; **vetera, veterum, N. pl.**, antiquity
 1 **via, viae, F.**, way, road, path, street
 1; 4 **videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus**, see; *in passive seem as well as* be seen
 6 **vigor, vigōris, M.**, liveliness, activity, vigor
 4 **vīlla, villae, F.**, country house, farmhouse
 14 **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**, conquer, beat, overcome

UNIT

- 16 **violō** (1), do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)
3 **vir, viri, M.**, man
10 **virtūs, virtūtis, F.**, manliness, courage, excellence, virtue
6 **vīs; pl. vīrēs, vīrium, F.**, force, power; *pl.* strength
2 **vīta, vītae, F.**, life
5 **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus**, be alive, live
13 **vix (adv.)**, hardly, scarcely
5 **vocō** (1), call
11 **volō, velle, voluī, --**, wish, want, be willing
7 **vōx, vōcis, F.**, voice
18 **vulnerō** (1), wound

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

- able:** be able, possum, posse, potuī, --
about, dē (*prep.* + *abl.*)
account: on account of, propter (*prep.* + *acc.*); ob (*prep.* + *acc.*)
across, trāns (*prep.* + *acc.*)
after, post (*prep.* + *acc.*; *adv.*): postquam (*conj.*); or use *ablative absolute*
aid, auxilium, -ī, *N.*
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um
ally, socius, -ī, *M.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
already, iam (*adv.*)
altar, āra, -ae, *F.*
although, quamquam (*conj.*); etsi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); or use *ablative absolute*
always, semper (*adv.*)
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um
and, et (*conj.*)
animal, animal, -ālis, -ium, *N.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um
anyone, aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid
appearance, speciēs, -ēī, *F.*
approach, aggredior, -ī, aggressus sum; accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus
arms, arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*
around, circum (*prep.* + *acc.*)
arrive (at), adveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus (+ad); perveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus (+ad)
art, ars, artis, -ium, *F.*
as . . . as possible, quam + *superlative*; **as soon as possible,** quam primum
ask (for), petō, -ere, petivī, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus
ashamed, use *impersonal verb* pudet, it shames
attack, oppūgnō (1)
attempt, temptō (1); cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum
author, auctor, -ōris, *M.*

B

be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus
be in charge of, praesum, praesesse, -fui, -- (+ *dat.*)
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
because, quod (*conj.*); quia (*conj.*)
because of, propter (*prep.* + *acc.*)
beg, ōrō (1)
begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptus
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ *dat.*)
betray, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditus
big, magnus, -a, -um
body, corpus, corporis, *N.*
bold, audāx, -ācis
boldness, audācia, -ae, *F.*
book, liber, librī, *M.*
bore, *use impersonal verb* taedet, **it bores**
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, -ī, *M.*
brave, fortis, forte
breast, pectus, pectoris, *N.*
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring (it) about, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus + ut (+ *subjunctive*)
brother, frāter, frātris, *M.*
burn, ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsus
but, sed (*conj.*)
buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus
by, ā, ab (*prep.* + *abl.*)

C

can, possum, posse, potui, --
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus
care, cūra, -ae, *F.*
carry, portō (1); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
change, mūtō (1)
character, mōs, mōris, *M. (in pl.)*
charge: be in charge of, praesum, praesesse, -fui, -- (+ *dat.*)
child, nātus, -ī, *M.*; puer, puerī, *M.*
choose, optō (1); legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, -ium, *M. or F.*
city, urbs, urbis, -ium, *F.*
city walls, moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus
command: put (place) in command of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *M.*
commit, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus
complete, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
condemn, dāmnō (1)
confess, fateor, fatēri, fassus sum; cōfiteor, cōfitēri, cōfessus sum
conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus
consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus
constellation, sidus, sideris, *N.*
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *M.*
country, patria, -ae, *F.*
courage, virtūs, virtūtis, *F.*
cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus
crime, scelus, sceleris, *N.*
crowd, turba, -ae, *F.*
crown, corōnō (1)
cruel, saevus, -a, -um; crūdēlis, -e

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *N.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
daughter, filia, -ae, *F.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *M.*; (at) **daybreak**, primā lūce
delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum
demonstrate, mōnstrō (1)
desire, optō (1)
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um (+ *gen.*)
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus
destruction, ruīna, -ae, *F.*
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; pereō, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -ītus
difficult, difficilis, -e
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *F.*
disgust, *use impersonal verb piget, it disgusts*
distinguished, honestus, -a, -um
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus
doubt, dubitō (1)
drive, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus
drive back, repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus
dutiful, pius, -a, -um

E

each, quisque, quidque (*pron.*); quique, quaeque, quodque (*adj.*)
easy, facilis, -e
empire, imperium, -i, *N.*
enemy, inimicus, -i, *M.*; hostis, hostis, -ium, *M.*
enter, ingredior, -i, ingressus sum
even, etiam (*adv.*); et (*adv.*); **not even**, nē . . . quidem
everyone, quisque
evil (*adj.*), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*) malum, -i, *N.*
explain, expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus
eye, oculus, -i, *M.*

F

fact: the fact that, quod
faith, fidēs, -eī, *F.*
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsus
fame, fāma, -ae, *F.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far and wide, longē (*adv.*)
fast, celeriter (*adv.*)
father, pater, patris, *M.*
fear, (*verb*) timeō, -ēre, -uī, --; vereor, -ēri, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metui, --
 (*noun*) timor, timōris, *M.*; metus, -ūs, *M.*
feel, sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus
few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agri, *M.*
fight, pūgnō (1); **fight with** (*i.e., against*), pūgnō cum (+ *abl.*)
fill, impleō, -ēre, implēvi, implētus
find, inveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus
fire, ignis, ignis, -ium, *M.* (*abl. sing. igne or igni*)
five, quinque (*indeclinable adj.*)
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitus
food, cibus, -i, *M.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *M.*
for, (*on behalf of*) prō (*prep. + abl.*)
forbid, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus
force, vis, *F.*
forget, obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum (+ *gen.*)
fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus
forum, forum, -i, *N.*
free, liber, libera, liberum

freedom, libertās, -tātis, *F.*

friend, amicus, -i, *M.*

frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

from, (*out of*) ē, ex (*prep. + abl.*); (*away*) ā, ab (*prep. + abl.*)

fugitive, profugus, -i, *M.*

G

gate (*of a city*), porta, -ae, *F.*

general, imperātor, -ōris, *M.*

get, parō (1)

gift, dōnum, -i, *N.*

gird, cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus

girl, puella, -ae, *F.*

give, dō, dare, dedī, datus; dōnō (1)

glory, glōria, -ae, *F.*

go, eō, ire, iī (ivī), itus

god, deus, -i, *M.*

golden, aureus, -a, -um

good, bonus, -a, -um

gossip, rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

great, magnus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um

grievous, gravis, -e

guardian, custōs, custōdis, *M.*

guest, hospes, hospitis, *M.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *F.*

handsome, decōrus, -a, -um

happen, fiō, fieri, factus sum

happy, laetus, -a, -um

harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)

hate, ōdī, ōdisse (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*)

have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *or dative of the possessor with sum*

he, *supplied by is*

healthy, validus, -a, -um; sānus, -a, -um

hear, audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus

heavy, gravis, -e

help, auxilium, -ī, *N.*

her (*own*), suus, -a, -um

here, hic (*adv.*); **be here**, **be present**, adsum, adesse, adfui, --

hide, cēlō (1)

his (own), suus, -a, -um

home, domus, -ūs (-ī), *F.*

honorable, honestus, -a, -um

hope, (*verb*) spērō (1); (*noun*) spēs, speī, *F.*

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um

house, tēctum, -ī, *N.*; domus, -ūs (-ī), *F.*; **country house**, villa, -ae, *F.*

how, quō modō

how many, quot

humble, humilis, -e

hunt, vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum

husband, coniūnx, coniugis, *M.*

I

I, ego; *pl.* nōs

if, sī (*conj.*)

if . . . not, nisi (*conj.*)

if only, utinam (*adv.*)

impious, impius, -a, -um

in, in (*prep.* + *abl.*)

indeed, enim (*postpositive conj.*)

inhabitant, incola, -ae, *M.*

in order (that, to), ut (+ *subjunctive*)

in order not to, nē (+ *subjunctive*)

into, in (*prep.* + *acc.*)

invade, invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus

island, insula, -ae, *F.*

it, *supplied by id*

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnxus

Juno, Iūnō, Iūnōnis, *F.*

Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *M.*

K

keep from, prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *infinitive*); dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus
(+ *subjunctive clause of prevention*)

kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

kindness, venia, -ae, *F.*

king, *rēx, rēgis, M.*

know, *sciō, -ire, -ivi, -itus*; **not know**, *nesciō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itus*

L

land, *terra, -ae, F.*

large, *magnus, -a, -um*

law, *lēx, lēgis, F.*

lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus*

leader, *dux, ducis, M.*

learn, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus*; *nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus*; *discō, -ere, didici, --*

legate, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*

liberty, *libertās, -tātis, F.*

life, *vīta, -ae, F.*

lifetime, *aetās, -tātis, F.*

light, *lūmen, lūminis, N.*; *lūx, lūcis, F.*

listen (to), *audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus*

live, *vivō, -ere, vixī, victus*

lofty, *altus, -a, -um*

long, *longus, -a, -um*; **for a long time**, *diū (adv.)*

look (at), *spectō (1)*

love, (*verb*) *amō (1)*; (*noun*) *amor, amoris, M.*

M

make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus*

man, *vir, virī, M.*; *homō, hominis, M.*; **old man**, *senex, senis, M.*; **young man**, *iuvenis, -is, M. (not i-stem)*

many, *multus, -a, -um*

Marcus, *Marcus, -ī, M.*

master, *dominus, -ī, M.*; *magister, magistri, M.*

middle (of), *medius, -a, -um*

mindful, *memor, memoris*

model, *exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.*

money, *pecūnia, -ae, F.*

moon, *lūna, -ae, F.*

more, *plūs*

mother, *māter, mātris, F.*

mountain, *mōns, montis, -ium, M.*

move, *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus*

much, *multus, -a, -um*

must, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus*; *or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation*

my, *meus, -a, -um*

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *N.*
native land, patria, -ae, *F.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *F.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctus
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque *or* nec . . . nec
never, numquam (*adv.*)
no, nūllus, -a, -um
no one, nēmō, nēminis, *M. or F.*
nor, nec; neque
not, nōn; nē
not even, nē . . . quidem
not only . . . but also, nōn solum . . . sed etiam
now, nunc (*adv.*)
nurse, nūtrix, -īcis, *F.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)
offer, offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus
old, senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, *M.*
on, in (*prep. + abl.*)
only, sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, *F.*; opiniō, -ōnis, *F.*
oppress, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus (+ *infinitive*); imperō (1) (+ *ut or nē and the subjunctive*); **in order to**, ut (*conj.*)
other, alius, -a, -ud; **other people's**, aliēnus, -a, -um
our, noster, nostra, nostrum
out (of), ē, ex (*prep. + abl.*)
overcome, superō (1)

P

pain, doior, dolōris, *M.*
pardon, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus (+ *dat.*)
part, pars, partis, -ium, *F.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *F.*
people, populus, -ī, *M. (use in singular)*
place, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)
poem, carmen, carminis, *N.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *M.*

possible: it is possible, fieri potest ut (+ *noun clause of result*)

praise, laudō (1)

prefer, praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus

previously, ante (*adv.*)

price, pretium, -ī, *N.*

profit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, --

prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus

provided that, dum (*conj.*); dummodo (*conj.*); modo (*conj.*)

province, prōvincia, -ae, *F.*

punishment, poena, -ae, *F.*

put (place) in command (of), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, *F.*

quick, celer, celeris, celere

R

raving, dēmēns, dēmentis

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus

realm, rēgnum, -ī, *N.*

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus; remaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, -mānsus

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *F.*

reputation, fāma, -ae, *F.*

reveal, retegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus

right: to the right, ad dextram

rock, saxum, -ī, *N.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *F.*

ruler, regēns, regentis, *M.* (*present participle of regō, -ere*)

rumor, fāma, -ae, *F.*; rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus

rush, ruō, -ere, rui, rurus

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um

safety, salūs, salūtis, *F.*

sail, vēlum, -ī, *N.*; set sail, vēla dare

sailor, nauta, -ae, *M.*

- sanctity**, religiō, -ōnis, *F.*
save, servō (1)
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus
sea, mare, maris, -ium, *N.*
see, videō, -ēre, vidi, visus
seek, petō, -ere, petivī, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus
sell, vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus
send, mittō, -ere, misī, missus
serve (as), *use dative of service (purpose) in double dative construction*
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum
set sail, vēla dare
severe, gravis, grave
she, *supplied by ea*
shine, fulgeō, -ēre, fulsi, --
ship, nāvis, -is, -ium, *F.*
shore, litus, litoris, *N.*
should, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation*
shout, clāmō (1)
show, mōnstrō (1)
silent: be or keep silent, taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus
since, quoniam (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); *or use ablative absolute*
sing (of), canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus
sister, soror, sorōris, *F.*
skill, ars, artis, -ium, *F.*
slave, servus, -i, *M.*
so, tam (*adv.*); ita (*adv.*); adeō (*adv.*); sic (*adv.*)
so great, tantus, -a, -um
so that, ut
soldier, miles, militis, *M.*
someone, aliquis
soon, mox (*adv.*); **as soon as possible**, quam primum
son, filius, -i, *M.*; nātus, -i, *M.*
sorrow, dolor, dolōris, *M.*
sort, kind, genus, -eris, *N.*
soul, anima, -ae, *F.*
spend (a lifetime), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus
state, civitās, -tātis, *F.*; rēs pūblica, rei pūblicaē, *F.*
statue, statua, -ae, *F.*
stop, dēsīnō, -ere, dēsīi, --
storm, tempestās, -tātis, *F.*

street, via, -ae, *F.*

strength, virēs, virium, *F. pl.*

strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e

such, tālis, -e

such (so) great, tantus, -a, -um

such great . . . as, tantus . . . quantus

suffer, patior, pati, passus sum; sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātus

summit, vertex, verticis, *M.*

sword, gladius, -i, *M.*

T

tall, altus, -a, -um

tear, lacrima, -ae, *F.*

tell, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus

temple, templum, -i, *N.*

terrify, terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus

than, quam (*conj.*)

that, ille, illa, illud (*adj.*); is, ea, id (*adj.*); ut (*conj.*; *introducing a clause of result*)

their (own), suus, -a, -um

think, cōgitō (1)

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id

threaten, minor, -āri, -ātus sum

through, per (*prep.* + *acc.*)

throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus

time, tempus, temporis, *N.*; **for a long time**, diū (*adv.*)

to, toward, ad (*prep.* + *acc.*)

torch, taeda, -ae, *F.*

town, oppidum, -i, *N.*

treachery, insidiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

treaty, foedus, foederis, *N.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

try, temptō (1)

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, intellēxi, intellēctus

unfortunate, infēlix, infēlicis

unlike, dissimilis, -e

urn, urna, -ae, *F.*

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (+ *abl.*)

V

value highly, maximī faciō (-ere, fēcī, factus)

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus

wait (for), exspectō (1)

walk, ambulō (1)

walls (of a city), moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

want, volō, velle, voluī, --

war, bellum, -i, *N.*

warn, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

wealth, divitiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

weapons, arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*

well, bene (*adv.*)

what, quid (*pron.*); quod (*adj.*)

when, ubi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); *or use ablative absolute*

where, ubi (*adv.*); **(to) where**, quō (*adv.*)

whether, num (*adv.*); utrum (*adv.*); *both can be used as adverbial conjunctions*

which, quī, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

who, quī, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

whole, tōtus, -a, -um

why, cūr (*adv.*)

wicked, malus, -a, -um

willing, volēns, volentis (*present participle of volō, velle, voluī, --*)

wind, ventus, -i, *M.*

wish, optō (1)

with, cum (*prep. + abl.*)

withdraw, sē recipere (recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus)

without, sine (*prep. + abl.*)

woman, fēmina, -ae, *F.*

wonder, miror, -ārī, -ātus sum

word, verbum, -i, *N.*

work, (*verb*) labōrō (1); (*noun*) opus, operis, *N.*

world, orbis terrārum (orbis, orbis, -ium, *M.*)

wound, vulnerō (1)

wretched, miser, misera, miserum

write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus

Y

year, annus, -i, *M.*

yesterday, heri (*adv.*)

you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*)

young man, iuvenis, iuvenis, *M.* (*not i-stem*)

your, tuus, -a, -um (*sing.*); vester, vestra, vestrum (*pl.*)

Z

zeal, studium, -ī, *N.*

INDEX

- Abbreviations used in this book, 7
- Ablative: definition, 27
 - absolute, 162–164, 376
 - of accompaniment, 116, 377
 - adjectives with, 376
 - of attendant circumstance, 375
 - of cause, 164, 375
 - with certain deponent verbs, 373
 - of comparison, 152, 374
 - of degree of difference, 152, 374–375
 - of description, 165, 374
 - of manner, 50, 378
 - of material, 378–379
 - of means (instrument), 50, 373
 - opus est** with, 373–374
 - of origin, 102, 379
 - of personal agent, 65, 376
 - place in which (place where), 103, 377
 - place from which, 102–103
 - away from which, 377
 - down from which, 378
 - out of which, 377
 - prepositions with, 376–377
 - of price, 294, 373
 - of respect (specification), 128, 375
 - of route, 373
 - of separation, 102, 378
 - of supine, ablative of respect, 281, 396–397
 - of time when or within which, 116, 374
- Accentuation, 3
- Accusative, definition, 27
 - adverbial, 293–294, 372
 - cognate, 370
 - direct object, 370
 - double accusative, 370
 - of duration of time and extent of space, 116, 371
 - of exclamation, 252, 371
 - Greek: accusative of respect, 293, 371
 - place into which, 372
 - place to which, 103, 372
 - prepositions with, 372
 - of respect, *see under* Accusative, Greek
 - subject accusative and infinitive, 100–102, 371
 - after verbs in the middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek

Additional rules, 400

Adjectives

- comparative degree, declension, 150, 323
 - formation, 150
- comparison of, 150–151
 - irregular comparisons, 151
- demonstrative, 110–111
 - hic, haec, hoc**, paradigm, 110, 323–324
 - ille, illa, illud**, paradigm, 110, 323–324
 - is, ea, id**, paradigm, 110, 324
 - iste, -a, -ud**, 206
 - paradigm, 324
- first-second declension, 48
 - paradigm, 48, 321
- with genitive singular in **-ius**, 164
 - paradigm, 164, 322
- idem, eadem, idem**, 205
 - paradigm, 205, 325
- indefinite
 - aliqui, aliqua, aliquod**, 217
 - paradigm, 325
 - qui, qua, quod**, 217
 - quidam, quaedam, quoddam**, 205
 - quique, quaeque, quodque**, 218
- intensive, definition, 16
 - ipse, -a, -um**, 205–206
 - paradigm, 206, 324
- interrogative, 115
 - paradigm, 325
- noun-adjective agreement, 49, 400
- numerical: **duo, duae, duo**, paradigm, 221, 323
- possessive, 113–114
 - in English*, definition, 17
- superlative degree: formation, 150–151
 - quam** plus superlative, 151
- third declension, 126–127
 - of one termination, paradigm, 127, 322–323
 - of three terminations, paradigm, 126, 322
 - of two terminations, paradigm, 127, 322–323
- used as nouns, 49–50

Adverbs

- comparative: formation, 153
- comparison of, 153
 - irregular comparisons, 153–154
- formation of, 152–153
- superlative: formation, 153

Agreement, definition, 12

- adjective with noun, 49, 400
- subject with verb, 400

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **aliqui, aliqua, aliquod**

aliquis, aliquid, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **aliquis, aliquid**

Alphabet, 1–2

Antecedent, definition, 12

antequam, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

Apodosis, definition, 12

Apposition, 363

- definition, 12

Article, lack of, 10

Aspect, 21–22

- definition, 13
 - frequentative, 15
 - inchoative, 15
- Cases, English, 9
- Causal clauses, *see under* Clause, causal
- Circumstantial clauses, *see under* Clause, circumstantial
- Clause, definition, 13
- causal, 248–249, 250, 382–383, 392
 - definition, 13
 - circumstantial, 248, 383, 393
 - definition, 13
 - concessive, 249, 250, 382, 392–393
 - definition, 13
 - dependent, definition, 14
 - of doubting, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: doubting, clauses of
 - of fearing, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: fearing, clauses of
 - independent, definition, 15
 - of prevention, 280–281, 395
 - of proviso, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: proviso, clauses of
 - purpose, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: purpose, clauses of
 - of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result
 - subordinate, definition, 18
 - temporal, 248, 250, 383–384
 - definition, 13
- Comparative degree, definition, 13
- Comparison with **quam**, 152
- ablative of comparison, 152
- Compound words, 296
- Concessive clauses, *see under* Clause, concessive
- Conditional sentences, 38–39; definition, 14
- future, more vivid, 38, 385; less vivid, 38, 391
 - mixed, 39, 391
 - simple (general), 38, 385
 - unreal (contrary-to-fact), present, 39, 391; past, 39, 391
 - contrafactual, definition, 14
 - in indirect statement, 397–399
 - in other subordinate clauses, 399–400
- Conjugation, definition, 20
- Conjugations, 23
- first, paradigm, 327–331
 - fourth, paradigm, 343–346
 - second, paradigm, 335–337
 - third, paradigm, 337–340
 - i-stem, paradigm, 340–343
- of deponent verbs
- first, paradigm, 346–348
 - fourth, paradigm, 348–351
 - second, paradigm, 348–351
 - third, paradigm, 348–351
- of periphrastics: paradigm, 331–334
- Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive, 250–252
- coordinating conjunction, definition, 14
 - subordinating conjunction, definition, 18
- Correlatives, definition, 14
- cum**, ‘whenever’. *see under* Indicative, syntax: **cum**, ‘whenever’
- cum** clauses, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: **cum** clauses
- cum** clauses and ablatives absolute, 249–250

- Dative, definition, 26
 of agent, 88, 369
 with certain adjectives, 368
 with certain intransitive verbs, 218–219, 368–369
 with compound verbs, 220, 369
 double dative construction, 131
 ethical, 369
 indirect object, 368
 of the possessor, 88, 369
 of purpose (service), 131, 370
 of reference, 131, 367–368
- Declension, definition, 26, 27
 endings, 317
- Declensions
 fifth, 128
 paradigm, 128, 321
 first, 27–28
 endings, 28
 paradigm, 28, 318
 fourth, 128
 paradigm, 128, 320
 how distinguished from one another, 27
 second, 47–48
 endings, 47
 paradigms, 48, 318
 third, 97–99
 endings, 97
 i-stems, paradigms, 98, 319–320
 paradigms, 98, 319–320
 rules for i-stems, 98–99, 319
- Demonstrative, definition, 14
- Denominative verbs, *see under* Verbs, denominative
- Deponent verbs, *see under* Verbs, deponent
- Diminutives, definition, 14
- dōnec.** *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
- Drills
- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Unit 1, 31–32 | Unit 7, 120–121 | Unit 13, 225–226 |
| Unit 2, 43 | Unit 8, 134–135 | Unit 14, 241–243 |
| Unit 3, 55–56 | Unit 9, 157–158 | Unit 15, 257–259 |
| Unit 4, 70–71 | Unit 10, 169–170 | Unit 16, 272–273 |
| Unit 5, 92–94 | Unit 11, 185–186 | Unit 17, 285–286 |
| Unit 6, 105–107 | Unit 12, 210–211 | Unit 18, 298 |
- dum.** *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
- duo, duae, duo,** *see under* Adjectives, numerical: **duo, duae, duo**
- Ellipsis, definition, 14
- Enclitic, definition, 14
- Endings
 personal: present active system, 24, 327
 perfect active indicative, 35, 327
 -ēre for **-ērunt**, 293
 present passive system, 62, 327
- eō, ire,** 129, 354–355
-ēre for **-ērunt**, *see under* Endings, personal: perfect active indicative, **-ēre** for **-ērunt**
- Exercises
- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Unit 1, 33–34 | Unit 4, 72–73 | Unit 7, 121–125 |
| Unit 2, 44–46 | Unit 5, 94–96 | Unit 8, 136–139 |
| Unit 3, 57–58 | Unit 6, 107–109 | Unit 9, 159–161 |

Exercises, cont.

Unit 10, 171–175	Unit 13, 226–231	Unit 16, 274–278
Unit 11, 187–191	Unit 14, 244–247	Unit 17, 286–290
Unit 12, 212–216	Unit 15, 259–264	Unit 18, 298–307

Exercises, preliminary

Unit 1 (Sections A–G), 32–33	Unit 10 (Sections A–B), 170–171
Unit 2 (Sections A–D), 44	Unit 11 (Sections A–B), 187
Unit 3 (Sections A–F), 56–57	Unit 12 (Sections A–B), 211–212
Unit 4 (Section A), 71	Unit 13 (Sections A–B), 226
Unit 5 (Sections A–B), 94	Unit 14 (Sections A–B), 243–244
Unit 6 (Section A), 107	Unit 15 (Sections A–B), 259
Unit 7 (Sections A–C), 121	Unit 16 (Sections A–C), 273
Unit 8 (Sections A–C), 135–136	Unit 17 (Sections A–B), 286
Unit 9 (Sections A–D), 158	

Expletive, definition, 15

ferō and compounds, 165; paradigm, 355–358

fiō, fieri, 220–221, 361–362

fore ut, 291–292

with subjunctive, 389–390

Frequentative verbs, *see under* Verbs, frequentative

Future imperative, *see under* Imperative, future

futūrum esse ut, 291–292

Gender, English, 8–9

of nouns, 26

Genitive, definition, 26

appositional, 364–365

of description, 165, 364

with expressions of remembering and forgetting, 294, 366

followed by **causā**, 267, 367

of fullness and want, 367

Greek, 367

of indefinite value, 294, 366–367

of material, 364

objective, 178–179, 365–366

with impersonal verbs, 366

partitive (genitive of the whole), 154, 364

of possession, 363–364

predicate (of characteristic), 179, 365

subjective, 178–179, 366

with verbs of accusing and condemning, 39–40, 365

Gerund, 265–266, 396

definition, 15

Gerund and gerundive

to express purpose, 266–267

Gerundive, 266

syntax, 396

Glossary, 12

Grammatical review, 8

hic, haec, hoc, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **hic, haec, hoc**

Hypotaxis, definition, 15

idem, eadem, idem, *see under* Adjectives, **idem, eadem, idem**

Idiom. definition, 15

ille, -a, -ud, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **ille, -a, -ud**

Imperative. definition, 10, 20, 129

future, 130–131, 362

syntax, 381–382

- negative, 130
- present active, formation, 129–130
 - passive, formation, 130
 - syntax, 381
- Impersonal passives, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: passives
- Impersonal verbs, *see under* Verbs, impersonal
- Inchoative verbs, *see under* Verbs, inchoative
- Indicative, definition, 10, 20
 - syntax, 382–386
 - cum, ‘whenever’, 249, 385
 - quod, ‘the fact that’, 294–295, 384–385
- tenses, 20–22
 - chart of uses, 22
 - future, definition, 21
 - active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 61
 - first two conjugations: formation and paradigms, 24–25
 - passive, all conjugations: paradigms, 63–64
 - future perfect, definition, 21
 - active, formation and paradigm, 36
 - passive, formation and paradigm, 65
 - imperfect, definition, 21
 - active, all conjugations, formation and paradigms, 60–61
 - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 24
 - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 63
 - perfect, definition, 21
 - active: endings, 35; formation and paradigm, 35–36
 - stem, formation, 35
 - system of all verbs, 35–36
 - passive: formation and paradigm, 64–65; system, all conjugations, 64
 - pluperfect, definition, 21
 - active: formation and paradigm, 35–36
 - passive: formation and paradigm, 65
 - present, definition, 20
 - active: all conjugations, paradigms, 59–60
 - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 23–25
 - system of first two conjugations, 23–25
 - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 62–63
 - system, all conjugations, endings, 62
 - primary, 22
 - secondary, 22
- Indirect discourse, definition, 16
 - indirect commands, 52–53, 388–389
 - definition, 16
 - indirect questions, 202–204, 390–391
 - definition, 16
 - indirect statement, 100–102
 - conditions in, 397–399
 - definition, 16
 - infinitive in, 101–102, 380
- Indirect object, definition, 15
- Indirect reflexives, *see under* Pronouns, reflexive: indirect
- Infinitives, definition, 16, 22
 - formation, 99–100
 - periphrastic, 100
 - syntax, 379–381
 - complementary, 89, 379–380; definition, 13
 - exegetical, 381; definition, 15
 - in exclamations, 381

- historical, 292, 381
 - in indirect statement, 101–102, 380
 - object, 89, 380
 - as subject, 179, 380
- Inflection, definition, 10, 16
 - in English, 10–11
 - of nouns, 26
 - of verbs, 20
- interest, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: interest and *rēfert*
- Interrogative, definition, 16
- ipse*, -a, -um, *see under* Adjectives, intensive: *ipse*, -a, -um
- is*, *ea*, *id*, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: *is*, *ea*, *id*
- iste*, -a, -ud, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: *iste*, -a, -ud

- Locative case, 103, 318, 379

- Macron, definition, 16
- mālō*, 179–180
 - paradigm, 358–360
- Middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek
- Mood, definition, 20
 - in English, 10
- Morphology, definition, 16

- Names, Roman, 401
- Negatives
 - double making affirmative, 400
 - “no”, 400
- nōlō*, 179–180
 - paradigm, 358–360
- Nominative, definition, 26
 - absolute (in English), 12, 162
 - syntax, 363
- Nouns
 - abstract, definition, 12
 - suffixes, 224–225, 240
 - collective, definition, 13
 - verb with, 400
 - formation of stem, 27
 - suffixes pertaining to, *see under* Suffixes, added to produce; adjectival added to the stems of; noun
- Number, 9, 20
- Numerals, 405–408

- Object, definition, 16

- Paradigm, definition, 17
- Parataxis, definition, 17
- Participles, definition, 17, 83
 - formation, 83–84
 - future active: formation, 84; use, 86
 - passive: formation, 84; use, 86
 - perfect passive: formation, 84; use, 85
 - present active: formation, 83–84; use, 84–85
 - paradigm, 127, 323
 - syntax, 395–396
 - uses, 84–86
- Parts of speech, 8
- Periphrasis, definition, 17

- Periphrastic Conjugations
 active. synopsis. 87
 infinitives. 100
 paradigms. 331–334
 passive. synopsis. 87
- Person, definition, 9, 20
- Phonology, definition, 17
- Phrase, definition, 17
- possum**, 88
 paradigm, 88–89, 351–353
- Postpositive, definition, 30
- Predicate, definition, 17
 predicate adjective, definition, 17
 predicate nominative, definition, 17
- Prefixes
 from prepositions, 255–257
 not from prepositions, 271–272
- priusquam**, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
- Pronouns
 indefinite, definition, 15, 217
 aliquis, aliquid, 217
 as indefinite, **nescio quis, quid**, 400
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, 205
 paradigm, 205, 326
 quis, quid, 217–218
 quisquam, quidquam, 218
 quisque, quidque, 218
 interrogative, 115–116
 paradigm, 115, 326
 personal, 111–113, 325–326
 ego, 112
 tu, 112
 possessive, *in English*: definition, 17
 reflexive, 112–113
 definition, 18
 indirect, 237
 third person: paradigm, 113, 326
 relative, 114–115
 definition, 18
 paradigm, 114
- Protasis, definition, 17
- Proviso, definition, 18. *Also see under* Clauses of proviso
- Purpose, *see under* Gerund and Gerundive, to express purpose; Subjunctive, syntax:
 purpose, clauses of; Supine, syntax
- quam plus superlative**, 151
- Quantitative rhythm, *see under* Rhythm, quantitative
- Questions
 direct, 201–202
 double, 202
 indirect, 202–204
- quī, qua, quod**, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quī, qua, quod**
quia, ‘because’, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**
quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**
quique, quaeque, quodque, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quique, quaeque, quodque**
quis, quid, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quis, quid**
quisquam, quidquam, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quisquam, quidquam**
quisque, quidque, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quisque, quidque**

quod, 'because', *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
quod, 'the fact that', *see under* Indicative, **quod**, 'the fact that'

rēfert, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: interest and **rēfert**

Relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), *see under* Subjunctive, syntax:
 relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses)

Relative clauses of purpose, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of purpose

Relative clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of result

Result, after **futūrum ut (fore)**, 291–292. *Also see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result

Review of verb conjugations, 66

Review

Units 1–4, 74–75

5–8, 140–142

9–11, 192–193

12–18, 308–311

Rhythm, quantitative, 401–404

Root. definition, 18

Self Review A

Units 1–4, 75–77

answer key, 77–79

Units 5–8, 142–144

answer key, 144–145

Units 9–11, 193–195

answer key, 195–196

Units 12–18, 312–314

answer key, 314–316

Sentence, definition, 18

complex, definition. 13

compound, definition, 13

Sequence of tenses, *see under* Subjunctive, sequence of tenses

Stem, definition, 18

Subject, definition, 18

verbs with compound, 400

Subjunctive, definition, 10, 20, 36

imperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 36–37

passive, formation, 64

perfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

pluperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

present active, all conjugations, formation and paradigm, 60

first conjugation, formation and paradigm, 36

passive, formation, 64

sequence of tenses, 51, 387

syntax, 386–395

anticipation, 393–394

by attraction, 291, 394

causal clauses, *see under* Clause, causal

circumstantial clauses. *see under* Clause, circumstantial

concessive clauses. *see under* Clause, concessive

conditions, *see under* Conditional sentences

cum clauses, 248–250

deliberative, 201, 386

doubting, clauses of, 279–280, 394–395

fearing, clauses of, 279, 390

hortatory, 200, 386

with impersonal verbs, 395

independent uses. 200–201

indirect commands, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect commands

Self Review B

Units 1–4, 79–80

answer key, 81–82

Units 5–8, 146–147

answer key, 147–149

Units 9–11, 196–197

answer key, 198–199

- indirect questions, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect questions
- jussive, 200, 386
- optative, 201, 387
- potential, 200, 387
- prevention, clauses of, *see under* Clauses, of prevention
- proviso, clauses of, 252, 394
- purpose, clauses of: definition, 50
 - illustrated, 52, 387–388
 - introduced by adverbs, 236, 388
- relative clauses of, 236, 388
- relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), 234–235, 390
- result, 232–233, 389
 - relative clauses of, 235–236, 389
 - substantive clauses of, 233, 389
- in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 116–117, 391–392
- Substantive, definition, 10, 18
- Substantive clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result, substantive clauses of
- Suffixes
 - ālis, -āris, -ilis, 185
 - ārium, 240
 - ārius, 240
 - āx, -idus, -ulus, -ivus, 209–210
 - bundus, -cundus, 210
 - eus, -ius, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus, -ēius, -cus, -ticus, 184
 - fer *and* -ger, 224
 - ia, -iēs, -tia, -tiēs, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, 224–225
 - ilis, -bilis, 210
 - iō, -tiō, -tura, -tus, 240
 - ium *and* -tium, 225
 - men, -mentum, -mōnium, -mōnia, 240
 - ōsus *and* -lentus, 224
 - ter, -ester, -timus, -nus, -urnus, -ternus, 185
 - tor, -trix, 183–184
 - tōrium, 240
 - ulus, -a, -um, etc., 184
- abstract noun, 224–225, 240
- added to produce nouns, 240
- adjectival added to the stems of nouns, 184–185; of verbs, 209–210
- noun, 183–184
- sum, complete paradigm, 351–353
 - indicative future, 25
 - imperfect, 25
 - present, 25
 - subjunctive: present, 37
- Superlative degree, definition, 18
- Supine, 281
 - syntax, 281, 396–397
- Syllabification, 2
- Synopated forms of perfect active system of verbs, 292
- Synopsis, definition, 19, 44, 74
 - illustrated, 44, 75, 142
- Syntax, definition, 19
 - of nouns, review, 363–379
 - ablative, 372–379
 - accusative, 370–372
 - apposition, 363
 - dative, 367–370
 - genitive, 363–367
 - locative, 379

- nominative, 363
 - vocative, 379
- of verbs, review, 379–397
 - gerunds, 396
 - gerundives, 396
 - indicatives, 382–386
 - infinitives, 379–381
 - imperatives, 381–382
 - participles, 395–396
 - subjunctives, 386–395
 - supines, 396–397
- Temporal clauses, *see under* Clause, temporal
- Tense, 9, 20
- Tmesis, 92, 252, 254
- Verbs
 - adjectival suffixes added to the stems of, 209–210
 - denominative, 14, 29, 272
 - deponent, 176–178; semi-deponent, 178
 - finite, definition, 15
 - frequentative, 134, 283–284
 - impersonal, 267–269; definition, 15
 - interest and *rēfert*, 269
 - passives, 219–220, 385–386
 - inchoative, 284–285
 - intransitive, definition, 16
 - personal endings, present active system, 24, 327
 - perfect active indicative, 35, 327
 - ere* for -*erunt*, 293
 - present passive system, 62, 327
 - principal parts, 23
 - transitive, definition, 19
- vis*, declension, 102, 320
- Vocabulary

Unit 1, 28–29	Unit 6, 103–104	Unit 11, 180–181	Unit 16, 269–270
Unit 2, 40–41	Unit 7, 117–119	Unit 12, 206–208	Unit 17, 281–282
Unit 3, 53–54	Unit 8, 131–133	Unit 13, 221–222	Unit 18, 295
Unit 4, 67–68	Unit 9, 154–155	Unit 14, 237–238	
Unit 5, 89–90	Unit 10, 166–167	Unit 15, 252–254	

 - English to Latin, 435–447
 - Latin to English, 411–433
 - Notes on

Unit 1, 29–31	Unit 6, 105	Unit 11, 182–185	Unit 16, 270–272
Unit 2, 41–43	Unit 7, 119–120	Unit 12, 208–210	Unit 17, 282–285
Unit 3, 54–55	Unit 8, 133–134	Unit 13, 222–225	Unit 18, 295–297
Unit 4, 68–70	Unit 9, 156–157	Unit 14, 238–240	
Unit 5, 90–92	Unit 10, 167–168	Unit 15, 254–257	
- Vocative case, 131, 318, 379
- Voice, 9–10, 20
 - Middle, *see under* Accusative. Greek
- volō*, 179–180
 - paradigm, 358–360
- Vowels
 - lengthened before -*ns*, 84
 - long shortened before -*m*, -*t*, -*nt*, 24; before -*r*, -*ntur*, 62
- Word formation, chart, 297
- Word order, 4–6
- “yes”, 400